

NOTES OF A MASTER FORMULATOR

PRINCIPLES AND PROTOCOLS FOR DETOXIFICATION,
MICROBIOME, AND ENVIRONMENTAL MEDICINE

FOR
DOCTORS AND
THE PATIENTS
THEY CARE FOR

SPENCER FELDMAN

**Notes of a Master Formulator
Principles and Protocols for Detoxification, Microbiome, and Environmental
Medicine**

Copyright 2026 Spencer Feldman

Disclaimers:

AI

I worked with Claude (Anthropic) in producing this manuscript.

Conflicts of interest

The author manufactures supplements, some of which are mentioned in this book.

A Note on Citations and the Dagger (†) Symbol

Where a claim is marked with a dagger, no published literature is known to the author that directly supports it. These are offered as my opinions, not as established science.

Introduction

The goals of this book are to repair the 3 main microbiomes (gut, sinuses and tonsils), safely detoxify metals, chemicals and mycotoxins and address mold in a home.

To repair the gut microbiome, we transition the gut from proteolytic fermentation to carbohydrate fermentation.

To repair the sinus microbiome, we clear pathologic staphylococcus.

To repair the tonsil microbiome, we clear pathologic streptococcus.

To detoxify metals without redistribution events, we alkalize urine and blend specific chelators, some you may be familiar with, others not.

To detoxify chemicals without redistribution, we optimize all 4 phases of detoxification.

To address a moldy home, we remove the food source and shift the terrain.

The goals are simple, but understanding how to achieve them will take some study.

Table of Contents

Introduction

Chapter 1, Drugs vs supplements

Chapter 2, Reference ranges are calibrated against a sick population

Chapter 3, Labs vs symptoms

Chapter 4, The detox traps

Chapter 5, Cooking and the Candification of food

Chapter 6, Microbiome as ally and mentor

Chapter 7, Four insults to the microbiome

Chapter 8, The microbiome as garden

Chapter 9, We can't fix what we choose not to examine

Chapter 10, Gram positive vs. Gram negative

Chapter 11, Stool pH controls microbiome content

Chapter 12, The Firmicutes:Bacteroidetes ratio controversy

Chapter 13, Strength in Diversity

Chapter 14, You are what you eat, your microbiome is what you don't digest

Chapter 15, The Underground Storage Organ

Chapter 16, The SCFA enema

Chapter 17, Transit time and stool weight

Chapter 18, The Exudative Loop - How pathobionts farm us

Chapter 19, The colonic protocol

Chapter 20, Your genetics are not your destiny

Chapter 21, Parasites: Don't always kill them - sometimes just show them the door

Chapter 22, The challenge of the small intestine

Chapter 23, The Ileo-cecal valve Dilemma

Chapter 24, The Sinuses: Where mold, the brain, immune system, lungs, and circulation converge

Chapter 25, Neurologic connections to the microbiome and metals

Chapter 26, The teeth and the sinuses

Chapter 27, The tonsils: Focal infections waiting to happen

Chapter 28, The tonsil-immune-brain axis

Chapter 29, On the female microbiome and empowering mothers

Chapter 30, Saliva and urine pH

Chapter 31, The biomarker everyone has

Chapter 32, Nitric oxide and sexual endurance

Chapter 33, Sleep apnea: the condition we sleep through

Chapter 34, The order of operations

Chapter 35, Lymphatics: the forgotten circulation

Chapter 36, Chelation: Nature uses relay races, so should we

Chapter 37, Chemicals: the load the body did not evolve to carry

Chapter 38, Nanoplastics: The modern challenge

Chapter 39, Bile: the body's soap

Chapter 40, Binders: when the gut isn't ready

Chapter 41, Cyclodextrins: A soap for all seasons

Chapter 42, Treat the patient... and their home

Chapter 43, Trial by fire

Chapter 44, Capillary diagnostics

Chapter 45, Growing new coronaries

Chapter 46, Microcirculation and the brain

Chapter 47, The warehouse and the waistline

Chapter 48, The snow globe is shaken

Chapter 1, Drugs vs Supplements

If you give the wrong drug to a patient, and you push them in a direction they don't need to go, and sometimes in the opposite direction entirely. The drug itself often has to be detoxified by a body that was already burdened. Side effects are common and multiple drugs risk interactions, synergistic toxicities, and potentiations.¹

This is why the drug model sometimes tells patients: come back when you're worse, so we can be sure what you have. The physician isn't being callous. They don't want to commit to a drug protocol until the diagnosis is clear enough to justify the risk of being wrong. So they wait, and in the meantime, the condition often becomes harder to treat than it would have been if intervention had started earlier.

Supplements behave differently. Supplements that aren't addressing the main issue often address something else useful in passing. The toxic profiles are generally low. Too much of a supplement is more likely to produce loose stools or mild discomfort than a hospital visit. The penalty for being wrong is small.

This asymmetry has a clinical consequence that practitioners trained in pharmaceutical thinking often miss: with supplements, you can and should experiment. You don't have to wait for diagnostic certainty before intervening because the cost of being wrong is bounded.

You can try something based on a reasonable clinical hypothesis, observe what happens, and adjust. The intervention itself becomes part of how you figure out what's going on. A good therapy is also diagnostic, when the patient responds, you've learned something about what was actually wrong. If they don't respond, you've learned something too. And if the supplement worsens symptoms, that is also telling, you've found the right lever, you just moved it in the wrong direction.

Given this perspective, when facing chronic disease, the question becomes, where do we start?

Clinical pearl: *Always stagger multiple protocols by a few days. Let any immediate improvements or discomforts show up before adding a second set of variables confounds the picture and complicates your diagnostics.*

References

1. Lazarou J, Pomeranz BH, Corey PN. Incidence of adverse drug reactions in hospitalized patients: a meta-analysis of prospective studies. *JAMA*. 1998;279(15):1200-1205.

Chapter 2, Reference ranges are calibrated against a sick population

We start with diagnostics, but we must be mindful of some limitations. When a patient gets bloodwork back and the values fall within the reference range, the practitioner and the patient both exhale. The assumption is that "within range" means healthy. That assumption is wrong.

Reference ranges are statistical constructs. A lab draws blood from a large sample of the population, calculates the central distribution of values, and defines a reference range. Anything outside that band gets flagged. This wisdom-of-crowds approach works when the crowd is healthy. The problem is that the crowd isn't.

The modern American population is chronically ill. Rates of obesity, type 2 diabetes, autoimmune disease, cardiovascular disease, neurodegenerative disease, infertility, anxiety, depression, and chronic pain are all dramatically higher than they were a century ago.¹ When reference ranges are calibrated against this population, what gets called "normal" is the central tendency of a sick cohort. A patient whose values sit comfortably in the middle of the reference range is not healthy by any absolute standard, they are average within a population that is itself unwell.

Weston Price's work in the 1930s documented what a genuinely healthy population looks like.² He traveled to isolated communities that had not yet adopted industrial food, Swiss alpine villagers, coastal Gaelic islanders, Inuit hunters, Aboriginal Australians, Andean highlanders, Melanesians, African pastoralists, and found populations with nearly perfect dental arches, almost no caries, broad facial structure, minimal degenerative disease, minimal mental illness, and minimal crime. When those same populations adopted white flour, sugar, and refined vegetable oils, the next generation showed narrowed arches, crowded teeth, increased susceptibility to infection, and the emergence of chronic diseases the donor populations had never seen. This was not a hundred years of slow decline. It was one generation. Price's work is observational and cross-cultural rather than controlled, it cannot isolate specific dietary variables, but the pattern across fourteen geographically and genetically distinct populations is striking and consistent.

Francis Pottenger's cat studies demonstrated a similar pattern in controlled experiments.³ Cats fed cooked meat (therefore low in taurine) and pasteurized milk showed progressive degeneration across generations, skeletal abnormalities, behavioral changes, reproductive failure, while cats fed raw meat and raw milk remained healthy. The lesson is that inputs that a species is not adapted to will produce reference-range statistics that reflect disease rather than health.

The practitioner is working downstream of roughly a hundred and twenty years of this degradation. Soil depletion,⁴ industrial food, environmental toxin load, electromagnetic exposure, chronic sleep restriction,⁵ chronic stress, sedentary life, and ubiquitous

pharmaceutical exposure have all compounded. The reference range is what you get when you average this population. It is not a description of health. A second flaw compounds the first. Lab reports are binary, a value is either flagged or it isn't. But biology is continuous. A fasting glucose of 99 mg/dL is reported as normal. A fasting glucose of 100 mg/dL is reported as impaired. These two patients are clinically identical. The cutoff is a reporting convention, not a biological boundary.⁶

A third flaw compounds both. Individual values within range can hide ratio imbalances that are clinically significant. A lab test may define 30 to 60 as acceptable for two values that should normally move in proportion. A patient with 31 on one and 59 on the other has both values within range, nothing flags, but the ratio is roughly one-to-two when healthy would be one-to-one.

Some of these ratios are named and reported. BUN-to-creatinine gives kidney perfusion and hydration information that neither value does alone; a ratio above 20 suggests dehydration or reduced renal blood flow even when both values are in range.⁷ Albumin-to-globulin tracks protein synthesis, immune activation, and nutritional status; inverted ratios appear in chronic inflammation and certain cancers before either protein moves out of range.⁸ AST-to-ALT patterns distinguish viral hepatitis, alcoholic liver injury, and non-alcoholic fatty liver when both enzymes sit within normal limits.⁹ Triglyceride-to-HDL is one of the more reliable insulin-resistance markers; a ratio above 3.5 indicates metabolic dysfunction in patients whose individual values are unremarkable.¹⁰ Neutrophil-to-lymphocyte predicts cardiovascular and cancer mortality more reliably than either count alone.¹¹

The fourth distortion is that the goalposts move with age, and they move in the direction of accepting decline as normal. A healthy young adult has an eGFR of 90-120 (mL/min/1.73m²). An eGFR of 60 in a thirty-year-old triggers a chronic kidney disease workup. The same value in a seventy-five-year-old is routinely called "age-appropriate."¹² But a kidney filtering at half the rate of a healthy young kidney is not fine, it has accumulated damage over decades from medications, dehydration, blood pressure, blood sugar dysregulation, mineral accumulation, and toxin exposure.

The same pattern applies across most lab values. DHEA-S reference ranges drop by a factor of five to ten between age twenty-five and seventy-five.¹³ Growth hormone, IGF-1, free testosterone, and thyroid function all have age-adjusted ranges that permit substantial decline before flagging. In each case, "adjusted for age" actually means adjusted for the observed decline in the population, which is not the same as the decline that is biologically necessary.

Some decline with age is real. A seventy-five-year-old man will not have the testosterone levels of his twenty-five-year-old self without exogenous support. But this acknowledgment should be tightly scoped. The seventy-five-year-old can and should still aim for the cardiovascular function, the liver function, the kidney function, the blood glucose regulation, the cognitive capacity, and the inflammatory profile of a healthy younger man. Not every system degrades at the same rate, not every system needs to

degrade at all and not all degradation is irreversible. The current system lumps everything together and treats the aggregate decline as inevitable.

The result is that patients in their fifties, sixties, and seventies are routinely told their labs look "fine for their age" when what is actually true is that their labs look typical of a sick population at that age. Typical is not healthy. Age-adjusted is not optimal.

Clinical pearl: *When you see someone who is an outlier for good health, ask them if they know why. Sometimes it is constitutional genetics, but every once in a while they will teach you something like 'yes, I fast for 10 days every spring...'*

References

1. GBD 2019 Diseases and Injuries Collaborators. Global burden of 369 diseases and injuries in 204 countries and territories, 1990–2019. **Lancet**. 2020;396(10258):1204-1222.
2. Price WA. **Nutrition and Physical Degeneration**. 8th ed. La Mesa, CA: Price-Pottenger Nutrition Foundation; 2009. (Originally published 1939.)
3. Pottenger FM Jr. **Pottenger's Cats: A Study in Nutrition**. La Mesa, CA: Price-Pottenger Nutrition Foundation; 1983.
4. Davis DR, Epp MD, Riordan HD. Changes in USDA food composition data for 43 garden crops, 1950 to 1999. **J Am Coll Nutr**. 2004;23(6):669-682.
5. Chattu VK, Manzar MD, Kumary S, Burman D, Pandi-Perumal SR. The global problem of insufficient sleep and its serious public health implications. **Healthcare**. 2019;7(1):1.
6. Ceriotti F. Establishing pediatric reference intervals: a challenging task. **Clin Chem**. 2012;58(5):808-810.
7. Hosten AO. BUN and creatinine. In: Walker HK, Hall WD, Hurst JW, eds. **Clinical Methods: The History, Physical, and Laboratory Examinations**. 3rd ed. Boston: Butterworths; 1990.
8. Busher JT. Serum albumin and globulin. In: Walker HK, Hall WD, Hurst JW, eds. **Clinical Methods**. 3rd ed. Boston: Butterworths; 1990.
9. Nyblom H, Berggren U, Balldin J, Olsson R. High AST/ALT ratio may indicate advanced alcoholic liver disease rather than heavy drinking. **Alcohol Alcohol**. 2004;39(4):336-339.
10. McLaughlin T, Reaven G, Abbasi F, et al. Is there a simple way to identify insulin-resistant individuals at increased risk of cardiovascular disease? **Am J Cardiol**. 2005;96(3):399-404.
11. Templeton AJ, McNamara MG, Šeruga B, et al. Prognostic role of neutrophil-to-lymphocyte ratio in solid tumors: a systematic review and meta-analysis. **J Natl Cancer Inst**. 2014;106(6):dju124.
12. Glasscock RJ, Winearls C. Ageing and the glomerular filtration rate: truths and consequences. **Trans Am Clin Climatol Assoc**. 2009;120:209-219.
13. Orentreich N, Brind JL, Rizer RL, Vogelmann JH. Age changes and sex differences in serum dehydroepiandrosterone sulfate concentrations throughout adulthood. **J Clin Endocrinol Metab**. 1984;59(3):551-555.

Chapter 3, Labs vs symptoms

A practitioner working without labs is blind to a substantial portion of the patient's physiology. Glucose regulation, lipid metabolism, kidney filtration, liver enzyme activity, electrolyte status, thyroid function, inflammatory markers, none can be inferred from how the patient feels at the precision required to manage them clinically. A patient with a fasting glucose of 180 mg/dL may feel fine while slow vascular damage accumulates over years.¹ The lab makes silent pathology visible.

Labs also catch what symptoms underreport. A stoic patient minimizes pain and fatigue. A patient chronically ill for years has lost the reference point to notice slow decline. The CRP climbing for three years registers inflammation the patient has stopped feeling. The lab does not care how the patient reports.

Labs permit tracking that symptoms cannot match. A patient on a metals chelation protocol can report feeling better, but the urinary metals test tells the practitioner whether the protocol is mobilizing all the target metals or only a subset of them. The labs are the reproducible measurement that shows whether the protocol is doing what it was meant to do, independent of subjective experience.

On the other hand, some tests measure surrogates, not the underlying physiology. The standard kidney panel reports creatinine and BUN as markers of glomerular filtration. A patient with substantial tubular damage, where most reabsorption work happens, can have entirely normal creatinine and BUN. Tubular damage produces low molecular weight proteinuria (beta-2 microglobulin, retinol-binding protein, alpha-1 microglobulin, NAG) that requires specific tests to detect.³ None are on the standard panel. Microalbumin catches earlier glomerular damage than creatinine, but most panels do not include it.

Some tests that aggregate what they should distinguish: Some lab tests combine elements that should be reported separately, the metals chapter addresses this in the context of f-block elements and chelation, where a lab failure to distinguish between gadolinium and uranium has direct clinical consequences for how the practitioner proceeds.

Why symptoms have been triaged

The shift to lab-leaning is not because physicians stopped caring about symptoms. It is because the time required to take a thorough symptom history has been compressed. Mid-twentieth-century primary care visits typically ran twenty to thirty minutes; current visits average closer to fifteen, with much consumed by electronic record documentation.²

The good news is that depth of symptom inquiry can be approximated by structured questionnaires. The patient fills out the form before the visit, arriving with the information already organized. The Standard Process Systems Survey is a particularly good example, roughly two hundred questions across fourteen sections covering autonomic balance, sugar handling, cardiovascular function, liver and gallbladder, digestion, endocrine subtypes, foundational vitamin status, and gender-specific patterns.

Palpating a few acupuncture points for tenderness, specifically Liver 3, Gall bladder 41, and CV-17 (bradykinin) is also useful.

Clinical pearl: Sclerology (Mehlmauer), is easily learned and can suggest which organ systems are the most stressed at the moment.

References

1. American Diabetes Association. Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes, 2024. *Diabetes Care*. 2024;47(Suppl 1):S1-S321.
2. Sinsky C, Colligan L, Li L, et al. Allocation of physician time in ambulatory practice: a time and motion study in 4 specialties. *Ann Intern Med*. 2016;165(11):753-760.
3. Bazzi C, Petrini C, Rizza V, et al. Urinary excretion of IgG and alpha1-microglobulin predicts clinical course better than extent of proteinuria in membranous nephropathy. *Am J Kidney Dis*. 2001;38(2):240-248.

Chapter 4, The detox traps

Many alternative practitioners begin with detoxification. The goal of a well-designed detox is silence.[†] The patient never notices it is happening. The toxins move out, the burden decreases, the labs improve, and the patient gradually feels better.

A second good outcome is immediate, even if minor, improvement. Some patients improve significantly within days once a protocol begins, most commonly when the blood compartment was carrying a meaningful share of the toxic load and the early phase clears it. This is real, but the practitioner must be mindful. Toxins also accumulate in tissue compartments, fat, bone, brain, organ tissue, and tissue stores release into circulation slowly.¹ If the protocol is stopped at the point of rapid improvement, the blood compartment will gradually re-accumulate from tissue stores, and symptoms will return. The timeline varies, days for some patients, months for lead stored in bone.²

The clinical practice that addresses this is to check in at one month and again at three months after apparent resolution. If symptoms are returning, the tissue stores are still releasing, and the protocol needs to resume. For patients with deep-seated burden, a maintenance dose may be appropriate for many years, keeping the blood cleared as the body slowly turns over tissue stores.

In seriously toxic patients with high stored burden and limited reserve, silent detox is not always possible. Even with the best protocols, there is always the risk of some redistribution, no binder or chelator is perfect.³ A sensitive, highly toxic patient may feel the load passing through, especially in the first few days. The question is when a reaction crosses from acceptable into something requiring investigation. The criterion: after a few days, each following day should be less severe than the day before.[†] If the reaction stabilizes at a low but continual level, this may be acceptable, but consider lowering the dose. That being said, before we get into detoxification protocols in more specifics, there are some traps to avoid.

Trap one: The protocol was poorly designed

Examples: a Phase I inducer without Phase II support for chemical detox,⁴ or chelators that aren't appropriate for the metals present or are too weak, either can cause redistribution. The corrective is to stop the protocol and identify the missing piece. More of the same product compounds the problem.

Trap two: The product itself is contaminated

Some of what the patient excretes during a "detox" is not their stored toxins leaving, it is the product's contaminants going in and coming back out.⁵ Low-quality zeolite frequently

contains heavy metals.⁶ Low-quality chlorella can contain heavy metals from growing water and mold toxins from improper drying. Low-quality herbal products can carry pesticide residues, solvents and adulterants.⁷

The clinical recognition cue: urinary metals appearing during a detox protocol may be the patient's stored metals leaving (the desired outcome) or the product's metals entering through the supplement and leaving through urine. The same lab result can have either meaning.

The corrective is product audit, not dose adjustment. The supplement must be replaced with one whose sourcing and quality control can be verified.

Trap three: The patient is more burdened than the protocol's standard dose was designed for

The product is well-designed and uncontaminated. The patient simply has more total burden than the standard protocol was built for, and a dose appropriate for a typical patient overwhelms this one.

This is not the industry's fault. The corrective is lower dose, slower titration, longer cycles between rounds, and in extreme cases a stepped entry beginning at fractional doses. Some patients will need a permanently modified version.

These three traps produce similar surface presentations, the patient feels worse, the validity window is violated, and the corrective for each is different. Trap one needs the missing component added. Trap two needs the product replaced. Trap three needs the dose reduced. Reaching for the wrong corrective makes things worse.

A practical procedure for trap three: Depending on the patient and their presentation, drop to ten to twenty-five percent of the original dose. If the patient reports manageable discomfort that decreases day by day inside the validity window, the practitioner has confirmed both that the protocol is correct and that the patient can tolerate it at reduced dose, and can begin titrating up. If the reaction at ten percent is still outside the window, the patient is likely dealing with one of the first two detox traps.

Trap four: Excretion and redistribution

In metal chelation, excretion in the urine does not preclude redistribution in the tissue. This happens with weak chelators. Sometimes, more metals are redistributed than released, but the practitioner seeing elevated metals in the urine concludes that the protocol is working. It is removing metals, but that is the trap. The protocol is also causing redistribution. If symptoms worsen, even as lab results show excretion, the protocol needs work.

The communication pattern that hides the traps

The hardest piece is not the traps themselves. It is the pattern that conceals them.

The patient starts a protocol. They feel worse. They report this. The practitioner, expecting a detox reaction, reassures: you're detoxing, stay with it, this is normal. The patient continues. They feel worse still. At some point they stop reporting, because reporting produces reassurance rather than action, and because feeling worse on a protocol they were told would help starts to feel like personal failure rather than clinical information. The patient either suffers through real damage in silence or quietly drops out.

This pattern fails in both directions. If the reaction was a trap, the reassurance was wrong and the patient was harmed. If it was a real detox response within the validity window, the reassurance was technically correct, but the relationship dynamic it produced, patient learns that reporting feels-worse is met with stay-the-course, means that next time, for any reason including a real trap, they might not report. The relationship may have been trained to suppress exactly the information the practitioner needs.

The way out is structural. The practitioner does not say "stay with it" without first checking the validity criteria. If within a five-day decreasing window, the practitioner supports the patient while explicitly inviting continued reporting: "tell me how each day compares to the one before, and if it isn't getting milder by day three, we stop and look." If outside the window, stop and investigate the four traps. The patient is never put in the position of deciding whether their reaction is "real" detox or something concerning. That judgment is the practitioner's job.

Clinical pearl: *Consider keeping a small snow globe in your office. It is a wonderful tool to explain why the detox protocol you are suggesting is designed as it is. A shake of the snow globe creates a cloud of particles floating about. The lesson is, we never want to turn a patient into a snow globe. Mobilize only what you can capture and drain.*

References

1. Genuis SJ, Birkholz D, Ralitsch M, Thibault N. Human detoxification of perfluorinated compounds. **Public Health**. 2010;124(7):367-375.
2. Rabinowitz MB, Wetherill GW, Kopple JD. Kinetic analysis of lead metabolism in healthy humans. **J Clin Invest**. 1976;58(2):260-270.
3. Andersen O. Principles and recent developments in chelation treatment of metal intoxication. **Chem Rev**. 1999;99(9):2683-2710.
4. Hodges RE, Minich DM. Modulation of metabolic detoxification pathways using foods and food-derived components. **J Nutr Metab**. 2015;2015:760689.
5. Cohen PA. The supplement paradox: negligible benefits, robust consumption. **JAMA**. 2016;316(14):1453-1454.
6. Montinaro V, Ionica M, Trezza G. High-dose zeolite supplementation raises blood lead levels. **J Trace Elem Med Biol**. 2016;33:63.

7. Saper RB, Phillips RS, Sehgal A, et al. Lead, mercury, and arsenic in US- and Indian-manufactured Ayurvedic medicines sold via the Internet. *JAMA*. 2008;300(8):915-923.

. Our technologies have had unintended consequences.

Now the pace has become exponential, and the gap between the introduction of a new technology and our understanding of what it does to us has widened.

The practical consequence is that new disease manifestations are not simply a matter of better diagnostics finding what was always there. Real new patterns of dysfunction are emerging that may not have even existed when the doctor was in residency. The doctors of today face symptoms and causes that a generation ago did not exist, and this trend shows no sign of slowing.

References

1. Brenner DJ, Hricak H. Radiation exposure from medical imaging: time to regulate? **JAMA**. 2010;304(2):208-209.
2. Relling MV, Evans WE. Pharmacogenomics in the clinic. **Nature**. 2015;526(7573):343-350.
3. Human Microbiome Project Consortium. Structure, function and diversity of the healthy human microbiome. **Nature**. 2012;486(7402):207-214.
4. Landrigan PJ, Fuller R, Acosta NJR, et al. The Lancet Commission on pollution and health. **Lancet**. 2018;391(10119):462-512.
5. Monteiro CA, Cannon G, Moubarac JC, Levy RB, Louzada MLC, Jaime PC. The UN Decade of Nutrition, the NOVA food classification and the trouble with ultra-processing. **Public Health Nutr**. 2018;21(1):5-17.
6. Cho Y, Ryu SH, Lee BR, Kim KH, Lee E, Choi J. Effects of artificial light at night on human health: a literature review of observational and experimental studies applied to exposure assessment. **Chronobiol Int**. 2015;32(9):1294-1310.
7. Leslie HA, van Velzen MJM, Brandsma SH, Kroetsch D, Vethaak AD. Discovery and quantification of plastic particle pollution in human blood. **Environ Int**. 2022;163:107199.
8. Cordain L, Eaton SB, Sebastian A, et al. Origins and evolution of the Western diet: health implications for the 21st century. **Am J Clin Nutr**. 2005;81(2):341-354.
9. Lynch SV, Pedersen O. The human intestinal microbiome in health and disease. **N Engl J Med**. 2016;375(24):2369-2379.
10. Grandjean P, Landrigan PJ. Neurobehavioural effects of developmental toxicity. **Lancet Neurol**. 2014;13(3):330-338.
11. Mendell MJ, Mirer AG, Cheung K, Tong M, Douwes J. Respiratory and allergic health effects of dampness, mold, and dampness-related agents: a review of the epidemiologic evidence. **Environ Health Perspect**. 2011;119(6):748-756.

Chapter 5, Cooking and the candification of food

Cooking made us human.¹ It also set in motion the colonic and metabolic patterns that the agricultural candification would later compound. Understanding what cooking actually does, to plant cell walls, to starch, and to protein is necessary before the microbiome chapters that follow. Those chapters will teach the practitioner how to rebuild colonic ecology; this one explains one of the first stresses we as a species applied to it. The issue is not just what modern patients eat. It is how they prepare it.

The benefits of cooking were immediate and enormous. Heat gelatinizes starch, denatures protein, and breaks down plant cell walls.² More calories become available from the same food. Chewing time drops. The gut shrinks. The colon of a modern human is less than sixty percent the mass expected for a primate our size.³ That freed-up metabolic energy went somewhere specific: the brain. Our ancestors traded gut for cortex, digestion for cognition. The anthropologist Richard Wrangham has argued convincingly that this trade is what separated *Homo erectus* from everything that came before.¹ We have become, physiologically, a cooked-food species.

But the trade came with a cost. Cooked starches and sugars injure the colon and exhaust the pancreas while cooked protein can burden the liver.

What cooking does to plants

A raw plant cell is a fortress. The cell wall is a layered composite of cellulose, hemicellulose, and pectin. Nutrients and fermentable polysaccharides are locked inside this architecture. When this structure arrives intact in the colon, bacteria must dismantle it from the outside in, layer by layer, releasing substrate gradually along the full length of the large intestine. The ascending colon gets the fastest-fermenting fragments. The transverse gets the next layer. The descending colon and sigmoid get the slowest-releasing material, the structural polysaccharides that take hours of microbial enzymatic work to access. This progressive release is how the microbiome stayed fed from cecum to rectum.

Cooking changes this in three ways

First, heat solubilizes pectin and what was insoluble structural cement becomes soluble, rapidly fermentable fragments and starch gelatinizes, unwinding into an amorphous gel that human pancreatic amylase can now digest completely in the small intestine. Very little reaches the colon. The pancreas must produce the insulin to handle the resulting glucose spike and the result in the colon is that the ascending colon receives a burst of rapidly available substrate that ferment too quickly.

By the transverse colon, fermentable carbohydrate is diminished. By the descending colon and sigmoid, there is little left. Without carbohydrate to ferment, the microbial community shifts proportionally toward proteolytic metabolism, fermenting whatever protein, amino acids, and endogenous materials are available.^{10, 11} This produces ammonia, indoles, phenols, hydrogen sulfide, and the toxic branched-chain fatty acids. The pH rises. Butyrate production drops. The colonocytes of the sigmoid and rectum receive less of the fuel they depend on.

This is not a minor detail. Butyrate is not just one short-chain fatty acid among three. It is the primary energy source for colonocytes, the signal that maintains epithelial hypoxia, the inducer of antimicrobial peptide production, the stabilizer of tight junctions, and the driver of mucus secretion.

And the barrier erodes from both directions. The Bacteroidetes, the bacterial population that specializes in degrading complex polysaccharides, do not disappear when dietary substrate runs out distally. They switch to the next available polysaccharide: the mucus layer itself.⁹ The colonic epithelium continuously secretes a gel of mucin glycoproteins decorated with complex sugar chains, and the Bacteroidetes have the enzymatic machinery to dismantle every one of those chains. When dietary polysaccharide is exhausted, they begin foraging on the host's own protective barrier. The mucus layer thins. The inner dense layer, which is supposed to protect the epithelium, loses thickness. More bacteria contact the epithelial surface. More antigen translocation. More immune activation. And because butyrate is the primary signal driving colonocytes to secrete more mucin, the mucus is being consumed faster and replenished slower at the same time.

The degree of this effect depends on cooking intensity. Lightly steamed vegetables retain more cell-wall structure than vegetables boiled to mush. But the direction is always the same: cooking front-loads fermentation into the proximal colon and leaves the distal colon progressively deprived.

What cooking does to protein

Cooking denatures protein. The three-dimensional structure unfolds, exposing cleavage sites to digestive enzymes. In the small intestine, this means faster absorption. Amino acids appear in the portal blood sooner and at higher concentration than they would from raw or less-denatured protein.⁴ The total amount absorbed does not change much. True ileal digestibility of cooked meat averages around ninety-five percent regardless of cooking temperature.⁵ What changes is the speed.

When amino acids flood into the liver rapidly, the liver and gut wall take a larger share before releasing the remainder to the rest of the body.⁷ (In medical terminology, this first-pass extraction by the gut and liver is called splanchnic sequestration, but the concept is simple: the liver eats first.) The liver sees a surge it cannot fully direct into protein synthesis, so it shunts the excess toward oxidation.⁶ The amino acids are deaminated, the carbon skeletons are burned as fuel, and the nitrogen enters the urea cycle for

disposal. The liver does gain energy from burning those carbon skeletons, this is not a net energy loss. The issue is the increase in ammonia formed and the extra workload placed on the liver.

Excess ammonia turns to urea, roughly a quarter of which enters the intestine and can feed the proteobacteria that turn it back into ammonia, raising stool pH. For this reason, clients with very alkaline stool that resists acidification should consider decreasing animal-protein consumption.

Cooking also liberates free glutamate from protein. Raw meat has its glutamic acid bound within the protein structure. Heat breaks those bonds and releases free glutamate, which is what MSG becomes. This is why cooked meat tastes more savory than raw. Every cooked meal delivers a dose of free glutamic acid that the equivalent raw meal does not. The implications extend beyond excitatory neurotransmission. Glutamic acid plus ammonia, both elevated now, yields glutamine, a preferred fuel source for cancer cells, a metabolic dependency so consistent it has been termed "glutamine addiction" in the oncology literature.¹² Parasites exploit the same fuel. *Toxoplasma gondii* uses glutamine as one of its two major energy substrates, and either glucose or glutamine alone is sufficient for the parasite's survival and replication.¹³ *Trypanosoma cruzi* switches to glutamine-based metabolism when glucose is exhausted.¹⁴ *Leishmania donovani* requires glutamine synthetase for its survival and infectivity.¹⁵

The problem compounds with age. The liver's first-pass extraction of dietary amino acids increases as we get older, in old rats, it roughly doubles.⁸ Why this happens is not fully understood. Over years, the cumulative hepatic workload from processing repeated high-bolus amino-acid meals contributes to the trajectory from healthy liver to fatty liver to compromised liver.[†]

There is no blood test equivalent to glycated hemoglobin (HbA1c) that specifically tracks the cumulative burden of amino-acid spikes. However, fructosamine and glycated albumin measure the Maillard reaction happening in the blood, glucose binding to the free amino groups on circulating proteins. The rate of this reaction depends on both glucose concentration and the availability of free amino groups. It is the author's position that postprandial amino-acid spikes from cooked protein may meaningfully increase the substrate available for glycation beyond what chronic hyperglycemia alone produces, compounding the AGE burden. When rapid amino-acid absorption is combined with high blood glucose, the standard postprandial state of the modern diet, both reactants for the Maillard reaction are present at high concentration simultaneously.[†]

The similarity between ammonia neurotoxicity and the clinical presentation of Parkinson's disease deserves attention. Patients with hyperammonemia from liver disease frequently exhibit motor symptoms that closely resemble Parkinson's, bradykinesia, rigidity, tremor, and parkinsonian gait. In documented cases of portal-vein thrombosis with hyperammonemia, the parkinsonism was reversible: when ammonia levels normalized with treatment, the motor symptoms resolved completely within a

week.¹⁶ Recent research has identified urea-cycle dysregulation and nitrogen overload in Parkinson's disease models, with ammonia proposed as a direct regulator of alpha-synuclein aggregation, the hallmark protein of Parkinson's pathology.^{17, 18} The author believes that chronic, subclinical ammonia burden, below the threshold of frank hyperammonemia but above the level our ancestors experienced on slower-absorbed protein, may be a contributing factor in neurodegenerative disease that has not been adequately investigated.†

The Candification of food

Cooking was one change, plant breeding another. Over the roughly ten thousand years since the agricultural revolution, we have been breeding plants to be ever sweeter, less fibrous, and less bitter.⁸ I call this process the 'Candification' of food.†

Candification is easiest to see in sugar, but sugar is not what defines it. What defines it is the direction of the change: a food refined away from its slow, recalcitrant fraction, the part that resists digestion, survives the small intestine, and reaches the far end of the gut still carrying something to ferment. In the plant that fraction is fiber and resistant starch, and stripping it reads on the tongue as sweetness and softness. But the operation is not confined to plants, because the slow fraction is not always a carbohydrate.

The clearest animal case is tenderness. A wild animal is tough, and its toughness is connective tissue. Collagen of tendon, skin, and fascia that resists the teeth and, later, the gut. Modern meat is bred and raised and trimmed toward the opposite: young, soft, marbled, tender, its connective tissue thinned before slaughter and cut away after. Tenderness is to the animal what sweetness is to the plant — the sensory signature of a food stripped of the fraction that used to reach the colon.

Candification arrived in two stages. Domestication changed what the plant makes; processing changed what part of the plant arrives. The two are not independent, because breeding made the processing possible. Free-threshing cereals, softer kernels, thinner skins on roots and tubers were each selected for ease of handling, and each lowered the cost of stripping the outer layers off entirely. The plant was made millable before it was milled. The same two stages run through the animal: breeding and husbandry thin the connective tissue before slaughter, butchery and trimming remove what remains

The hacks

This chapter does not argue for a raw-food diet, nor of sourcing foods our ancestors ate such as sunchokes and camas that would give us the prodigious flatulence that modern hunter gathers are known for. But, there are some simple dietary changes that we can do that will be of great benefit.

For starches: a paleo food hack

A paleolithic diet would have included substantial quantities of wild tubers, fibrous, starchy, and far less sweet than their modern counterparts. Modern potatoes, sweet potatoes, and yams have been bred for sweetness and soft texture, part of the candification pattern described earlier. The starch in a cooked modern potato is predominantly rapidly digestible starch, which breaks down to glucose in the small intestine almost as fast as table sugar. Very little reaches the colon to feed the microbiome, and it can cause blood-sugar spikes that carry consequences of their own. The same is true of modern grains. Ancestral grains were small, tough, and high in fiber; modern wheat, rice, and corn have been bred for yield and palatability, which in practice means softer, starchier, and faster to digest. A bowl of freshly cooked white rice delivers its glucose payload almost entirely in the small intestine. The colon, and the microbial ecosystem that depends on fermentable substrate reaching it, gets nearly nothing.

But there is a simple preparation method, supported by a growing body of research, that partially reverses this.²¹ It does not require removing starches from the diet. It requires cooking and preparing them differently. It is the conversion of a portion of the amylose in certain starchy tubers such as potatoes, sweet potatoes, yams and basmati rice into the prebiotic resistant starch RS3. This simultaneously blunts the insulin response to the meal while feeding the microbiome.

Another grain worth naming is barley. Hulled, not pearled, since pearling strips the bran where the useful fiber sits, it carries two fibers at once. Beta-glucan is soluble and ferments early, feeding the front of the colon. Arabinoxylan rides in the coarse intact kernel and ferments slowly from the particle surface inward, reaching further along. Cook it as a grain rather than milling it, and cook it just to tenderness rather than to mush, since the particle is doing the work. Cooked and cooled it retrogrades somewhat better than a potato as well, though not enough to change where that starch lands. The point of barley is the fiber; the resistant starch is a bonus

To create RS3, after cooking, refrigerate the starch. A single day forms a useful amount, but three days forms roughly a third more, and since the patient is already being asked to cook ahead, ask for the interval that pays. During cooling, the gelatinized starch retrogrades, the amylose chains recrystallize into structures that digestive enzymes cannot easily break apart.²¹ The food can be reheated gently with minimal loss of the effect. Do not heat it at high temperature; a gentle re-warming (under 120F) preserves the crystalline structures formed during cooling. The patient does not need to eat cold rice or cold potatoes.

When serving, add vinegar or another acid, which independently slows amylase activity and gastric emptying. Serve the starch alongside protein and fat, both of which further blunt the glucose spike. And if it is practical, eat the starch with the protein and fat, or at the end of the meal rather than the beginning. Add some oil, but only after the chilling step. Added during cooking interferes with RS3 production.

Serve the starch with a substantial portion of coarse raw shredded vegetable — cabbage, carrot, turnip, the dense-walled roots and stems, shredded coarsely and never cooked to mush or ground fine. This is not a garnish and it is not for the vitamins. Coarse insoluble fiber holds water, stimulates the colon mechanically, and carries fermentable starch further along the tract than it would travel alone, so some of what would have been consumed in the first third of the colon reaches the segments that are otherwise going hungry. Salad leaves do not substitute: they are ninety percent water and deliver a gram or two per large bowl, most of it soluble and gone early. The tuber chapter develops both points.

Each of these steps layers on the one before it. Taken together, they can reduce the glycemic impact of these starches by roughly fifty percent,[†] without removing a single food from the patient's diet. More of the starch reaches the colon intact, where it feeds the bacteria the microbiome chapters describe. The patient gets to keep eating rice and potatoes. The microbiome gets fed. The blood sugar stays flatter. That is closer to how a paleolithic body would have experienced a tuber or a handful of wild grain, not because the food is ancestral, but because the preparation has restored something the modern food lost.

For protein: eat it rare

Consider eating protein rare when the source is safe. This is not as exotic as it sounds. Sushi and ceviche are raw fish. Steak tartare and carpaccio are raw beef. The author has eaten raw ground beef regularly for decades without incident. A cooking temperature of 75 degrees Celsius produces the fastest protein digestion; temperatures below 60 produce meaningfully slower absorption⁵, closer to the "slow protein" pattern that results in less liver extraction, less oxidation, less urea production, less free-glutamate release, and better net amino-acid balance.⁴ Rare meat is a practical middle ground for those not ready for raw.

The goal is not to undo two million years of adaptation to cooked food. It is to recognize that the adaptation came with a cost, that the cost compounds with the agricultural candification that followed, and that simple preparation adjustments can offset the most significant consequences without requiring anyone to eat like an australopithecine.

Clinical pearl: *Elevated BUN from dehydration or weak kidneys also increases the available intestinal urea pool which supports proteolytic fermentation in the colon. Make sure prebiotics are in abundance in every meal.*

References

1. Wrangham R. *Catching Fire: How Cooking Made Us Human*. Basic Books; 2009.
2. Carmody RN, Wrangham RW. The energetic significance of cooking. *J Hum Evol*. 2009;57(4):379-391.

3. Aiello LC, Wheeler P. The expensive-tissue hypothesis: the brain and the digestive system in human and primate evolution. *Curr Anthropol*. 1995;36(2):199-221.
4. Boirie Y, Dangin M, Gachon P, et al. Slow and fast dietary proteins differently modulate postprandial protein accretion. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 1997;94(26):14930-14935.
5. Bax ML, Buffiere C, Hafnaoui N, et al. Effects of meat cooking, and of ingested amount, on protein digestion speed and entry of residual proteins into the colon: a study in minipigs. *PLoS One*. 2013;8(4):e61252.
6. Bender DA. The metabolism of "surplus" amino acids. *Br J Nutr*. 2012;108(S2):S218-S230.
7. Boirie Y, Gachon P, Beaufrere B. Splanchnic and whole-body leucine kinetics in young and elderly men. *Am J Clin Nutr*. 1997;65(2):489-495.
8. Mosoni L, et al. Features, causes and consequences of splanchnic sequestration of amino acid in old rats. *PLoS One*. 2011;6(11):e27002.
9. Desai MS, Seekatz AM, Koropatkin NM, et al. A dietary fiber-deprived gut microbiota degrades the colonic mucus barrier and enhances pathogen susceptibility. *Cell*. 2016;167(5):1339-1353.
10. Macfarlane GT, Gibson GR, Cummings JH. Comparison of fermentation reactions in different regions of the human colon. *J Appl Bacteriol*. 1992;72(1):57-64.
11. Cummings JH, Pomare EW, Branch WJ, et al. Short chain fatty acids in human large intestine, portal, hepatic and venous blood. *Gut*. 1987;28(10):1221-1227.
12. Wise DR, Thompson CB. Glutamine addiction: a new therapeutic target in cancer. *Trends Biochem Sci*. 2010;35(8):427-433.
13. Ngo J, et al. Metabolic cooperation of glucose and glutamine is essential for the lytic cycle of obligate intracellular parasite *Toxoplasma gondii*. *PLoS Pathog*. 2017.
14. Mantilla BS, et al. Glutamine analogues impair cell proliferation, the intracellular cycle and metacyclogenesis in *Trypanosoma cruzi*. *Molecules*. 2020.
15. Singh K, et al. Deletion of glutamine synthetase gene disrupts the survivability and infectivity of *Leishmania donovani*. *Microb Pathog*. 2021.
16. Lockwood AH. Reversible parkinsonism and hyperammonemia associated with portal vein thrombosis. *Neurology*. 2001;56(3):S28.
17. Wang X, et al. Urea cycle dysregulation drives metabolic stress and neurodegeneration in Parkinson's disease. *npj Parkinsons Dis*. 2025.
18. Zhou J, et al. Beyond organ boundaries: molecular mechanisms of hepatic encephalopathy and Parkinson's disease from the perspective of the gut-liver-brain axis. 2025.
19. Solesio ME, et al. The carbonic anhydrase inhibitor methazolamide prevents amyloid beta-induced mitochondrial dysfunction and caspase activation. *Neurobiol Dis*. 2016;86:29-40.
20. Fossati S, et al. Carbonic anhydrase inhibition selectively prevents amyloid beta neurovascular mitochondrial toxicity. *Aging Cell*. 2018.
21. Sajilata MG, Singhal RS, Kulkarni PR. Resistant starch, a review. *Compr Rev Food Sci Food Saf*. 2006;5:1-17.

Chapter 6, Microbiome as ally and mentor

Much of what is taken for granted as the patient's own, the architecture of the nervous system, the immune system's capacity to recognize friend from foe, the cognitive substrate the patient has been working with their whole life, was built in partnership with microorganisms.

Initiation one, neural architecture in utero

The fetus develops inside a body colonized by trillions of microorganisms. The maternal microbiome produces metabolites continuously, short-chain fatty acids, neurotransmitter precursors, B vitamins, bile acid derivatives, tryptophan metabolites, a subset of which cross the placenta during the entire period the fetal neural architecture is being laid down.¹

Maternal SCFAs reach fetal circulation and influence neural progenitor cell proliferation and differentiation.² Maternal inflammatory state, strongly regulated by microbiome composition, affects fetal brain development through cytokine signaling.³ Maternal tryptophan metabolism, which the microbiome heavily shapes, affects serotonin availability during fetal neurodevelopment.⁴ Mode of delivery has been correlated with subsequent cognitive outcomes.⁵

The synthesis: a fetus's neural architecture, neuron number and organization, synaptic density and pattern, is shaped in part by the metabolic environment the maternal microbiome produces.[†] Intelligence and neural complexity are partly a gift of the maternal microbiome.[†] A mother arriving at pregnancy with an impaired microbiome passes a different starting substrate to her child.

Initiation two, self-recognition via IgA in colostrum

At birth, the infant's gut is close to sterile. In vaginal delivery, the infant is seeded by the maternal vaginal and fecal microbiome, the vaginal organisms giving a protective, acidic first exposure, and the fecal organisms, chiefly *Bacteroides* and *Bifidobacterium*, supplying most of what will actually persist and found the gut.⁶ In cesarean delivery, the infant bypasses this transfer and is colonized primarily by skin organisms from the mother, medical staff, and the hospital environment.⁷ Skin organisms are not gut organisms.

Roughly a third of U.S. infants are now born by cesarean.⁸ These children have measurably higher rates of allergies, asthma, eczema, and other immune-mediated conditions.⁹

The infant's immune system must decide almost from first breath which organisms are permitted residents and which are invaders. This decision is taught by the mother in the first milk. Colostrum contains an extraordinary concentration of secretory IgA antibodies shaped by the mother's lifetime of immune experience.¹⁰ The IgA coats newly colonizing bacteria and effectively tags them: these are known, these are tolerated, these are not to be attacked.

An infant who receives no colostrum, or colostrum from a mother whose microbiome and immune system are compromised, does not receive this training in full.[†] Many patients who develop autoimmune presentations later in life turn out, on careful intake, to have missed this initiation.[†] This is not a claim that autoimmunity is simply caused by formula feeding. It is a claim that one foundational layer of immune self-recognition comes from colostrum IgA, and patients who missed it are working without a foundation others have.

Initiation three, postnatal myelination and cognitive development

Most mammals are born with largely complete nervous systems. Humans are born radically underdeveloped, the birth canal is too narrow to pass a fully developed brain. Myelination continues through infancy and into early childhood.¹¹ The prefrontal cortex and hippocampus undergo substantial postnatal development.

The substrate comes significantly from breast milk. Nervonic acid, concentrated in myelin, is present in human milk.¹² Sphingomyelin contributes similarly.¹³ Human milk oligosaccharides shape the infant microbiome, which produces metabolites that reach the developing brain.¹⁴

An infant not breastfed develops with different substrates available, different lipid profile, different microbial-metabolite-precursor profile, a different gut microbiome producing different circulating metabolites during the window when the brain is being built. Nervonic acid is only created in the body in very small amounts for nerve and brain repair. Fortunately, supplemental nervonic acid is available.

Initiation four, other-recognition and immune education

After colostrum IgA tags the commensal populations, the maturing immune system continues to encounter new organisms. The established microbiome teaches pathogen recognition, commensals occupy niches, produce signals that train T-cell and B-cell development, and regulate the balance between inflammatory and regulatory immune programs.¹⁵

An infant with a robust, diverse microbiome develops an immune system that recognizes pathogens efficiently and tolerates commensals reliably. An infant whose microbiome was disrupted develops a less well-trained immune system.¹⁶ Patients with recurrent infections, unusual susceptibility to pathogens, and chronically elevated

inflammatory markers may present with the developmental consequences of incomplete fourth initiation.[†]

Clinical pearl: *When you repair the microbiome of a woman, you also improve the developmental environment any of her future children will be born into. Since microbiomes are passed on mother to child, the work you do with one woman can echo for generations.*

References

1. Gomez de Agüero M, Ganai-Vonarburg SC, Fuhrer T, et al. The maternal microbiota drives early postnatal innate immune development. **Science**. 2016;351(6279):1296-1302.
2. Erny D, Hrabě de Angelis AL, Jaitin D, et al. Host microbiota constantly control maturation and function of microglia in the CNS. **Nat Neurosci**. 2015;18(7):965-977.
3. Estes ML, McAllister AK. Maternal immune activation: implications for neuropsychiatric disorders. **Science**. 2016;353(6301):772-777.
4. Kaplan BJ, Rucklidge JJ, Romijn A, McLeod K. The emerging field of nutritional mental health: inflammation, the microbiome, oxidative stress, and mitochondrial function. **Clin Psychol Sci**. 2015;3(6):964-980.
5. Curran EA, Cryan JF, Kenny LC, Dinan TG, Kearney PM, Khashan AS. Obstetrical mode of delivery and childhood behavior and psychological development in a British cohort. **J Autism Dev Disord**. 2016;46(2):603-614.
6. Dominguez-Bello MG, Costello EK, Contreras M, et al. Delivery mode shapes the acquisition and structure of the initial microbiota across multiple body habitats in newborns. **Proc Natl Acad Sci USA**. 2010;107(26):11971-11975.
7. Shao Y, Forster SC, Tsaliki E, et al. Stunted microbiota and opportunistic pathogen colonization in caesarean-section birth. **Nature**. 2019;574(7776):117-121.
8. Martin JA, Hamilton BE, Osterman MJK. Births in the United States, 2022. **NCHS Data Brief**. 2023;(478):1-8.
9. Sevelsted A, Stokholm J, Bønnelykke K, Bisgaard H. Cesarean section and chronic immune disorders. **Pediatrics**. 2015;135(1):e92-e98.
10. Hanson LA. Breastfeeding provides passive and likely long-lasting active immunity. **Ann Allergy Asthma Immunol**. 1998;81(6):523-537.
11. Deoni SCL, Mercure E, Blasi A, et al. Mapping infant brain myelination with magnetic resonance imaging. **J Neurosci**. 2011;31(2):784-791.
12. Farquharson J, Jamieson EC, Abbasi KA, Patrick WJA, Logan RW, Cockburn F. Effect of diet on the fatty acid composition of the major phospholipids of infant cerebral cortex. **Arch Dis Child**. 1995;72(3):198-203.
13. Tanaka K, Hosozawa M, Kudo N, et al. The pilot study: sphingomyelin-fortified milk has a positive association with the neurobehavioural development of very low birth weight infants during infancy. **Brain Dev**. 2013;35(1):45-52.
14. Bode L. Human milk oligosaccharides: every baby needs a sugar mama. **Glycobiology**. 2012;22(9):1147-1162.
15. Belkaid Y, Hand TW. Role of the microbiota in immunity and inflammation. **Cell**. 2014;157(1):121-141.

16. Gensollen T, Iyer SS, Kasper DL, Blumberg RS. How colonization by microbiota in early life shapes the immune system. *Science*. 2016;352(6285):539-544.

Chapter 7, Four insults to the microbiome

Insult one, disrupted birth and infancy

Cesarean delivery, now at approximately 1/3rd of births, bypasses the vaginal and maternal fecal colonization that would normally seed the infant gut.¹ Formula feeding removes the colostrum IgA that tags commensals as self, and removes the breast milk substrates the developing brain evolved to use.²

Insult two, a food supply that no longer feeds the microbiome

This is ubiquitous. The human microbiome evolved alongside a food supply rich in complex carbohydrates and structurally intact fiber.³ The modern food supply has these substrates in drastically reduced quantity and variety. Plants have been selectively bred toward sweetness, yield, and shelf life, and away from the fiber and oligosaccharide content that characterized their wild ancestors.⁴ Industrial processing removes further fiber. This was referred to earlier as the 'Candification' of our food supply.

Even patients with good eating habits, whole foods, home cooking, avoidance of processed products, are eating varieties bred away from what the microbiome evolved on.[†] The danger is not dietary mistakes by the individual. It is the food supply itself.

Insult three, chronic antibiotic-like exposures

Also ubiquitous. Compounds and conditions that are not antibiotics by classification but exert antibiotic-like pressure on the microbiome continuously.

Food preservatives are often anti-microbials. Glyphosate inhibits microbial biosynthesis pathways at concentrations encountered in the food supply.^{5,13} Artificial sweeteners, sucralose, saccharin, aspartame, alter microbiome composition at dietary doses.⁶ Emulsifiers in processed foods disrupt the mucus layer the microbiome sits in.⁷ Pharmaceutical residues pass through wastewater treatment into drinking water in low but continuous concentrations.⁸ Chlorinated water is designed to kill bacteria and does not stop when it reaches the gut. Factory-farm meat carries residual antibiotics from feedlot dosing.⁹

Individually, each exposure is below antibiotic-treatment level. Collectively and continuously across years, they constitute a background antibiotic load every patient in the industrialized world carries.

Insult four, acute antibiotics

The clinical antibiotics prescribed for diagnosed infections. These are acute, high-dose, and intentional. They save lives but are prescribed far more than indicated, often for viral infections, often prophylactically for minor dental work, often in broad-spectrum forms when narrow-spectrum would suffice.¹⁰ Each course injures portions of the microbiome. Diversity recovers partially over months to years and does not always recover fully.¹¹

Fluoroquinolones, Cipro, Levaquin, deserve specific naming. They can wipe more than half the species diversity of the gut in a single course¹² and the damage is disproportionately persistent. A patient who has taken fluoroquinolones, even once, may never fully recover without targeted restoration.† Intake should flag fluoroquinolone history specifically.

The modern microbiome is not a neutral starting point the following chapters will optimize. It is a depleted and pressured system under attack from multiple directions since before the patient was born.

Clinical pearl: *The appendix, once a reservoir to repopulate the colon after intestinal infections, now as a result of antibiotics, can become a chronic focal infection.*

References

1. Dominguez-Bello MG, et al. Delivery mode shapes the acquisition and structure of the initial microbiota. **Proc Natl Acad Sci USA**. 2010;107(26):11971-11975.
2. Victora CG, Bahl R, Barros AJD, et al. Breastfeeding in the 21st century: epidemiology, mechanisms, and lifelong effect. **Lancet**. 2016;387(10017):475-490.
3. Sonnenburg ED, Sonnenburg JL. Starving our microbial self: the deleterious consequences of a diet deficient in microbiota-accessible carbohydrates. **Cell Metab**. 2014;20(5):779-786.
4. Mayer AM. Historical changes in the mineral content of fruits and vegetables. **Br Food J**. 1997;99(6):207-211.
5. Shehata AA, Schrödl W, Aldin AA, Hafez HM, Krüger M. The effect of glyphosate on potential pathogens and beneficial members of poultry microbiota in vitro. **Curr Microbiol**. 2013;66(4):350-358.
6. Suez J, Korem T, Zeevi D, et al. Artificial sweeteners induce glucose intolerance by altering the gut microbiota. **Nature**. 2014;514(7521):181-186.
7. Chassaing B, Koren O, Goodrich JK, et al. Dietary emulsifiers impact the mouse gut microbiota promoting colitis and metabolic syndrome. **Nature**. 2015;519(7541):92-96.
8. Aus der Beek T, Weber FA, Bergmann A, et al. Pharmaceuticals in the environment, global occurrences and perspectives. **Environ Toxicol Chem**. 2016;35(4):823-835.
9. Van Boeckel TP, Brower C, Gilbert M, et al. Global trends in antimicrobial use in food animals. **Proc Natl Acad Sci USA**. 2015;112(18):5649-5654.
10. Fleming-Dutra KE, Hersh AL, Shapiro DJ, et al. Prevalence of inappropriate antibiotic prescriptions among US ambulatory care visits, 2010-2011. **JAMA**. 2016;315(17):1864-1873.

11. Palleja A, Mikkelsen KH, Forslund SK, et al. Recovery of gut microbiota of healthy adults following antibiotic exposure. **Nat Microbiol**. 2018;3(11):1255-1265.
12. Dethlefsen L, Relman DA. Incomplete recovery and individualized responses of the human distal gut microbiota to repeated antibiotic perturbation. **Proc Natl Acad Sci USA**. 2011;108(Suppl 1):4554-4561.
13. Mesnage R, Teixeira M, Mandrioli D, et al. Shotgun metagenomics and metabolomics reveal glyphosate alters the gut microbiome of Sprague-Dawley rats by inhibiting the shikimate pathway. *Sci Rep*. 2021;11:5431.

Chapter 8, The microbiome as garden

The microbiome is a living symbiotic system, trillions of organisms with their own metabolism, signaling, and responses. It cannot be forced the way a chemical reaction can. A useful frame is gardening. The gardener sets conditions, soil, water, light, temperature, adjacent plantings, timing, and the plant grows.

The practitioner works on terrain, pH, bile flow, transit time, available substrates. Works on diet, fiber, bitters, less-bred plants, removal of foods feeding wrong populations. Works on lifestyle, hydration, movement, sleep, stress. The microbiome attempts its own restoration once conditions allow.

Weeding is part of gardening

In a natural state, unprocessed food, clean water, no antibiotic exposure, the human microbiome assembles and maintains itself without intervention.¹, but we are not in the default state. The modern patient's microbiome has been overrun with populations that took advantage of altered terrain. These populations will not leave on their own and actively hold the terrain they created. The practitioner is reclaiming a garden that has been invaded.

That reclamation includes weeding. When pathogenic populations are entrenched, producing ammonia and alkalinizing the colon, forming biofilm matrices, colonizing territory they shouldn't be in, attacking the mucosal barrier, those populations do not always shift passively when terrain is corrected.

Targeted antimicrobials, biofilm-penetrating agents, negative high voltage/low amperage applications[†], and in some cases focused antibiotic use are all forms of weeding.

But weeding alone does not make a garden. Bare dirt with weeds pulled needs fertilizer and seed. In microbiome work: prebiotics feed the populations that belong, and probiotics add seed where the seed bank is genuinely missing.

A microbiome with a balanced terrain can repopulate species from very small numbers of surviving organisms, even a single bacterium, given the right conditions, is enough.² Bacteria with a 4 hour doubling time can increase by 1 million fold in 4 days. Most of the time, what the patient needs is terrain and fuel for organisms already present, not the introduction of new ones. Probiotics are genuinely indicated when specific populations have been driven so deep into dormancy they will not recover in useful timeframe, or have been fully eradicated, but this is more rare than you might think.[†]

The sequence matters. Adding seed to hostile terrain produces seed that doesn't germinate.[†] Probiotic flooding into a dysbiotic gut is one of the most common ways practitioners waste their patients' money, the probiotic passes through, nothing takes, and the practitioner concludes the product doesn't work when the garden wasn't ready for seed.

Antibiotics as herbicides

A broad-spectrum antibiotic is the microbiome's equivalent of spraying herbicides and pesticides across the garden. It kills some bad players and many good ones.³ For a patient with a bacterial infection they cannot clear, the ongoing damage of the infection can be worse than the temporary damage to the microbiome, but then we must make sure that the damage to the microbiome is indeed temporary by repopulating quickly. The assumption that a garden or a microbiome will self-assemble after scorched-earth intervention is often incorrect. What grows back is whatever happens to be present and whatever the now-dysfunctional terrain favors, rarely the populations that were there before. Antibiotic-associated diarrhea, post-antibiotic yeast overgrowth, post-antibiotic *C. difficile* colonization, all expressions of what grows back when the garden was not supported after intervention.⁴

What this means for the chapters that follow

The chapters treating specific microbiome work, large intestine, small intestine, sinuses, all operate inside the gardening frame. Each teaches a terrain to create, weeds to manage, fertilizers to add, and selectively, seeds to introduce. The specific organisms, terrain parameters, and weeds differ, but the structure is the same: set conditions, manage the populations degrading those conditions, feed what you want to grow, add seed where genuinely missing.

We begin with the large intestine.

Clinical Pearl: *If a client has a good microbiome and must do antibiotics, they can store some for their own stool for re-implantation later. 50 g of stool mixed with 200 mL sterile 0.9% saline and 25 mL USP glycerin with minimal air in a sealed tube. Mix, let sit 15 minutes at room temp so the glycerol penetrates cells then put in the freezer.*

References

1. Sonnenburg ED, Sonnenburg JL. The ancestral and industrialized gut microbiota and implications for human health. **Nat Rev Microbiol**. 2019;17(6):383-390.
2. Faust K, Raes J. Microbial interactions: from networks to models. **Nat Rev Microbiol**. 2012;10(8):538-550.
3. Willing BP, Russell SL, Finlay BB. Shifting the balance: antibiotic effects on host-microbiota mutualism. **Nat Rev Microbiol**. 2011;9(4):233-243.

4. Hogenauer C, Hammer HF, Krejs GJ, Reisinger EC. Mechanisms and management of antibiotic-associated diarrhea. *Clin Infect Dis*. 1998;27(4):702-710.

Chapter 9, We can't fix what we choose not to examine

Fecal matter is information-dense. It is the largest microbiome, the terminal step of the digestive tract, where everything upstream, stomach acid, biliary function, pancreatic output, small intestinal transit, fermentation dynamics, hydration, diet, produces a visible, measurable output. Every day, a functioning colon delivers a free report on digestion, fermentation, transit, microbiome balance, and bile flow. Almost no one reads it.

Most Western patients do not look at their stool. This is understandable. For most people, stool is a foul smelling sticky mush and the faster it is flushed the better. Most practitioners do not ask detailed questions about it. The practitioner's comfort with this topic sets the room. Directness, not jokes or indirection, makes the conversation easy. There is nothing funny or shameful about digestion. Treat it that way and the patient will too.

The pass/fail tests

No toilet paper needed

This is the easiest test and the patient will not have to get back to you with an answer, they will know from experience. No healthy animal soils itself.[†] When animal traders examined livestock for health, they would lift the tail to see if feces were present, if so, the animal was deemed sick. A fully formed, well-evacuated stool with adequate fiber and normal mucus leaves nothing behind. The more wipes a patient needs, the more dysfunctional the microbiome. Toilet paper is required when an inflamed and infected gut produces excess mucus and biofilms that cause stool to become sticky.

Mild smell

Another bit of data that a patient will know without checking is stool odor. A carnivore's stool will always have some smell due to indole and skatole, but anything beyond a mild odor reflects protein putrefaction, H₂S production, and unfavorable fermentation patterns.⁶ The upstream causes: inadequate stomach acid allowing protein to pass into the colon undigested, sulfur metabolism pushed toward H₂S, or a proteolytic-dominant microbiome.

A sulfurous, putrid, or death-like smell (hydrogen sulfide, putrescine, cadaverine, ammonia) points toward a globally alkaline colon where dedicated proteolytic organisms like *Klebsiella*, *Proteus*, *Fusobacterium*, and pathogenic *Clostridium* have taken over,

producing a different and more toxic metabolite profile. In this situation, we need to lower the pH.

Flatus

In a healthy gut, hydrogen is produced, but it is either absorbed by the gut wall into the bloodstream where it acts as an antioxidant, or it is captured by other bacteria to make SCFAs. In the imbalanced gut, methanogens convert it to methane, and sulfate-reducing organisms convert it to H₂S (hydrogen sulfide). While very small amounts of H₂S do have beneficial properties, methane's slowing of transit time is a problem.

Methane causes spasm and partial paralysis of intestinal smooth muscle, producing the constipation pattern characteristic of methane-dominant SIBO.⁷ Patients who present with chronic constipation that does not respond to fiber or hydration often have methane-producing organisms. The other fate, hydrogen sulfide, comes from sulfate-reducing bacteria and other gram-negative populations, which produce hydrogen sulfide, dimethyl sulfide, mercaptans, and ammonia in varying combinations.

The pressure contributes to colonic distension, and any toxic gases cross into the bloodstream, the intestinal wall is not a barrier to small-molecule gases.⁸ Gas volume can also apply pressure to the heart and organs above the colonic arch, which is why some patients describe cardiac-area discomfort that is actually digestive.[†] A healthy microbiome makes minimal gas, and any flatus (mostly CO₂) is completely without odor. That being said, temporary elevated gas production is a common experience for a few days to a week while the microbiome resets if you are following our protocols and is a sign that fermentation is restarting.

Stool buoyancy

Contrary to the common teaching, a floating stool is not a reliable sign of fat malabsorption⁵. Degassed stools of every type settle to nearly the same density, so buoyancy is a gas phenomenon rather than a fat one. Among the fermentation gases, only methane reliably supplies that buoyancy. Methane is poorly soluble and, unlike the other gases, is a terminal end product that the gut community does not consume further, so it lodges in the fecal matrix as trapped bubbles. Hydrogen, though also poorly soluble, does not float a stool on its own: it is taken up almost as fast as it is produced by the hydrogenotrophs competing for it, methanogens, acetogens, and sulfate reducers, and whatever escapes them diffuses across the colonic wall into the blood and is exhaled, which is the basis of breath hydrogen testing. Hydrogen's role in buoyancy is therefore entirely indirect: it is the substrate the methanogens reduce to the methane that does float. Carbon dioxide contributes little for the opposite reason. It is highly soluble, forming carbonic acid and bicarbonate, so it dissolves into the fecal water and is absorbed across the gut wall rather than persisting as a buoyant bubble. A patient can and should generate abundant CO₂, a mark of a vigorously fermenting microbiome, and still pass a stool that sinks, with no contradiction.

Because methane is the buoyant gas, a floating stool marks the presence of active methanogenic archaea. That signal alone, however, does not distinguish a healthy high-throughput fermentation from methanogen overgrowth: the same trapped methane can arise from robust hydrogenotrophic activity in a fiber-rich gut or from a slow, methane-dominant dysbiosis. Transit time and accompanying symptoms, not buoyancy by itself, separate the two. Water content is a second and independent route to a floating stool, so a bulky high-fiber stool or a loose one may float for reasons unrelated to methane at all. With stool that floats regardless of any intervention, consider the garlic extract allicin but be warned, it is a broad spectrum anti-microbial and will suppress healthy bacteria as well.

Good transit time

Clients should have at least one bowel movement a day. This is the floor. Below this, transit time extends into the range where conjugated toxins get cleaved by colonic bacteria and reabsorbed into portal circulation,³ and the colon functions more as storage than exit route.

However, a daily evacuation does not mean that the transit is optimal. What comes out each day may still be from 3 days prior. What we want is an 18-24 hour transit time. The easiest way to test is to take a tsp of chlorophyllin. Transit time is defined as how long it takes for the stool or the toilet water after a defecation to turn bright green.

Transit under sixteen hours can reflect the body speeding clearance in response to an irritant or toxin load, acute infection, malabsorption, hyperthyroidism, certain medications, or high stress. Thirty-six is acceptable. Beyond thirty-six, investigate.† Transit longer than thirty-six hours is where the deconjugation problem becomes serious.³ Toxins the liver conjugated for excretion sit long enough for bacterial enzymes to cleave the conjugation, releasing the free toxin back into circulation. Fix the transit and the burden often decreases without any other intervention.†

Optimally, a bowel movement on waking and shortly after each meal.† Three meals should produce three or four BMs per day, including the waking BM that clears overnight accumulation. This reflects healthy gastrocolic reflex function.⁴

If the patient has done everything right and has a slow transit time or dryer smaller stools, this is constipation. It typically has three causes. The first is dehydration. Explaining to patients that dry stool means the body was so thirsty it was pulling water from fecal matter to drink can be the reframe that gets them drinking. A good rule of thumb is the mouth should always be moist.

The second is lack of fiber. The 'candification' of food discussed earlier did several things to our crops. More sugar, less bitters and less fiber. Adding fiber back is the correction, and psyllium mixed in water with meals is the usual first reach. It suits some patients well and others poorly — its effect on the microbiome is unpredictable enough that it is not a blanket recommendation, so start small and judge by the stool. Coarse

raw shredded vegetable does the same mechanical work without that uncertainty and is the better default where the patient will eat it.

The third is a low fat diet. Fats and oils are peristaltic triggers. Consider adding more oils and fats to the diet when slow transit time is not moved by hydration and fiber.

Core stool pH ~5.7-6.2

Healthy colonic fermentation produces short-chain fatty acids that acidify stool into this range.^{1†} This target is tighter and lower than mainstream references. The tighter target reflects what stool pH looks like in pre-antibiotic-era populations and in hunter-gatherer groups outside the industrialized food supply.² A pH above 7.0 indicates pathogenic or proteolytic populations outcompeting the saccharolytic commensals, or urease-expressing organisms actively alkalinizing the colon.[†]

Elevated pH has three drivers, and they often combine. The first is too little acid made, loss of the short-chain-fatty-acid-producing guilds, or too little fermentable fiber to feed them. The second is too slow a transit, which raises pH not by itself but by what the extra time buys: more hours for that acid to be absorbed off the lumen, and more time for the community to exhaust its carbohydrate and turn proteolytic. The third is ammonia, which is alkaline and which arrives by three routes of its own. Urea is pulled from the blood and split in the colon when kidney clearance is reduced. Dietary protein arrives in excess of what the upper gut could absorb. And the carbohydrate-withdrawal switch described under smell below turns a community starved of fiber toward fermenting protein, so it makes base instead of acid. The mechanism and the staged correction are in the protocols.

More on proper stool pH measurements in chapter 11.

Clinical pearl: *When considering a fecal transplant for extreme cases, the same pass/fail tests apply. Also, best to match the donor to the same sex as the recipient.*

References

1. Cummings JH, Macfarlane GT. The control and consequences of bacterial fermentation in the human colon. *J Appl Bacteriol.* 1991;70(6):443-459.
2. Ou J, Carbonero F, Zoetendal EG, et al. Diet, microbiota, and microbial metabolites in colon cancer risk in rural Africans and African Americans. *Am J Clin Nutr.* 2013;98(1):111-120.
3. Hofmann AF. The enterohepatic circulation of bile acids in mammals: form and functions. *Front Biosci.* 2009;14:2584-2598.
4. Rao SSC, Kuo B, McCallum RW, et al. Investigation of colonic and whole-gut transit with wireless motility capsule and radiopaque markers in constipation. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol.* 2009;7(5):537-544.
5. Levitt MD, Duane WC. Floating stools—flatus versus fat. *N Engl J Med.* 1972;286(18):973-975.

6. Macfarlane GT, Macfarlane S. Bacteria, colonic fermentation, and gastrointestinal health. *J AOAC Int.* 2012;95(1):50-60.
7. Pimentel M, Lin HC, Enayati P, et al. Methane, a gas produced by enteric bacteria, slows intestinal transit and augments small intestinal contractile activity. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol.* 2006;290(6):G1089-G1095.
8. Levitt MD, Bond JH Jr. Volume, composition, and source of intestinal gas. *Gastroenterology.* 1970;59(6):921-929.

Chapter 10 Gram positive vs. Gram negative

Every bacterium in the colon wears one of two kinds of armor, and the distinction matters more than most practitioners realize. Gram-positive organisms have a thick, single-layered peptidoglycan wall. Gram-negative organisms have a thinner peptidoglycan layer wrapped in a second outer membrane, and embedded in that outer membrane is lipopolysaccharide. LPS. Endotoxin. It is one of the most inflammatory substances known to biology.

Not all Gram-negative bacteria are the same, and not all LPS is the same. The variable that determines whether LPS triggers inflammation or promotes immune tolerance is a structural component called lipid A. The lipid A from commensal *Bacteroidetes*, the ancestral Gram-negative populations the human gut evolved alongside, binds TLR4 weakly or acts as a competitive antagonist. It occupies the receptor without triggering the full inflammatory cascade. Some commensal LPS actively dampens immune activation.¹ A gut dominated by these organisms has LPS that is training the immune system toward tolerance.

The lipid A from *Proteobacteria* and pathobiont strains, the populations that expand in a dysbiotic modern gut fits the TLR4/MD-2 receptor complex tightly and triggers a strong NF- κ B-driven inflammatory response. This is the LPS most immunology textbooks describe, and it is the LPS the modern gut is increasingly producing.

The modern gut has traded one for the other. And the trade is not limited to the LPS itself. The same commensal *Bacteroidetes* that produce tolerogenic LPS are primarily saccharolytic, they ferment complex carbohydrates and produce the protective short-chain fatty acids. When those populations are displaced by the inflammatory Gram-negative strains, the patient loses the tolerogenic LPS and the protective SCFA production simultaneously. What replaces them runs proteolytic fermentation when fiber is scarce, generating toxic metabolites and consuming protective intestinal mucin. One ecological shift produces both outcomes at once.

The problem is not that Gram-negative bacteria exist in the colon. They are supposed to be there. The problem is which ones, in what ratio, and what happens when intestinal permeability is compromised and the more inflammatory LPS translocates to other locations in the body.

When the wrong Gram-negative populations dominate, the damage comes from three mechanisms. This book refers to those populations as Toxic Gram Negative, or TGN, bacteria.[†] Each produces a distinct clinical picture the practitioner needs to recognize.

The first mechanism is endotoxin translocation. In a compromised gut, LPS from TGN bacteria crosses the epithelium into the portal and then systemic circulation. This is metabolic endotoxemia, not sepsis, but persistent low-grade TLR4 activation driving insulin resistance, atherosclerosis, neuroinflammation, and fatty liver disease.² The patient presents with systemic inflammation that does not resolve. The practitioner looks for autoimmune disease, food sensitivities, hidden infections, all reasonable, but never considers that the inflammation is being fed continuously by bacterial wall fragments leaking from the gut. And because the tolerogenic commensal LPS has been replaced by inflammatory TGN LPS, the immune system has lost the signal that would otherwise be training it to stand down.

Dehydration compounds this problem. When the body is short on water, the colon reclaims more of it from the fecal stream. That is its job. But increased water reabsorption does not happen selectively. As the colon pulls water across the epithelium, dissolved and suspended material in the lumen concentrates against the mucosal surface. LPS, which was already present at some baseline level, is now present at a higher effective concentration per unit of mucosal contact area.

Transit slows simultaneously. A dehydrated fecal mass moves more slowly through the colon, extending the contact time between concentrated luminal contents and the epithelial barrier. Higher concentration and longer exposure are independently sufficient to increase translocation. Together they are multiplicative.

There is also a direct transport mechanism. When water moves across the colonic epithelium via the paracellular route, it carries dissolved solutes with it, a process called solvent drag. In vivo perfusion studies have consistently shown the colon to be more permeable to paracellular markers than the small intestine, a finding that initially surprised researchers given that colonic tight junctions appear tighter in isolated tissue preparations. Water moving paracellularly through the colon is large enough to carry molecules that would not otherwise cross the barrier on concentration gradient alone. LPS fragments and micelles small enough to fit the paracellular pathway get swept along with the water the body is trying to reclaim.

The mucus layer takes damage as well. Adequate hydration is required to maintain the gel phase of the colonic mucus barrier. A compacted, dehydrated fecal mass physically abrades the mucus layer and the epithelium beneath it, creating micro-disruptions that allow passage of molecules too large for intact paracellular transport.

The clinical consequence is that a chronically underhydrated patient will be running a low-grade endotoxemia.[†]

The second mechanism is toxic short-chain fatty acids. Acetate, propionate, and butyrate are protective, produced primarily by Gram-positive Firmicutes fermenting

dietary fiber.³ Lactate and succinate play intermediary roles depending on context. But the putrefactive SCFAs (valerate, isovalerate, isobutyrate) are produced by protein fermentation in TGN organisms like certain *Bacteroides*, *Clostridium*, and *Fusobacterium* species.⁴ When fiber drops and protein rises without fermentable substrate, the balance shifts from saccharolytic to proteolytic fermentation, and the putrefactive SCFAs accumulate.

Formic acid illustrates the principle clearly. Formate is a normal metabolic intermediate, an electron shuttle between organisms, a currency of interspecies cooperation.⁵ In a diverse ecosystem it does not accumulate. In a depleted ecosystem where the cross-feeding partners have been lost, it does. And accumulated formate is cytotoxic, it disrupts intracellular pH and inhibits mitochondrial respiration. The molecule alone is not the problem. The loss of the infrastructure that was supposed to handle it is.

The third mechanism is putrefying amines. TGN bacteria produce biogenic amines such as putrescine and cadaverine at disproportionately higher rates than Gram-positive bacteria.⁶ But the amines that matter most clinically are the ones the body converts into something worse. Trimethylamine, produced from dietary choline and carnitine, is oxidized hepatically to TMAO, a promoter of atherosclerotic plaque formation, endothelial dysfunction, and platelet hyperreactivity.⁷ A patient with TGN-dominant flora eating a steak is running a different metabolic program than a patient with a healthy microbiome eating the same steak.

A practitioner managing chronic inflammation, cardiovascular risk, or gut dysfunction without addressing the TGN ecology of the colon is working downstream of the problem. No amount of anti-inflammatory supplementation will outpace a gut that is continuously producing the inflammatory inputs that translocate throughout the body.

Acidic colonic pH selectively suppresses TGN populations while favoring the butyrate producers that maintain barrier integrity.⁸ At pH 5.5, *Bacteroides* species grow poorly and butyrate-producing Firmicutes dominate; at pH 6.7, the ratio inverts almost completely.⁹ The loop is self-reinforcing in both directions. More fiber, more SCFAs, lower pH, more butyrate-producer dominance. Less fiber, higher pH, more TGN expansion, more toxic output.

The suppression is a matter of differential acid tolerance rather than cell wall architecture. Undissociated SCFAs cross any bacterial membrane, dissociate in the near-neutral cytoplasm, and impose a proton load that must be actively cleared — mainly by running the membrane ATPase in reverse, at real ATP cost. *Bacteroides* defend cytoplasmic pH poorly under this load and lose ground below roughly pH 5.5. Several of the dominant butyrate producers tolerate it well, in some cases by simply operating at a lower internal pH rather than defending a gradient. They are, after all, the source of the acid.

That tolerance is a property of particular organisms, not of a taxonomic group, and it does not transfer to other compartments. The small intestine cannot be acidified this way at all: transit is fast, microbial density is orders of magnitude lower, fermentation is

minimal, and pancreatic bicarbonate buffers what little acid is produced. Overgrowth there requires the different levers taken up in the small intestine chapter. The protocols that follow break the second loop and initiate the first.

Clinical pearl: *Stool pH can vary by over the course of a day due to diet and transit time variations. Once the microbiome stabilizes, transit time and pH should stabilize as well.*

References

1. d'Hennezel E, Abubucker S, Murphy LO, Bhatt AS. Total lipopolysaccharide from the human gut microbiome silences Toll-like receptor signaling. *mSystems*. 2017;2(6):e00046-17.
2. Violi F, Cammisotto V, Bartimoccia S, et al. Gut-derived low-grade endotoxaemia, atherothrombosis and cardiovascular disease. *Nature Reviews Cardiology*. 2023;20(1):24-37.
3. Louis P, Flint HJ. Formation of propionate and butyrate by the human colonic microbiota. *Environmental Microbiology*. 2017;19(1):29-41.
4. Windey K, De Preter V, Verbeke K. Relevance of protein fermentation to gut health. *Molecular Nutrition & Food Research*. 2012;56(1):184-196.
5. Trischler R, Müller V. Formate as an energy currency in *Blautia luti*. Goethe University Frankfurt, 2026. Published February 2026.
6. Pugin B, Barcik W, Westermann P, et al. A wide diversity of bacteria from the human gut produces and degrades biogenic amines. *Microbial Ecology in Health and Disease*. 2017;28(1):1353881.
7. Wang Z, Klipfell E, Bennett BJ, et al. Gut flora metabolism of phosphatidylcholine promotes cardiovascular disease. *Nature*. 2011;472(7341):57-63.
8. Walker AW, Duncan SH, McWilliam Leitch EC, et al. pH and peptide supply can radically alter bacterial populations and short-chain fatty acid ratios within microbial communities from the human colon. *Applied and Environmental Microbiology*. 2005;71(7):3692-3700.
9. Duncan SH, Louis P, Thomson JM, Flint HJ. The role of pH in determining the species composition of the human colonic microbiota. *Environmental Microbiology*. 2009;11(8):2112-2122.

Chapter 11, Stool pH controls microbiome content

Stool pH is the selection pressure that determines which populations grow in the colon and which do not. Shift the pH and the microbiome shifts with it. Fail to shift the pH and no amount of probiotic supplementation, dietary intention, or clinical effort will produce durable change.

The pH of the colonic environment is itself the cause of population composition. Different populations have different pH preferences¹, and each actively reshapes pH toward the range it prefers. Acid-producing populations lower pH. Alkali-producing populations raise it. The dynamic is self-reinforcing in both directions, that is why pH works as a clinical lever.

This chapter teaches the mechanism behind that lever, what generates colonic pH, which populations compete across the pH landscape, how pH governs the antimicrobial system that holds the ecosystem together, and what the practitioner can do when the system has tipped the wrong way.

The gradient from ascending to descending colon

The pH rises slightly (but still acidic) as we move to the transverse and descending colon. Fermentable substrate is partially depleted. Short-chain fatty acid concentrations decline. The community balance begins to shift: gram-negative polysaccharide degraders that produce acetate and propionate but not butyrate start to dominate.

Without slow-to-ferment fibers, the descending colon and sigmoid shift alkaline. Short-chain fatty acid production drops, and the products of protein fermentation, ammonia, branched-chain fatty acids, phenolic compounds, progressively increase from proximal to distal.² While there are always protein sources for this to happen (desquamated epithelial cells, mucins, pancreatic secretions, bacterial cell turnover), if an alkaline pH favors it, consuming more protein than we can absorb in the small intestine exacerbates this problem.[†]

In the colon, pH is not an independent variable. It is the net of two acidifying and alkalinizing forces working against an alkaline baseline. The material leaving the small intestine is alkaline, terminal ileal pH is approximately 7.4, because pancreatic and biliary secretions flood the lumen with bicarbonate, and the colon itself secretes

bicarbonate, partly coupled to short-chain fatty acid absorption. Bicarbonate is the resting state of the colonic environment. Left alone, the lumen sits near 7.4.

Short-chain fatty acids are what pull it down. When saccharolytic bacteria ferment carbohydrate, they produce acetate, propionate, and butyrate, and these acids drive the proximal colon from the incoming 7.4 down toward 5.5 to 6.0. This is the only force in the colon that meaningfully lowers pH. Nothing else acidifies the lumen to the same degree, not stomach acid, which is neutralized in the duodenum long before the colon and never arrives as acid, and not diet directly. Gastric acid matters here, but upstream: when it is adequate, protein is digested and absorbed in the small intestine and little reaches the colon; when it is low, undigested protein arrives as substrate for proteolytic fermentation, which pushes colonic pH the other way.†

Two forces push pH back up. The first is loss of the acidifying SCFA due to slow transit time. The second is ammonia, from urease cleaving blood-derived urea and from proteolytic fermentation of amino acids.

This gives the practitioner a cleaner reading than the older saccharolytic-versus-proteolytic framing. A low pH means SCFA production is winning against the bicarbonate baseline. A pH near 7.4 means one of two very different things: SCFA production has failed and the lumen has relaxed back to its alkaline resting state, and/or some ammonia is being actively produced. A pH well above 7.4 can only mean ammonia.

The four populations

Beyond the conventional teaching on gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria, the colonic microbiome also divides into four functional groups that compete across this pH landscape. Their order from the most acid-tolerant to the most alkaline-favored defines the ecological succession that pH encodes. A chart showing these populations and their metabolic outputs plotted against pH is available at remedylink.com/charts

First: the lactate producers. Two genera do this work and they sit in different phyla: *Lactobacillus*, a Firmicute and a lactic acid bacterium proper, and *Bifidobacterium*, an Actinomycetote. In the colon the second is the one that matters; *Lactobacillus* is largely oral and upper-GI and typically sits under one percent of colonic reads. These are the most acid-tolerant organisms in the colon. They ferment prebiotic oligosaccharides (FOS, GOS, inulin, XOS) to lactate. Their substrates are heat-stable and arrive in the colon regardless of how the food was cooked. They are proximal fermenters by nature. They are also the population that human milk oligosaccharides selectively feed, a point that matters when intervention is discussed later in this chapter.

Second: the Bacteroidetes. Bacteroides and Prevotella. These are the generalist polysaccharide degraders. They carry enormous arsenals of polysaccharide utilization loci, fifty to a hundred per species, each dedicated to a specific complex carbohydrate. They degrade plant cell wall polysaccharides, resistant starch, and mucin glycans

through extracellular enzymatic machinery, and they produce acetate and propionate. Their LPS is tolerogenic, it does not trigger inflammatory signaling. *Bacteroides* peak at pH 6.5, with max SCFA production at pH 6.2. This is however a modern reading. Hunter gatherer *Prevotella* prefer a lower pH[†].

Third: the saccharolytic Firmicutes. This group includes *Faecalibacterium prausnitzii*, *Roseburia*, *Eubacterium rectale*, *Clostridium* clusters IV and XIVa, and the cross-feeders *Eubacterium hallii* and *Anaerostipes*. These are the butyrate producers.³ They cross-feed on lactate plus acetate, converting it to butyrate. They also ferment resistant starch and specific fibers directly. They peak at pH 5.7.⁴

What is an optimal stool pH? If we look the the max combined value of acetate, propionate and butyrate, we get a pH of ~6.0.† while personal experience gives ~5.7.

Fourth: the toxic gram-negative Enterobacteriaceae and urease producers. This group includes *Klebsiella*, *Proteus*, *Morganella*, pathogenic *E. coli* strains, and *Enterobacter*. These organisms tolerate a broad pH range, they grow fine at pH 5.75 in pure culture. Their competitive disadvantage in a healthy colon is not pH sensitivity. It is the short-chain fatty acid antimicrobial mechanism described in the next section. The competitive advantage of these organisms is not that they grow better at high pH. It is that their competitors grow worse.

Two mechanisms within this group drive the alkaline shift. The first is urease activity. Urease cleaves blood-derived urea into ammonia and CO₂, directly alkalinizing the lumen. This is the primary pH-engineering weapon, the enzyme that actively pushes the environment in their favor. The second is proteolytic fermentation. When carbohydrate substrate is depleted, these organisms and other proteolytic fermenters produce ammonia, hydrogen sulfide, indoles, phenols, and biogenic amines from amino acid fermentation. The substrate for urease is blood-derived urea diffusing into the lumen; the substrate for proteolytic fermentation is undigested protein reaching the colon. The combined outputs are ammonia (from both pathways), inflammatory LPS, and the toxic branched-chain fatty acids isobutyrate, isovalerate.

Many products of this group are directly toxic. Ammonia is CNS-toxic and drives liver work. Hydrogen sulfide is genotoxic at chronic low-level exposure⁵. The biogenic amines are histamine-class compounds driving systemic symptoms. The urease producers and the proteolytic fermenters are not always the same organisms, but they reinforce each other: urease raises pH, which favors the proteolytic fermenters, whose ammonia output raises pH further.

The SCFA antimicrobial mechanism

This is the mechanism that holds the entire ecosystem together, and it depends on pH. Short-chain fatty acids are weak acids with a pKa around 4.8. At the pH of a healthy colon, a substantial fraction of SCFAs exists in the protonated, undissociated form. This protonated form is membrane-permeable. It freely crosses the gram-negative outer membrane⁶, enters the bacterial cytoplasm (which is maintained at roughly pH 7.2), and

dissociates inside the cell, releasing protons. This overwhelms the cell's acid tolerance systems, disrupts the proton motive force, and inhibits replication.

The critical finding: neither pH alone nor SCFAs alone are sufficient. Enterobacteriaceae grow perfectly well at pH 5.7 in the absence of SCFAs. They are also unaffected by SCFAs at pH 7.0. Suppression requires both conditions simultaneously, physiological SCFA concentrations at acidic pH. The protonated form of SCFA that does the damage only exists in sufficient quantity when the pH is low enough to keep the acids undissociated. As pH rises, SCFAs deprotonate, lose their membrane-penetrating ability, and the antimicrobial pressure lifts.

This has implications for how SCFAs can be used clinically. Oral SCFA supplements are absorbed largely in the small intestine and proximal colon, so most of the dose reaches systemic circulation rather than the distal colon. Oral dosing is useful for the systemic roles of SCFAs, Treg modulation, gut barrier signaling, mood effects, but does not deliver SCFA to the distal colon in quantities sufficient to drive the pH-dependent antimicrobial mechanism just described.[†] For the distal antimicrobial effect, rectal delivery (enema or microenema) is required, or on-site creation by the microbiome itself, and the pH window for that effect is ~5.7.

This is not how antibiotics work. Antibiotics kill on contact within hours. SCFA suppression works over days and weeks, exhausting the target organisms' ability to maintain themselves. The cell must expend energy pumping protons back out. Many pathogenic organisms can do this for a while. None can do it indefinitely. Patients often see pH shifts within one to two weeks of effective intervention, but the alkalinizing populations will not be gone on day three, but in time, with low pH, SCFA accumulation can drive them to dormancy or death.

Both outcomes are clinical wins. Dormancy is not death, but a dormant organism is not producing harmful metabolites or maintaining alkaline pH. If terrain is maintained, it stays dormant. If terrain is lost, it can reactivate, which is why maintenance matters even after acute success.

The gram-positive Firmicutes and Bifidobacteria tolerate their own metabolites because they have evolved efflux pumps and cytoplasmic buffering systems specifically adapted to SCFA exposure. The Bacteroidetes show some sensitivity to the most acidic conditions but tolerate the moderate acid range. The Enterobacteriaceae have no such adaptation. Inhibition also increases with SCFA chain length, butyrate suppresses Enterobacteriaceae more effectively than propionate, and propionate more than acetate⁷. This is another reason butyrate loss matters beyond its role as colonocyte fuel.

The positive feedback loop

Above approximately pH 6.5, the system begins to destabilize.

SCFA protonation drops. The antimicrobial pressure on Enterobacteriaceae weakens.

Urease output from these organisms rises, the enzyme's optimum is around pH 7.4, and

the organisms are freed from SCFA-mediated membrane stress. Ammonia production increases. The ammonia raises pH further. More SCFA deprotonates. More suppression lifts. More Enterobacteriaceae grow. More urease is produced. More ammonia.

This is a self-accelerating positive feedback loop. Once it starts, the transition from acceptable to dysbiotic can happen rapidly because each step reinforces every other step. Population expansion of the inflammatory Enterobacteriaceae follows the urease-driven pH shift, their inflammatory LPS activates mucosal immune signaling, damages the epithelial barrier, and recruits neutrophils. The toxic branched-chain fatty acids, isobutyrate, isovalerate appear as proteolytic fermentation displaces saccharolytic. Butyrate production collapses.

Breaking an established feedback loop requires intervention at multiple points simultaneously. This is why single interventions, just probiotics, just fiber, just prebiotics, often fail in established dysbiosis. The loop re-establishes itself unless several legs are knocked out at once.

The lactate-to-butyrate relay

The two most acid-tolerant populations, the lactate producers and the saccharolytic Firmicutes, operate an internal relay. The lactate producers ferment prebiotic oligosaccharides to lactate, and because the bifid shunt yields roughly three acetate for every two lactate, they supply both halves of what the next tier needs. The Firmicutes cross-feeders (*Eubacterium hallii*, *Anaerostipes*) convert that lactate plus acetate into butyrate⁸. When the relay is intact, lactate does not accumulate, it is consumed as fast as it is produced. The butyrate output is the clinically important endpoint.

When the relay breaks, typically because antibiotics have depleted the Firmicutes cross-feeders while leaving the lactic acid bacteria partially intact, lactate accumulates. Lactate has two possible sinks, not one. Besides the lactate-to-butyrate route just described, a separate group of organisms (the acrylate pathway users, such as *Megasphaera elsdenii* and *Coprococcus catus*) converts lactate to propionate. Pathological lactate accumulation therefore requires losing both sets of utilizers, the butyrate producers and the lactate-to-propionate producers. If either sink survives, lactate is still consumed and does not pile up. This is why the accumulation seen in critically ill patients reflects a broadly collapsed cross-feeding community rather than the loss of a single guild.

Lactic acid has a pKa of 3.86, which makes it a substantially stronger acid than the SCFAs. Lactate accumulation drives pH below 6.0 through a different mechanism than healthy SCFA acidification. This produces the acidic pathology seen in critically ill patients, not a sign of a healthy ecosystem but of a relay that has failed at the receiving end.

Feeding prebiotic oligosaccharides to the lactate producers only works if the cross-feeding Firmicutes are present to complete the relay. If they are not, if *Faecalibacterium*

prausnitzii, Roseburia, Eubacterium rectale, Eubacterium hallii, and Anaerostipes are depleted, then lactate accumulates without converting to butyrate. The pH drops, because lactate is an acid, but the ecosystem has not recovered. The colonocytes are still starving for butyrate. The mucosal barrier is still unsupported. Lactate accumulation in the adult colon is not a sign of health, it is a marker of microbiota perturbation. In inflammatory bowel disease, elevated fecal lactate correlates with disease severity and with reduced butyrate-producing species. The clinical signs of this relay gap are a patient whose stool pH drops in response to prebiotic intervention but whose symptoms do not improve, or worsen. Bloating, gas, and osmotic loose stools with acidic pH but without clinical improvement suggest that the first tier of the relay is active but the second tier is missing. The organisms needed to complete the relay, the obligate anaerobic butyrate-producing Firmicutes, cannot currently be delivered as conventional probiotics. They die within minutes of oxygen exposure, cannot survive encapsulation or shelf storage, and early clinical trials of next-generation probiotic formulations have failed to raise fecal butyrate levels reliably. The one intervention that can deliver a complete anaerobic community, including these organisms, is fecal microbiota transplant. FMT has demonstrated engraftment of Faecalibacterium and Roseburia in recipients, with transient restoration of butyrate synthesis. The limitation is durability, without concurrent substrate support, engraftment fades. Until shelf-stable formulations of strict anaerobes solve the delivery problem, FMT combined with sustained prebiotic feeding remains the most direct way to rebuild a broken relay.† Finding a suitable healthy donor can be a challenge. That being said, stool tests rarely show total absence of any species of beneficial bacteria. They are there, but in small amounts or dormant. Probiotics are rarely the answer, the terrain is.

What butyrate does

Butyrate is the preferred fuel for colonic epithelium⁹ and supports membrane integrity throughout the body, not just the gut.† It maintains epithelial hypoxia via PPAR-gamma activation¹⁰, which limits oxygen availability to facultative anaerobes. It stabilizes tight junctions. It drives mucus secretion. It induces antimicrobial peptide production. And it is a histone deacetylase inhibitor, a direct regulator of gene expression in the colonic epithelium that serves as an epigenetic brake on uncontrolled proliferation.

Propionate reaches the liver and contributes to glucose and lipid regulation¹¹. Acetate does varied systemic work including contributing to the suppression of alkaline-loving pathogenic bacteria. All three short-chain fatty acids modulate regulatory T cells¹², tighten the gut barrier, cross the blood-brain barrier in small amounts, and influence microglial activation¹³ and neurotransmitter production and can have positive effects on mood.†

But when the Firmicutes-to-Bacteroidetes transition occurs as pH rises, the shift from butyrate producers to acetate and propionate producers, the colonocytes lose their preferred fuel, their barrier maintenance signal, their hypoxia signal, and their proliferation brake simultaneously. This is why the practitioner must read pH as a story about which bacteria are dominant, not just whether acids are present.

The kidneys and the colon

Ammonia is both a marker and a mechanism.

As a marker, rising ammonia signals that proteolytic fermentation is gaining ground, that carbohydrate substrate has been depleted and the microbial community is fermenting protein and amino acids instead. As a mechanism, ammonia is directly toxic to colonocytes. It disrupts tight junctions, increases mucosal permeability, promotes inflammatory signaling, and is the alkalinizing agent that drives the positive feedback loop.

The urea that urease cleaves does not come from the diet. It diffuses into the colonic lumen from the blood. This means ammonia production in the colon is not entirely dependent on what the patient eats, it is partly driven by the systemic urea pool, which reflects whole-body protein metabolism. A patient with elevated blood urea nitrogen is delivering more substrate to colonic urease producers regardless of dietary changes. This is one reason why colonic dysbiosis can be stubbornly resistant to dietary intervention alone in patients with impaired renal function or high protein turnover.

Reading a stool pH

Stool pH is a quick and inexpensive window into colonic ecology. Specific organisms come and go with diet, seasons, stress, travel. What stays stable is which metabolic mode the colon is operating in, and stool pH is the single best readout of that mode. A stool pH of approximately 5.8 to 6.2 is optimal† and is consistent with saccharolytic dominance, adequate short-chain fatty acid production, sufficient protonation for Enterobacteriaceae suppression, and baseline levels of ammonia and toxic metabolites. In most patients, a pH in this range means the ecosystem is working.

A stool pH of 6.5 to 6.8 suggests the community has shifted toward Bacteroidetes dominance. Butyrate production is declining. The SCFA antimicrobial mechanism is weakening. The system is still saccharolytic but losing ground. Intervention at this stage is easier than after the feedback loop engages.

A stool pH between 6.8 and 7.6 is the ambiguous band, and it is where most misreading happens. Because the material entering the colon is already near 7.4, a reading in this range can mean one of two things and the pH number cannot distinguish them. It may mean SCFA production has simply become insufficient to acidify the lumen below its bicarbonate baseline, a saccharolytic deficit with no urease overgrowth at all. Or it may mean ammonia is being actively produced and the feedback loop is engaging. Or both at once. The distinction is not academic, because the interventions diverge: a saccharolytic deficit responds to feeding the acid-producing populations, while active ammonia production requires direct antimicrobial pressure on the urease producers. To tell them apart, the practitioner reads the corroborating signals, a strong ammoniacal odor, elevated blood urea nitrogen, a history of broad-spectrum antibiotics, or simply adds specific prebiotics described later in this chapter. If prebiotics moves the pH down, the deficit was saccharolytic. If it does not, urease-producing populations may be holding the line, transit time may be too long or the prebiotic seed bank is genuinely deficient.

A stool pH above 7.6 removes the ambiguity. Bicarbonate alone cannot carry the lumen past roughly 7.5; reaching higher requires a stronger base, and in the colon the only base strong enough is ammonia. A reading above 7.6 therefore confirms active ammonia production, urease-positive dysbiosis, proteolytic fermentation, or both, and the positive feedback loop is established.

A stool pH below 5.5 in a sick patient does not mean the colon is healthy. In critically ill patients, acidic stool reflects pathological fermentation, D-lactic acid, succinic acid, and formic acid from a disrupted ecosystem, not healthy short-chain fatty acid production. The relay has broken at the receiving end. Lactate is accumulating because the Firmicutes cross-feeders are gone. Propionic acid is markedly decreased. The number looks like a well-fed colon. It is not. This is the same-number-different-pathology pattern this book returns to repeatedly: a lab value only means something when the practitioner knows what is generating it.

pH litmus paper variables

The center of the stool is more acidic than the outer portions. In my own paired readings, surface and freshly broken core from the same stool, the surface runs about one full pH unit more alkaline. The outer layer has been in contact with rectal mucus and secretion; the core carries the luminal fermentation history.

Read the center of the paper, not the edges. Fluid migrates outward by capillary action and the margins will not read true.

Surface readings drift upward as time passes. Take the surface reading within about ten seconds of passage. The drift over the first few seconds is small, but the rule keeps every client reading the same test.

This creates a practical problem. A smear on toilet paper reads predominantly the outside of the stool. Reading the inside requires defecating into a disposable bowl, gloving, and breaking the stool rather than cutting it, which is accurate and which almost no one will do twice.

So the test we actually use is the toilet paper smear, and the target is set on the smear directly. Aim for pH 6.5 to 6.7 (a smear has variables that a surface reading will not).

The reasoning behind that number: a surface reading of 6.7 corresponds to a core of about 5.7. Because the alkaline outer layer is thin and the core is most of the mass, a homogenized stool would sit near 6.0, which is the optimum established above.† The practitioner does not perform this reconstruction. The smear reads 6.7 or it does not.

In practice the client does not need the number at all. On our paper, a healthy reading sits in the green band. Blue means alkaline, and alkaline is the problem. That is the whole test at the client level: green is good, blue is bad.

The mortality data

One study links stool pH directly to survival. Osuka and colleagues measured fecal pH in 138 critically ill patients^{14,15} with systemic inflammatory response syndrome. They found a U-shaped relationship: both acidic feces (below pH 6.0) and alkaline feces (above pH 7.2) were significantly associated with increased mortality and bacteremia. A chart plotting the survival curve derived from this data is available at remedylink.com/charts.

The two extremes represent different pathologies. The alkaline extreme means SCFA production has collapsed, Enterobacteriaceae dominate, ammonia is accumulating, and the colon has shifted to proteolytic metabolism. The acidic extreme, in these critically ill patients, meant pathological fermentation: the acids present were D-lactic acid, succinic acid, and formic acid, markers of ecosystem collapse, not healthy butyrate and propionate. Propionic acid was markedly decreased in both the acidic and alkaline groups compared to the normal range.

This data comes from the sickest possible population, ICU patients with SIRS. The practitioner should not extrapolate these ranges directly to outpatient practice. A healthy person with stool pH of 5.8 who is eating abundant fiber and producing butyrate is in a completely different metabolic state from an ICU patient with stool pH of 5.8 who is producing D-lactate from a collapsed ecosystem. The number is identical. The clinical meaning is opposite.

A note on extensive stool testing

Comprehensive stool panels, reporting dozens of species, yeast, parasites, SCFAs, inflammation markers, are genuinely useful in complex cases. They are not the first move. pH paper costs a few cents per reading and tells the practitioner which metabolic mode the colon is running. The panel confirms in more detail what pH paper has already shown for free, and for patients who respond to standard interventions, the panel is information after the fact rather than something that changed what was done. Stool testing earns its cost in patients who do not respond to standard protocols, who have specific parasite suspicions, or whose symptoms do not track cleanly to pH.

What shifts the pH

Dysbiotic stool pH is entrenched. A practitioner who tells a patient with alkaline pH to eat more fiber and drink more water will usually find nothing has changed. Diet alone will not move established pH. The system is self-reinforcing: dietary fiber that in a healthy colon would feed saccharolytic fermentation gets consumed by whatever is dominant, which in a dysbiotic state is often not the pH-lowering populations.

This is where the teaching departs from what most practitioners want to believe about diet. Diet determines whether a healthy microbiome stays healthy.¹⁶ But diet alone does not generally restore a dysbiotic microbiome.

Diet will help, and can work for those with only mild dysbioses, but even those eating 'healthy' diets are still limited to modern crops. Paleolithically true foods like Taro root and breadfruit do exist, but they are hard to find outside of the tropics.

Restoration often requires direct intervention across all three compartments of the colon. These include human milk oligosaccharide prebiotics (HMOs), which selectively feed the bifidobacteria^{17,18} in the ascending colon, arabinogalactans and lactitol for the ascending and transverse colon and SCFA enemas and the resistant starch RS3 for the descending colon, which we will discuss in the next chapter.†

When prebiotics are not enough

When stool pH is above 7.5, direct suppression of urease-producing populations (typically Enterobacteriaceae like Klebsiella and Proteus) should be considered.

Clinical pearl: *pH does not need to be measured to 0.1 point accuracy. Stool that turns pH paper blue is dysbiosis, green is borderline and unchanged (yellow) is (in the absence of frank disease) the clinical goal.*

References

1. Walker AW, Duncan SH, McWilliam Leitch EC, Child MW, Flint HJ. pH and peptide supply can radically alter bacterial populations and short-chain fatty acid ratios within human colonic microbial communities. *Appl Environ Microbiol.* 2005;71(7):3692-3700.
2. Macfarlane GT, Gibson GR, Cummings JH. Comparison of fermentation reactions in different regions of the human colon. *J Appl Bacteriol.* 1992;72(1):57-64.
3. Louis P, Flint HJ. Formation of propionate and butyrate by the human colonic microbiota. *Environ Microbiol.* 2017;19(1):29-41.
4. Duncan SH, Louis P, Thomson JM, Flint HJ. The role of pH in determining the species composition of the human colonic microbiota. *Environ Microbiol.* 2009;11(8):2112-2122.
5. Attene-Ramos MS, Wagner ED, Gaskins HR, Plewa MJ. Hydrogen sulfide induces direct radical-associated DNA damage. *Mol Cancer Res.* 2007;5(5):455-459.
6. Sorbara MT, Dubin K, Littmann ER, et al. Inhibiting antibiotic-resistant Enterobacteriaceae by microbiota-mediated intracellular acidification. *J Exp Med.* 2019;216(1):84-98.
7. Chng KR, et al. Short-chain fatty acids of various lengths differentially inhibit Klebsiella pneumoniae and Enterobacteriaceae species. *mSphere.* 2024;9(2):e00781-23.
8. Flint HJ, Duncan SH, Louis P. Pivotal roles for pH, lactate, and lactate-utilizing bacteria in the stability of a human colonic microbial ecosystem. *mSystems.* 2020;5(5):e00645-20.
9. Donohoe DR, Garge N, Zhang X, et al. The microbiome and butyrate regulate energy metabolism and autophagy in the mammalian colon. *Cell Metab.* 2011;13(5):517-526.

10. Kelly CJ, Zheng L, Campbell EL, et al. Crosstalk between microbiota-derived short-chain fatty acids and intestinal epithelial HIF augments tissue barrier function. *Cell Host Microbe*. 2015;17(5):662-671.
11. Chambers ES, Viardot A, Psichas A, et al. Effects of targeted delivery of propionate to the human colon on appetite regulation, body weight maintenance and adiposity in overweight adults. *Gut*. 2015;64(11):1744-1754.
12. Smith PM, Howitt MR, Panikov N, et al. The microbial metabolites, short-chain fatty acids, regulate colonic Treg cell homeostasis. *Science*. 2013;341(6145):569-573.
13. Erny D, et al. Host microbiota constantly control maturation and function of microglia in the CNS. *Nat Neurosci*. 2015;18(7):965-977.
14. Osuka A, Shimizu K, Ogura H, et al. Prognostic impact of fecal pH in critically ill patients. *Crit Care*. 2012;16(4):R119.
15. Shimizu K, Ogura H, Goto M, et al. Altered gut flora and environment in patients with severe SIRS. *J Trauma*. 2006;60(1):126-133.
16. Flint HJ, Duncan SH, Scott KP, Louis P. Links between diet, gut microbiota composition and gut metabolism. *Proc Nutr Soc*. 2015;74(1):13-22.
17. Bode L. Human milk oligosaccharides: every baby needs a sugar mama. *Glycobiology*. 2012;22(9):1147-1162.
18. Thomson P, Medina DA, Garrido D. Human milk oligosaccharides and infant gut bifidobacteria: molecular strategies for their utilization. *Food Microbiol*. 2018;75:37-46.

Chapter 12, The Firmicutes:Bacteroidetes ratio controversy

The practitioner reading stool panels will encounter the Firmicutes-to-Bacteroidetes ratio, the F/B ratio, presented as a meaningful biomarker. A higher ratio is said to correlate with obesity. A lower ratio is said to correlate with inflammatory bowel disease. The implication is that the number itself tells the practitioner something actionable. It does not, and the reason it does not goes directly to the argument of the previous chapter.

The F/B ratio treats two enormous phyla as if each were a single organism. Firmicutes includes *Lactobacillus*, *Faecalibacterium*, *Roseburia*, *Eubacterium*, *Clostridium* clusters IV and XIVa, *Enterococcus*, and *Ruminococcus*, organisms with radically different metabolic outputs and clinical significance. Bacteroidetes includes both *Prevotella* and *Bacteroides*, two genera that share a phylum but occupy different ecological niches and respond to different substrates.

This is where the hunter-gatherer data becomes instructive and where the apparent contradictions in the literature resolve.

What traditional populations actually show

The Hadza of Tanzania, one of the last remaining foraging populations, show higher Bacteroidetes and lower Firmicutes than Italian urban controls¹ at the phylum level. But the Bacteroidetes enrichment is driven almost entirely by *Prevotella*, not *Bacteroides*.

The Hadza are depleted in *Bacteroides*, *Roseburia*, and *Faecalibacterium* relative to Western populations, yet enriched in *Prevotella*, *Eubacterium*, and *Treponema*. The Yanomami of the Amazon show a similar pattern: higher Bacteroidetes than Firmicutes, again driven by *Prevotella*.⁶ In both populations, overall microbial diversity is substantially higher than in industrialized cohorts.

The Ju/'hoansi of the Kalahari, studied with shotgun metagenomics in 2024, show the opposite phylum-level ratio, Firmicutes at 47.5 percent, Bacteroidetes at 39.8 percent.⁵ Yet the Bacteroidetes present are again dominated by *Prevotella* and *Cryptobacteroides*, not by *Bacteroides*.

The BaAka Pygmies of Cameroon show *Prevotella* and *Treponema* enrichment.³ Neighboring Bantu populations transitioning to modern diets show an increased F/B ratio driven by gains in *Faecalibacterium* and lactic acid bacteria.

The consistent signal across all these populations is not the phylum-level ratio. It is three things. First: *Prevotella* dominance within Bacteroidetes, driven by high-fiber plant-based substrates and reflecting the enormous polysaccharide-utilization capacity these organisms bring to complex carbohydrate degradation. Second: high overall microbial diversity, with many organisms occupying many niches rather than a few organisms dominating. Third: robust fiber-degrading capacity across both phyla, Clostridiales from the Firmicutes side, Prevotellaceae from the Bacteroidetes side, working in parallel⁴.

What industrialized populations show

Industrialized populations show the reverse: *Bacteroides* dominance within Bacteroidetes (associated with animal fat and protein substrates, not plant polysaccharides), lower overall diversity, and reduced fiber-degrading capacity. *Bacteroides* and *Prevotella* are both gram-negative, both produce acetate and propionate, and both carry large polysaccharide-utilization loci, but they are not the same organism doing the same work. *Prevotella* is the plant-fiber specialist. *Bacteroides* is more metabolically generalist and associated with Western dietary patterns.

The distinction matters beyond substrate preference. The LPS from commensal *Prevotella* species carries a lipid A structure that binds TLR4 weakly or acts as a competitive antagonist, the tolerogenic pattern described earlier. The LPS from certain *Bacteroides* species, while also broadly tolerogenic, varies more across strains. The practitioner cannot assume that all Bacteroidetes LPS is equivalent. The ancestral *Prevotella*-dominant ecology and the modern *Bacteroides*-dominant ecology present different immune signatures even though both fall under the same phylum.

Why the F/B ratio fails

The F/B ratio collapses this distinction. A patient with high *Prevotella*-driven Bacteroidetes on a traditional diet and a patient with high *Bacteroides*-driven Bacteroidetes on a Western diet both show a low F/B ratio. The clinical meaning is opposite.

The literature itself is contradictory because the ratio is too blunt to capture what is happening. Some studies find high F/B ratio in obesity. Others find no difference. Others find the reverse. The contradictions dissolve when the analysis moves to the genus level, what matters is which Firmicutes and which Bacteroidetes, not how much of each phylum is present. A patient whose Firmicutes are dominated by butyrate-producing Clostridiales⁷ and whose Bacteroidetes are dominated by *Prevotella* is in a fundamentally different ecological state from a patient whose Firmicutes are dominated

by *Enterococcus* and whose Bacteroidetes are dominated by *Bacteroides*⁸. The phylum-level ratio cannot tell the difference.

The seasonal instability of the ratio

The seasonal cycling data from the Hadza adds a further caution. Bacteroidetes OTUs, primarily Prevotellaceae, fluctuate dramatically with seasons, disappearing in the wet season and reappearing in the dry season². Firmicutes composition remains relatively stable across seasons. The F/B ratio in these individuals swings substantially within a single year in response to normal dietary variation. Any biomarker that swings that widely with seasonal food availability in healthy foragers is not measuring a stable pathological state. It is measuring what the person has been eating.

The practical teaching

When a stool panel reports the F/B ratio, the practitioner should look past the ratio to the genus-level composition underneath it. Prevotella dominance alongside high diversity is not dysbiosis. Bacteroides dominance alongside low diversity and depleted butyrate producers is dysbiosis, regardless of what the F/B ratio says. And pH paper, which costs a few cents, tells the practitioner whether the butyrate-producing Firmicutes are active, which is the clinical question the F/B ratio was never designed to answer.

Clinical pearl: *Even with complex evaluations available, stool pH remains the single most informative laboratory finding for the gut.*

References

1. Schnorr SL, Candela M, Rampelli S, et al. Gut microbiome of the Hadza hunter-gatherers. *Nat Commun*. 2014;5:3654.
2. Smits SA, Leach J, Sonnenburg ED, et al. Seasonal cycling in the gut microbiome of the Hadza hunter-gatherers of Tanzania. *Science*. 2017;357(6353):802-806.
3. Gomez A, Petzelkova KJ, Burns MB, et al. Gut microbiome of coexisting BaAka Pygmies and Bantu reflects gradients of traditional subsistence patterns. *Cell Rep*. 2016;14(9):2142-2153.
4. Sonnenburg JL, Sonnenburg ED. Links between environment, diet, and the hunter-gatherer microbiome. *Gut Microbes*. 2019;10(2):159-163.
5. Venter C, et al. Multiomic insights into human health: gut microbiomes of hunter-gatherer, agropastoral, and Western urban populations. *bioRxiv*. 2024.
6. Clemente JC, et al. The microbiome of uncontacted Amerindians. *Sci Adv*. 2015;1(3):e1500183.
7. Duncan SH, Louis P, Thomson JM, Flint HJ. The role of pH in determining the species composition of the human colonic microbiota. *Environ Microbiol*. 2009;11(8):2112-2122.
8. De Filippo C, Cavalieri D, Di Paola M, et al. Impact of diet in shaping gut microbiota revealed by a comparative study in children from Europe and rural Africa. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 2010;107(33):14691-14696.

Chapter 13, Strength in Diversity

The microbiome is valuable for the real estate it colonizes (thus denying the same to toxic species), but also for what it makes. Postbiotics are the compounds bacteria produce. The most clinically important are the short-chain fatty acids: acetic acid, propionic acid, and butyric acid.¹ There are others, bacteriocins, neurotransmitter precursors, vitamins, signaling molecules, but the SCFAs do the bulk of the work for colonic restoration. Endogenously produced SCFAs feed colonic epithelium, lower colonic pH, and suppress alkaline-loving bacteria at the site of production. Absorbed SCFAs reaching systemic circulation regulate the immune system, support gut barrier signaling, and exert powerful effects on mood, each acting differently.†

This distinction matters for what follows. The interventions in this chapter, oligosaccharide diversity, direct postbiotic supplementation, fermented foods, work through different combinations of these two routes, and the practitioner who keeps them straight will know which intervention to reach for in which clinical situation.†

The bacteria that produce these compounds need food. That is what oligosaccharides (prebiotics) do. The previous chapter covered HMO-based selective feeding while the colon is still alkaline. Once the colon reaches pH 6.5, the terrain has shifted enough to begin feeding more broadly.†

Why diversity matters

This is a rule of the colon, not a rule of the whole body. There is one compartment where the healthy state is nearly a monoculture and diversity is the disease, the vagina, and that inversion is taken up in its own chapter. A healthy colon hosts many kinds of bacteria. Different species produce different SCFAs, ferment different substrates, and occupy different sections of the colon.² Different bacteria need different oligosaccharide categories to thrive, and without more expensive testing, practitioners cannot predict which population is missing in which patient. Broad coverage ensures whichever populations are missing can find what they need.

Broad oligosaccharide coverage does a second job: different oligosaccharides act as decoy molecules at the gut wall, blocking pathogen attachment at different receptor types.³ Broad coverage means broad pathogen interference.

Sourcing diversity

Oligosaccharides come from many food categories:

- Tubers: galacto-oligosaccharides
- Fruits and vegetables: xylo-, pectin-, and fructan-oligosaccharides
- Wild game: connective tissue oligosaccharides
- Mushrooms: chitin-oligosaccharides
- Seaweeds: fucoidan-oligosaccharides
- Honey and traditional fermented foods (miso, kimchi): isomalto-oligosaccharides

A patient eating a traditional varied diet would consume this diversity as a matter of course. A patient on a modern industrial diet will likely fall short in many categories.

Direct oligosaccharide supplementation is one way to close the gap. A multi-category formulation drawing from all these sources can deliver coverage the modern diet rarely provides. The seaweed-derived oligosaccharide fucoidan is expensive enough that most products skip it, its inclusion is a marker of whether a formulation is priced for quality or cost.†

Direct postbiotic supplementation

Feeding good bacteria is one path to better postbiotic output. Supplementing postbiotics directly is another, faster, but without building production capacity. Practitioners can use sodium acetate, sodium propionate, and sodium butyrate.⁴ The SCFA ratio should approximate that found in healthy hunter-gatherer microbiomes.† As microbiome restoration progresses, patient-side production rises and direct supplementation becomes less necessary. To clarify, an internal stool pH of 5.7-6.2 means the quality of the SCFA are good but says nothing about the quantity. If the patient is in this pH range, but does not generate 3 bowel movements per day, then they are quantitatively deficient and can still benefit from oral SCFA.

Fermented foods

Sauerkraut, kimchi, miso, kefir, traditional yogurt, fermented vegetables, these contain bacterial postbiotics and live organisms,⁵ and contribute postbiotic input at the dietary level. Like oral SCFA supplementation, fermented foods primarily deliver systemic postbiotic effects rather than distal colon antimicrobial effects, because most of the small-molecule postbiotic content is absorbed before reaching the distal colon. The live organisms can contribute transient local production where they survive transit, but this is a small contribution compared to a restored resident microbiome.†

Some patients do not tolerate fermented foods. Histamine-sensitive patients may react.⁶ Fermented foods also commonly contain both L and D lactic acid, the D form is mildly neurotoxic.⁷ For most patients this is a non-issue, but for patients who are neurologically reactive or fatigued in unusual patterns, fermented foods may be worth avoiding temporarily.† Direct SCFA supplementation is tolerated when fermented foods are not.

Clinical pearl: *Home made ferment of fruits, vegetables and grains from D-Lactate and Histamine free probiotic strains is an option.*

References

1. Morrison DJ, Preston T. Formation of short chain fatty acids by the gut microbiota and their impact on human metabolism. **Gut Microbes**. 2016;7(3):189-200.
2. Rivière A, Selak M, Lantin D, Leroy F, De Vuyst L. Bifidobacteria and butyrate-producing colon bacteria: importance and strategies for their stimulation in the human gut. **Front Microbiol**. 2016;7:979.
3. Shoaf K, Mulvey GL, Armstrong GD, Hutkins RW. Prebiotic galactooligosaccharides reduce adherence of enteropathogenic *Escherichia coli* to tissue culture cells. **Infect Immun**. 2006;74(12):6920-6928.
4. Canfora EE, Jocken JW, Blaak EE. Short-chain fatty acids in control of body weight and insulin sensitivity. **Nat Rev Endocrinol**. 2015;11(10):577-591.
5. Marco ML, Heeney D, Binda S, et al. Health benefits of fermented foods: microbiota and beyond. **Curr Opin Biotechnol**. 2017;44:94-102.
6. Maintz L, Novak N. Histamine and histamine intolerance. **Am J Clin Nutr**. 2007;85(5):1185-1196.
7. Uribarri J, Oh MS, Carroll HJ. D-lactic acidosis: a review of clinical presentation, biochemical features, and pathophysiologic mechanisms. **Medicine**. 1998;77(2):73-82.

Chapter 14, You are what you eat, your microbiome is what you don't digest

When digestion is intact, the small intestine extracts most of what the patient eats, and only indigestible residue, fiber and oligosaccharides, reaches the colon.¹ The microbiome thrives on this residue because it evolved to. This is a truly symbiotic arrangement. We do not compete for the same fuel.

When digestion fails, undigested or under-digested food spills over into the colon. The colon's microbiome was never built to ferment whole proteins, fats, or starches. Spillover changes the substrate, and the microbiome's output changes accordingly.² The core principle: a patient is what they eat. Their microbiome is what they cannot digest.† When nutrients meant for the small intestine spill over into the colon, this causes dysbiosis. A reverse form of spillover is when bacteria meant for the colon colonize the small intestine.

Five causes of spillover and retrograde flow

1. Insufficient chewing. Larger food particles overwhelm the small intestine's capacity.
2. Poor digestive capacity. Age-related decline, proton pump inhibitors,³ bile flow obstruction, and pancreatic insufficiency all reduce chemical breakdown.
3. Poor absorption. Inflammation, villus damage, or mucosal compromise reduces uptake even when food is broken down adequately.⁴
4. Overeating. The small intestine has finite throughput regardless of how intact the patient's digestive capacity is. Enzyme output, bile flow, and absorptive surface are all calibrated to handle a particular volume per meal; exceeding that volume sends the excess into the colon undigested, even in a patient whose digestion is otherwise working well.† This is the cause practitioners most often miss because the patient looks healthy and the standard digestive workup is unremarkable. The diagnostic question is not "is your digestion working?" but "is the load you're putting on it within what it can handle?" Smaller meals more frequently, or simply smaller meals, resolve this category of spillover without any intervention at all.

5. Weak ileocecal valve, sometimes from surgical adhesions, allows retrograde movement of colonic bacteria into the small intestine (the reverse form of spillover named above).[†]

Three macronutrient pathways

In addition to the production of ammonia and other toxins from proteolytic fermentation mentioned in an earlier chapter, protein spillover also produces putrescine and cadaverine, toxic amines that signal danger at a deep biological level and can trigger fear, aggression, or disgust toward the person whose microbiome makes them.^{5†}

Whether that spillover becomes ammonia depends on what else arrived with it. The organisms fermenting amino acids in a starved colon are largely the same organisms fermenting carbohydrate in a fed one; Bacteroides and most of the Clostridia carry both pathways and use the sugar first, so protein fermentation is a fallback mode rather than a competing guild, and supplying carbohydrate switches the mode off.¹⁷ The second mechanism decides where the nitrogen goes. Given carbon skeletons and energy to work with, bacteria build ammonia into their own protein; the nitrogen leaves in bacterial biomass in the stool. Without carbohydrate, the amino acid is deaminated for fuel and the nitrogen is discarded as ammonia. Same nitrogen, two fates, and carbon availability decides which.¹⁸ A well-fed colonic community is therefore a nitrogen sink rather than a nitrogen source, and this is the same event the next chapter reads as stool mass: bacterial cells are most of what a heavy stool is made of. The protein that reaches the colon cannot be driven to zero, but what becomes of it is a matter of what is fermenting beside it.

Prebiotic adequacy governs the fate of the protein that arrives, not how much arrives, and it does not touch the urea stream, which enters from the blood and is cleaved by urease rather than fermented. An acid lumen traps the resulting ammonium either way. Assimilation is specific to the fermentative route.

Fat spillover produces reuterin (a broad antimicrobial, the patient is essentially self-dosing a microbiome-disruptive antibiotic from their own undigested fat),⁶ acrolein (a genotoxin),⁷ and trimethylamine (converted to TMAO, an arterial plaque precursor).⁸ The cardiovascular literature is catching up to what fat spillover does to the vascular system, the underlying issue is digestive failure, not dietary fat itself.[†]

Carbohydrate spillover produces gas and feeds Candida overgrowth.⁹ The patient experiences bloating, distention, and gas.

The four-gas framework

Hydrogen, normal in moderation. Some acts as antioxidant¹⁰; some is converted to acetate by good bacteria.¹¹ Excess produces loose stools and provides substrate for H₂S and methane producers.

Hydrogen sulfide, beneficial in moderation (prevents bacterial translocation, supports mucosa, contributes to vascular signaling).¹² In excess, it damages cells, promotes leaky gut, and contributes to neurological pathology.¹³ The rotten-egg smell is the diagnostic.

Carbon dioxide, normal. Contributes to colonic buffering chemistry.

Methane, produced by methanogens. Causes spasm and partial paralysis of intestinal smooth muscle, producing the constipation pattern characteristic of methane-dominant SIBO.¹⁴ Chronic constipation not responding to fiber or hydration can be a methane problem. Methanogens aren't bacteria, they are a different domain called Archaea. Antibiotics don't affect them. I am still looking for ways to suppress them, but at the moment, pH is the main lever.

Constipation

Constipation is a global contraindication during active metal and especially chemical detox (more on this in upcoming chapters). Constipation generally leads to a more alkaline (higher) stool pH, which leads to deconjugation. This happens for three reasons.

Protein putrefaction increases. As fermentable carbohydrates get used up, bacteria shift toward breaking down proteins and amino acids. This produces alkaline byproducts like ammonia, amines, and indoles, which raise stool pH.

Short-chain fatty acid (SCFA) production declines. SCFAs, acetate, propionate, and butyrate, are the main acidifying compounds in stool and are produced by bacterial fermentation of dietary fiber and resistant starch. With prolonged transit, the fermentable substrate gets depleted, so SCFA output drops and the acidifying effect is lost.

Water reabsorption concentrates alkaline compounds. The colon continues absorbing water from stool during slow transit, which can concentrate the remaining alkaline metabolites.

Slowed transit also gives intestinal bacteria more time to produce TMAO and elevate LPS load. A patient who takes cholestyramine to lower cholesterol but becomes constipated is increasing TMAO and LPS, the upstream drivers of the inflammatory cholesterol elevation the binder was prescribed to address. The marker improves while the cause worsens.

The optimal dietary plant-to-animal ratio

This chapter has described what spills into the colon and what the spillover produces. The same logic sets the composition of the diet itself, not only how well it is digested. Two failure modes bound the question from opposite sides.

Weight the diet too far toward animal protein and the colon suffers. Concentrated animal protein is the substrate most favorable to the proteolytic, urease-bearing organisms, and the result is the alkaline stool, the ammonia, and the putrescine and cadaverine described above. Weight it too far toward plant matter and the omnivore eating it goes short on the inputs that animal foods supply and plants do not.

B12 is not produced in meaningful amounts by any plant, plant protein carries lower bioavailable amino acid density, and bioavailable iron and zinc are harder to extract from a plant matrix. Each is a rate-limiting input: a nutrient whose shortage caps what the whole system can do regardless of how abundant everything around it is.

To these add the long-chain omega-3 fatty acids, where the shortfall is sharper than the others because the conversion step is genuinely poor rather than merely inefficient. The plant precursor, alpha-linolenic acid, converts to DHA in the low single-digit percentages, and the rate is sex-dependent: estrogen upregulates the desaturase and elongase steps, so women convert measurably better than men, in whom the DHA arm of the pathway is close to negligible.^{15,16}

The practical consequence is that the male patient on a plant-weighted diet is the one for whom preformed EPA and DHA stops being a refinement and becomes rate-limiting in exactly that sense. The ancestral diet did not rely on this conversion either. Terrestrial herbivore muscle is a thin DHA source, and for an inland population the reliable preformed supply was brain and eye tissue, precisely the fraction the modern eater discards.[†] Fish, shellfish, and supplemental fish oil substitute for it directly, and for most patients that substitution is the whole intervention. This is the point that returns when this book reaches cerebral perfusion.

The deficiency side is not corrected by protocol aggressiveness. It is corrected by eating the food.

So there is an optimum between the two, and it is not at either extreme. The healthiest traditional populations Weston Price documented in the early observational work, later corroborated in its central pattern by more rigorous nutritional science, were omnivorous without exception, none were vegetarian. The anatomy agrees: the human gut sits somewhere between that of a wolf and a pig, a carnivore and an omnivore.[†] That being said, while the diet found by Weston Price may be optimal for post agricultural revolution grain and bean eaters, the author believes that a Paleolithic diet is still superior.

The ratio is not fixed. It shifts with the state of the microbiome. A dysbiotic gut tolerates less fermentable plant load, not more, the structured dietary window restricts fruit and simple sugar precisely because the unabsorbed fraction feeds the wrong organisms, and broad plant feeding is held back until pH has fallen far enough to reinforce the right populations rather than the wrong ones. As the microbiome recovers, the tolerable plant fraction rises.

The instrument for finding it is the stool, because that is where both boundaries register. Alkaline stool that resists acidification, with the proteolytic odor signature, indicates too much animal protein for this patient's current microbiome, the instruction given earlier to reduce animal protein in exactly this presentation. The plant-side boundary is read not from stool but from the patient: the deficiency signs and the labs that detect them, since the colon cannot report a B12 or omega-3 shortfall.

Urine pH offers a patient-facing check on the same question, useful as a long-run trend. Averaged over weeks, first-morning urine pH drifts with the diet's acid-base weighting, which tracks the plant-to-animal ratio: a sustained alkaline trend indicates a plant-weighted diet, a sustained acidic trend an animal-weighted one. It indicates where the diet sits on the ratio, not whether that position is right for the patient, that judgment comes from the stool and from the deficiency labs above. A single reading is dominated by the last meal and by hydration; only the trend carries the dietary signal.†

A urine pH near 6.5 has been suggested as the optimal read when all else is in balance, a figure we owe to the pioneering biological terrain work of Louis-Claude Vincent.

For the patient who prefers a plant-leaning diet and runs a persistently alkaline urine trend, the supplements that close the predictable gaps are B12 and preformed long-chain omega-3 (EPA and DHA), with attention to bioavailable iron and zinc. For the patient who prefers an animal-leaning diet and runs a persistently acidic trend, two supports apply: the mineral bicarbonates to buffer the acid load, and resistant starch to supply the colon the fermentable substrate an animal-heavy diet is short on, feeding the acid-producing populations the stool work depends on.

A high reading carries less ambiguity in practice than its several causes suggest. Alkaline urine can come from a plant-weighted diet, the post-meal alkaline tide, a urease-producing urinary infection, or ammonia buffering a heavy acid load, but the patient usually knows whether they have an infection or are eating heavily of meat, which resolves most of the ambiguity at the point of reading.

None of this reduces to a single ratio handed to every patient. Diet is more individual than that. One person feels best with more animal food, another with less, and some will choose none at all. Yet, for a general starting point, consider a hand's worth of meat with fat and two handfuls of boiled or steamed chilled tuber. Tubers should not be diced or shredded. Steam whole or one cut. Each cut creates more surface area for starch to leave into the water and will limit RS3 production. If rice is being used in addition to the tuber, it must be basmati and it must come with shredded raw fibrous vegetable, for the reasons the tuber chapter gives. While there is nutritive value in the tuber skin, it is suggested that it be peeled first as often there are parts of the tuber that must be discarded under otherwise intact and fresh looking skin.

The goal

The overriding goal of microbiome restoration is to shift the community toward predominantly saccharolytic fermentation, the fermentation of fibers, resistant starches,

and oligosaccharides into short-chain fatty acids, and to sustain that state. Doing so lowers colonic pH by raising SCFA production while suppressing the proteolytic and ureolytic pathways that generate ammonia; the acid environment then traps that ammonia as poorly absorbed ammonium, collapses the putrefactive amines and gases we recognize as foul stool odor, indole, skatole, putrescine, cadaverine, hydrogen sulfide, and drives the pH down into the range where methanogenic archaea can no longer hold, tipping the hydrogen economy away from methane. A saccharolytic community is thus both the ecological objective and, through the low pH it maintains, the mechanism by which the entire chain of downstream toxins is brought back under control.

Clinical pearl: *A recovering microbiome will usually go through a flatulence phase. This is because all the members of the microbiome do not recover at the same speed. Those that make gas will often recover faster than those that consume it. This phase will usually resolve in a few days as the cross feeding bacterial guilds are rebuilt.*

References

1. Cummings JH, Macfarlane GT. The control and consequences of bacterial fermentation in the human colon. *J Appl Bacteriol*. 1991;70(6):443-459.
2. Macfarlane GT, Cummings JH, Allison C. Protein degradation by human intestinal bacteria. *J Gen Microbiol*. 1986;132(6):1647-1656.
3. Heidelbaugh JJ. Proton pump inhibitors and risk of vitamin and mineral deficiency: evidence and clinical implications. *Ther Adv Drug Saf*. 2013;4(3):125-133.
4. Green PHR, Cellier C. Celiac disease. *N Engl J Med*. 2007;357(17):1731-1743.
5. Polychronakos C, Bhatt I, Bhatt F. Amines in the intestine: formation and functions. *In Vivo*. 2005;19(2):245-258.
6. Engels C, Schwab C, Zhang J, Stevens MJA, Kettlitz B, Lacroix C. Acrolein contributes strongly to antimicrobial and heterocyclic amine transformation activities of reuterin. *Sci Rep*. 2016;6:36246.
7. Stevens JF, Maier CS. Acrolein: sources, metabolism, and biomolecular interactions relevant to human health and disease. *Mol Nutr Food Res*. 2008;52(1):7-25.
8. Wang Z, Klipfell E, Bennett BJ, et al. Gut flora metabolism of phosphatidylcholine promotes cardiovascular disease. *Nature*. 2011;472(7341):57-63.
9. Erdogan A, Rao SSC. Small intestinal fungal overgrowth. *Curr Gastroenterol Rep*. 2015;17(4):16.
10. Ohsawa I, Ishikawa M, Takahashi K, et al. Hydrogen acts as a therapeutic antioxidant by selectively reducing cytotoxic oxygen radicals. *Nat Med*. 2007;13(6):688-694.
11. Rey FE, Faith JJ, Bain J, et al. Dissecting the in vivo metabolic potential of two human gut acetogens. *J Biol Chem*. 2010;285(29):22082-22090.
12. Wallace JL, Wang R. Hydrogen sulfide-based therapeutics: exploiting a unique but ubiquitous gasotransmitter. *Nat Rev Drug Discov*. 2015;14(5):329-345.
13. Attene-Ramos MS, et al. Hydrogen sulfide induces direct radical-associated DNA damage. *Mol Cancer Res*. 2007;5(5):455-459.

14. Pimentel M, et al. Methane, a gas produced by enteric bacteria, slows intestinal transit. **Am J Physiol**. 2006;290(6):G1089-G1095.
15. Burdge GC, Wootton SA. Conversion of alpha-linolenic acid to eicosapentaenoic, docosapentaenoic and docosahexaenoic acids in young women. *Br J Nutr*. 2002;88(4):411-420.
16. Burdge GC, Jones AE, Wootton SA. Eicosapentaenoic and docosapentaenoic acids are the principal products of alpha-linolenic acid metabolism in young men. *Br J Nutr*. 2002;88(4):355-363.

Chapter 15, The Underground Storage Organ

For most of the human past the single largest source of fermentable substrate reaching the colon was not grain and not leaf. It was the underground storage organ, the tuber, root, corm, and rhizome that foraging peoples dug, roasted, and ate in quantity every day. The living proxies make the point concretely: the Hadza of northern Tanzania anchor their diet on tubers, and their fiber intake, often exceeding one hundred grams a day, comes from that tuber flesh together with the fibrous fruits, baobab and berries, that round out the foraging year.¹ Seasonal fieldwork shows the reliance on underground storage organs deepening across the dry season, when above-ground foods thin and the tuber becomes the dietary anchor.² Starch granules trapped in ancient dental calculus extend the pattern deep into the Pleistocene and across hominin lines: starchy underground foods were staple, not fallback.³

The sequence away from the tuber

USOs, predominantly tubers, fell to a succession of plant staples, each seated further from the tuber on every axis that matters. The bean came first, among the earliest of the cultivated staples, and by most readings established as a dietary mainstay ahead of the cereal, and then the grain that came to rule the plate.

This matters because of where a tuber deposits its cargo, and the honest account is not the one a first reading suggests. A tuber delivers two substrates, and they reach the far colon by different routes.

The first is the intact parenchymal cell wall, cellulose and insoluble hemicellulose, which survives the small intestine as a physical matrix, holds water, and carries poorly fermented residue the full length of the colon. We have no cellulases and our flora

degrade crystalline cellulose poorly, which is exactly why it persists as bulk rather than being consumed early.

The second is retrograded starch, the RS3 fraction that forms when gelatinized amylose recrystallizes on cooling.⁵ This fraction is fermentable, and it is delivered in quantity, but it is not intrinsically slow. How far a retrograded starch travels is set by its amylose content and the perfection of the crystallites that amylose forms, and potato runs roughly twenty to twenty-five percent amylose. That is not a domestication loss; it is the wild-type default across most starch crops, and the wild tuber was no richer. A low-amylose starch retrogrades into sparse, imperfect crystallites that the proximal community opens early, so the tuber's RS3 is consumed largely across the ascending and early transverse colon rather than arriving intact at the sigmoid.

What carried fermentation to the far end was therefore not the slowness of the substrate but its sheer quantity.† The Hadza figure of a hundred grams of fiber a day is the relevant number: a load of that size overruns what the proximal colon can consume and pushes the remainder onward, and the cellulose matrix travelling with it carries the unfermented fraction along. Modern intake does not overrun anything. The substrate is consumed where it lands, and the descending colon receives what is left, which is very little.

The division of labor, stated correctly: the cell-wall fiber supplies mechanical, water-holding bulk the length of the tract, and the RS3 supplies fermentable carbon in a volume large enough that some of it survives the proximal colon. Remove the volume and the far end goes quiet even though the food is unchanged in kind.

The candification chapters traced how cooking and crop breeding move fermentation upstream and leave the distal colon progressively starved. The tuber is where that loss falls hardest, though not in the way a first reading suggests. Domestication did not take the amylose; there was never more of it to take. What it took was the structure — potatoes, sweet potatoes and yams bred toward soft texture surrendered cell-wall mass, and with it the water-holding bulk that carried the unfermented fraction onward. Cooking then finished the job on the starch, gelatinizing it so completely that it digests to glucose high in the small intestine with little left to reach the colon at all. Between them, the tuber lost the matrix that delivered its cargo and most of the cargo itself, while the fraction that governs where any of it lands was never richer to begin with.

Storage takes a further cut before the tuber is ever cooked. Potatoes held too cold convert starch to reducing sugars, which is why the trade stores them warm and reconditions them before processing. What sweetens in the bin is starch that will not gelatinize, will not retrograde, and is absorbed as glucose high in the small intestine. The warehouse performs the same operation as the breeder, on a shorter timescale.

The second cost is a relocation. Fermentation is not abolished by bean and grain; it is moved. The fermentable center of gravity, which the storage organ held at the far end of the tract, migrates forward into the cecum and ascending colon. Where methanogens

hold that ground, the hydrogen of that fermentation is pulled into methane, and methane is no inert exhaust: it slows transit,⁷ as the motility chapters detail, and slowed transit backs pressure into the cecum. What that cecal pressure does downstream, the strain it puts on the ileocecal valve, the reflux across a barrier meant to hold the line, is the subject of its own chapter. The grain compounds this. Milling does two things to the grain's arabinoxylan, and only the second is usually noticed. Most of it never reaches the plate: arabinoxylan is concentrated toward the outer layers, and roughly two-thirds of the kernel's supply leaves with the bran.¹³ What remains is the endosperm's own cell wall, and it is the majority of the little fiber white flour still carries — but grinding relocates it, because the same molecule that ferments slowly in a coarse particle is consumed in the ascending colon once reduced to flour.

The refined starch that remains is captured as glucose high in the small intestine and reaches the colon not at all..

Across the sequence the fermentation that once ran long and low moves short and high, out of the segment built to hold it and into the one where its gas turns to pressure.

The third cost is systemic, and it is the one no stool chart shows. The tuber is a base-forming food, and the move away from it drains the diet of alkali, the potassium salt citrates and malates. Citrate and malate enter the mitochondrion as Krebs-cycle intermediates and oxidize to carbon dioxide and water, and that oxidation consumes protons, which is to say it yields bicarbonate, while the potassium riding along carries no proton of its own, so the ledger closes on the alkaline side.⁹ Potassium citrate metabolizes to what is effectively potassium bicarbonate. In intact tuber flesh, held near the neutral pH of the living cell, the organic acids sit mostly deprotonated and balanced by potassium: an endogenous alkali salt, eaten whole. This is why the potato carries a negative acid load and stands among the more base-forming staples on the plate.⁸

The bean sits nearer neutral; the grain crosses the line into net acid, and at the grain the loss is no longer mere subtraction of the tuber's alkali but addition of a fixed acid the tuber never carried. Cereal protein is comparatively rich in the sulfur amino acids methionine and cysteine, which oxidize to sulfate and a proton; cereal phosphorus, much of it bound as phytate, adds phosphoric acid. The trajectory from tuber to grain lowers base and raises acid in the same motion, and to lay the whole change to "less citrate" is to name the smaller arm and miss the larger.

This dietary shift produces a chronic, low-grade acid stress absorbed by the kidney with a falling urinary citrate, as the tubule reclaims citrate to buffer rather than spilling it to the urine.¹⁰ The systemic deficit surfaces as a measured drop in serum bicarbonate only once renal reserve is spent.¹¹

The potato that reaches the plate has also changed in the bin. Fresh tuber is firmly citrate-dominant, running on the order of one hundred thirty to two hundred milligrams of citric acid per hundred grams against fifteen to twenty-five of malic, roughly eight to one.

Months of cold storage move that ratio: citric falls while malic rises, so the potato bought in spring carries a different acid profile from the one lifted in autumn.¹² Citrate carries three carboxyl groups and malate two, and each carboxyl is one bicarbonate equivalent on oxidation, so a tuber whose organic acid has shifted toward malate yields less base per molecule than it did at harvest. The base-forming staple is at its most base-forming fresh out of the ground, and the plate rarely sees it that way.

Supplemental bicarbonate follows from this directly, not as a correction of a lab value but as replacement of a dietary alkali the plate no longer supplies.

And the panel, when it finally shows it, judges it against a range that has been quietly moved. The laboratory calls twenty-two to twenty-six normal, another of the widening reference intervals this book keeps catching in the act, each widening redrawing the boundary of "normal" around a sicker population. The author's experience sets the mark at twenty-seven. Above it, the question is the lung, a bicarbonate climbing past twenty-seven is often the kidney compensating for retained carbon dioxide, the renal answer to a ventilation that is not clearing acid, and the number flags the pulmonary problem before the breath does. Below it, the number is a bicarbonate deficit that deepens as it falls: the accumulated acid ledger of a diet stripped of its tuber alkali and loaded with cereal acid. Twenty-seven is not the center of the normal range. It is the edge the range has drifted away from, but even this is challenging as it can be a false clear signal if both the lungs and diet are compromised, yet cancelling each other's bicarbonate shifting effects.

What breeding took from the rest of the plate

Wild alliums, chicory relatives, and wild storage roots bank their carbon as inulin and levan rather than starch. The plants selected as staples bank it as starch. Starch is denser calories, it stores and cooks more predictably, and it does not produce the flatulence that makes a food unpopular at the table. Selection ran hard in that direction, which is to say it ran hard against the fructans. Jerusalem artichoke and yacon still carry them for the same reason: neither was ever fully domesticated into a staple. What survived is what the process was not applied to.

Bitterness went the same way. Wild apples, wild carrots, and wild brassicas carry several times the phenolic load of their cultivated descendants, and every generation of selection for palatability took more of it. The phenolics were bred out as a defect. They are also a fraction that survives the small intestine largely intact and is metabolized by colonic bacteria into compounds that shape the community there — the salad section that follows makes the same point about the leaf, and the loss is the same loss.

What these share, and what separates them from everything else this chapter describes, is that no preparation recovers them. A cook can restore resistant starch by letting a baked tuber cool. A miller could leave the bran in the flour. Nothing in the kitchen puts inulin back into a potato or phenolics back into a sweet apple. The compound is not in the plant.

Milling does not work this way, and collapsing the two losses into one obscures what each did. Breeding sorted by function: it removed what the plant made, wherever in the plant it was made. Milling sorts by layer. It takes the outer coats and leaves the inner ones, so what it removes is whatever was concentrated toward the bran, and what it spares is whatever was spread evenly through the grain. Arabinoxylan is concentrated there heavily and mostly goes. Beta-glucan falls below detection in refined wheat flour, and oat bran carries several times what refined oat flour retains. The bound ferulate leaves almost entirely. ^{13 14}

This is worth stating plainly, because the fractions milling removed are not merely bulk. Arabinoxylan and beta-glucan are among the better-characterized prebiotics we have, and the ferulate is the grain's version of the phenolics bred out of the fruit. Refining did not take the inert fiber and leave the fermentable substrate. It took the slow structural prebiotic and left the fast soluble one — which is the relocation this chapter has been describing, performed on the grain rather than the tuber.†

What about salads?

The leaf deserves its own accounting, because the modern intuition installs salad where the tuber belongs, and it is wrong twice over. It is wrong on candification: the wild greens a forager gathered were tough, bitter, and chemically defended, dense in fiber and secondary compounds and taken in small handfuls, whereas the salad greens that replaced them, the tender lettuces, the mild spinaches (best to avoid due to oxalates), the cultivars bred for size and softness, were selected over generations away from precisely the bitterness and fiber that defined the original. Modern salad is no more the ancestral leaf than dent corn is the ancestral grass; the leaf was candified alongside the grain and the tuber. And it is wrong on quantity, because even the wild leaf was never a staple. By mass, greens were a low-single-digit fraction of foraging diets, a few percent in typical environments, more in the greenest seasons, near-zero in the leanest, and even that figure flatters them, since greens are some ninety percent water and deliver far less fiber than their fresh weight implies. Measured by calories they disappear entirely, but calories are the wrong ruler: a food that is essentially calorie-free reads as trivial on that axis no matter how much is eaten, which says nothing about what reaches the colon. The metric the colon sees is fiber mass, and there leaves are marginal, one to two grams per hundred, much of it soluble and fermented away in the proximal colon. A forager clearing a hundred grams of fiber a day could not approach it on leaves; the gram math forbids it, which is the same effort-versus-return wall that kept greens a seasoning and hunger-gap food rather than a staple. The green people reach for as the ancestral plant food is close to the least ancestral option on the plate.

Look to the animals, and the nutritional reading collapses. The cat is an obligate carnivore with no fiber requirement and no ability to ferment cellulose, and it eats grass regardless; dogs and wild canids do the same, and the leading account of the behavior is not nutrition but purgation, fibrous matter taken to stimulate motility and clear the gut, an instinct long implicated in expelling parasites.† The decisive detail is that we are no better at cellulose than the cat: humans lack cellulases too, and our flora degrade

crystalline cellulose poorly, which is exactly why it bulks rather than feeds. Neither species digests the leaf. So in the cat and in us alike the leaf is not sought for anything absorbed from it, but for what it does in passing, bulk, mechanical stimulation of the wall, motility, and the pharmacology of its bitter and aromatic compounds.[†] This is the old observation behind every tradition of the animal that self-selects a medicinal plant and recovers: green matter taken for effect, not for calories. The human appetite for salad reads the same way, not a hunger for the cellulose the cooled tuber once supplied, since the leaf is a poor cellulose source and we could not use its cellulose in any case, but the surfacing of a cross-species medicinal instinct, the leaf as purgative, motility agent, and bitter tonic. The tuber fed the colon; the leaf medicated it.[†]

Preparation also matters. A tuber, wrapped with leaves and baked in the coals of an evening fire (not the same as our dry baking methods) and left overnight cools slowly before it is eaten at dawn, and slow cooling is precisely the condition under which gelatinized amylose retrogrades into RS3. The ancestral tuber was, in effect, routinely cooked-and-cooled, its resistant starch restored in the hours between the fire and the morning meal. Two modern shifts erased this. Cereal grains replaced the tuber as the caloric mainstay, a food whose fiber is milled away and whose refined starch retrogrades to little effect (and which introduces storage mold, addressed in later chapters). And the tuber itself came to be cooked and eaten hot, baked, mashed, or fried and served at once, captured as glucose in the small intestine, with nothing left behind to retrograde. We kept cooking the tuber and stopped letting it cool.

With this shift away from RS3 (cooled retrograded tuber starch), we shifted from hindgut colonic fermenters to proximal cecal fermenters like rabbits, mice and rats, but without the cecum or the second pass that makes it work for them. The increase in fast fermenting starches and ICV issues then pushes some of the fermentation even higher in the digestive tract into the terminal ileum like that of the pig.

The corrective is the ancestral tuber reconstructed deliberately, and the preparation is the one the cooking chapter details.

Cellulose in a Reconstructed Ancestral Diet

That being said, there is a role for salads, but not the leafy kind.

Prehistoric wild tubers were tough, stringy, and slow to chew, built to survive a season underground rather than to be tender on the plate. Domestication has selected steadily against exactly that tissue — thinner walls, larger starch cells, less vascular and periderm mass — and modern potato flesh at two grams of fiber per hundred is the endpoint. Foragers chewed the juice and soft parenchyma from the toughest roots and spat out the fiber as a quid, so not all of that cellulose was swallowed. It doesn't close the gap. The wild flesh carried more to begin with, and total plant intake ran several times ours; even discounted for what was discarded, far more cellulose reached the colon than any modern diet delivers.

The same honesty owed to the leaf is owed to these roots. Cabbage, carrot and turnip are domesticates, bred through the same selection that softened everything else on the plate, and a modern carrot is a poor shadow of the wild root it descends from. So this is functional reconstruction rather than ancestral fidelity — we are restoring what the fiber did, using foods that have themselves been thinned. The arithmetic makes the limit plain: these run two to three grams of fiber per hundred, and reaching ancestral bulk would take kilograms a day. Nobody will eat that. But three grams is infinitely more than zero, and the reconstruction is worth making even though it cannot be completed. Cellulose is the fraction we cannot ferment. Pectin, inulin, and the soluble fibers are consumed by the microbiome and largely gone before the descending colon; cellulose passes through as residue. That is its function, not its failure. It holds water, provokes peristalsis mechanically, carries fermentable material past the proximal colon, and gives adherent organisms a surface to work on. Nothing soluble substitutes for it.

As stated, salad is the usual answer and the wrong one. Leaves are ninety-plus percent water, and a large bowl delivers a gram or two. The workable sources are the dense-walled vegetables: cabbage and its stem tissue, carrot, turnip and other mature storage roots, celery — though celery is the weakest of these and earns its place on tough vascular strands rather than on mass.

Eat them raw and coarsely shredded, for three reasons. Cooking dissolves the pectic matrix between cells, so the tissue no longer breaks into fragments but collapses into a mush that packs down and holds no water. Raw tissue shears into hard particles that keep their size the whole way through, and particle size determines both water-holding and peristaltic stimulus — coarse fiber bulks roughly twice as much as the same fiber finely milled. There is a second thing coarse cellulose does, and it is the more interesting one. Insoluble, poorly fermented particles do not only add bulk; they change where the fermentable material travelling with them is consumed. Work in pigs found that adding wheat bran shifted resistant starch fermentation from the proximal toward the distal colon, apparently by suppressing proximal fermentation and speeding transit past it, and a human study using a gas-sensing capsule found the same signature: resistant starch given with a coarse non-fermentable fiber produced rising luminal hydrogen as the capsule moved along the colon, where the fiber alone or the control showed hydrogen falling steadily as substrate was used up early. The carrier is doing something the substrate cannot do for itself. It is carrying starch past the compartment that would otherwise have eaten all of it.[†]

This matters for everything the previous section said about the modern tuber. A chilled potato's retrograded starch is low-amylose and is largely consumed in the ascending and early transverse colon. Eaten alongside a substantial serving of coarse raw shredded vegetable, some of it is pushed further along before the proximal community can finish it. The vegetable is not a side dish. It is the vehicle.

And a coarse shred is the only form in which enough of it can be eaten. Grate it fine and the advantage is destroyed; purée it and nothing is left.

The practical rule is simple. Some cellulose at every meal — not as a garnish, but as a structural component of the plate.

How to replace the tuber

Variety is the smallest lever on this table, and it is worth saying so before the reasoning that suggests otherwise. Two separate studies crossing three common varieties found no significant difference between them. Cooking method and chill duration carry the effect; the potato in the cart does not.

The chemistry that would predict a difference is real but too small to act on. Waxy means high amylopectin and low amylose, and amylopectin retrogrades slowly and reversibly where amylose retrogrades into stable crystallites, so the mealy high-dry-matter types — russet chief among them — should in principle retrograde better than fingerlings and small reds. The measured spread does not follow. The reason is that every common potato variety sits inside a narrow amylose band, roughly twenty to twenty-five percent, and a difference of a few points within that band does not change the outcome the way moving to a genuinely high-amylose starch does. The varietal question is the wrong question at this scale.

Buy the potato the patient will actually eat. Boil or steam it and chill it.

The pairing the rice entry below insists on is not particular to rice. Every starch on this list is improved by coarse raw shredded vegetable eaten with it, for both reasons above: the bulk the modern tuber no longer supplies in its own flesh, and the transit effect that carries some of its starch past the proximal colon. Rice needs it most, having almost no bulk of its own. The tuber needs it too.

Sweet potato is the one tuber on this list that fails for a reason of its own, and it fails worse than the amylose numbers suggest. Its amylose content overlaps ordinary potato, so the problem is not the starch itself. The problem is beta-amylase. Sweet potato carries it in quantity, the enzyme survives and works through the slow warm phase of cooking, and it converts starch to maltose — which is precisely why a cooked sweet potato tastes sweet and why slow baking maximizes that sweetness. Maltose is absorbed in the small intestine. A substantial share of the substrate is therefore consumed before there is any amylose left to recrystallize, and the gentler and slower the cook, the more of it is lost. The preparation that improves an ordinary potato degrades this one. True yams retrograde poorly for the simpler reason that their amylose runs at the low end.

Green plantain is the exception on this list, and it must be the plantain, not the ordinary green banana. Amylose decides where a retrograded starch lands, and the banana family splits on it: dessert cultivars (what you find in a supermarket) measure at or below potato. An ordinary green banana, cooked and chilled, still has a use — it simply belongs where the potato belongs, feeding the ascending colon.

Breadfruit and taro, if you can source them, work well.

Beans will retrograde, but often come with gas issues.

Rice can retrograde, but only basmati or another long-grain. The short and sticky types are the low-amylose varieties and they will not build meaningful RS3 no matter how long they are chilled. Retrogradation is only half the job in any case, because rice carries almost no bulk: cooked white rice runs under half a gram of fiber per hundred, against roughly two for a potato eaten with its skin. Rice is therefore not a tuber substitute on its own and should not be served as one. It is eaten with shredded raw fibrous vegetable, carrot, cabbage, turnip, the dense-walled roots and stems described in the cellulose section above, prepared exactly as that section specifies: raw, coarsely shredded, never cooked to mush and never ground fine. The vegetable is not a garnish alongside the rice. It is the half of the dish that restores the coarse cellulose the tuber's flesh used to supply, and rice without it is a starch with its bulking fraction missing.

What about supplements?

A resistant starch supplement does not reproduce the tuber. Most of what is sold, green banana flour among them, is RS2 rather than RS3. Both forms depend on the same keystone degrader, *Ruminococcus bromii*, so a patient missing that organism responds poorly to either, and the flour holds no advantage there. Nor is the resistance itself assured. It survives only when the fruit is dried gently and below the temperature at which starch gelatinizes; drum drying, hot air drying, and any blanching step taken before drying will cook the granule and cost much of what the product was bought for. Published values for commercial flours range from excellent to poor for exactly this reason, and the drying method is almost never disclosed on the label.

The greater loss is not the starch but everything around it. Gentle drying preserves the resistance while still destroying the tissue that carried it. The isolated starches strip the insoluble cell wall outright and the flours grind it to powder, and neither can be undone by adding water back. A dried starch granule below cooking temperature takes up only a little water and swells only slightly; it does not reconstitute. Stirred into a glass it makes a suspension, not a hydrated food, and it settles. The water is beside the granule rather than within it, and it is absorbed high in the colon while the solid goes on without it. Green banana carries a further burden. Unripe fruit is astringent because it is rich in condensed tannins, which bind protein and tighten mucosal secretion, and this is a large part of why green banana has long been used against diarrhea. Given to a patient who is not losing water, an astringent is simply a constipating agent.

In practice these flours tend to bind the gut rather than regulate it, and they do so even when taken in water.† A cooked and chilled tuber is better than two-thirds water held inside a gelatinized matrix within an intact cell wall, and that water travels with the solid the length of the bowel. The flour brings none of its own and borrows what it needs from the lumen. What is left ferments almost completely, leaving no residue to add bulk or stimulate propulsion, while the gas load generated near the front of the colon recruits the methanogens and slows transit further. The answer is the whole food. Cook and chill the tuber, and eat it with the coarse raw vegetable that supplies what its flesh no

longer does. What the flour cannot reproduce is not the starch but everything the starch used to arrive inside of.

Clinical pearl: *A healthy microbiome is not just quality of the stool but quantity as well. Tubers improve both metrics.*

References

1. Schnorr SL, Candela M, Rampelli S, et al. Gut microbiome of the Hadza hunter-gatherers. *Nat Commun*. 2014;5:3654.
2. Smits SA, Leach J, Sonnenburg ED, et al. Seasonal cycling in the gut microbiome of the Hadza hunter-gatherers of Tanzania. *Science*. 2017;357:802-806.
3. Henry AG, Brooks AS, Piperno DR. Microfossils in calculus demonstrate consumption of plants and cooked foods in Neanderthal diets. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 2011;108:486-491.
4. Topping DL, Clarke JM. Short-chain fatty acids and human colonic function: roles of resistant starch and nonstarch polysaccharides. *Physiol Rev*. 2001;81:1031-1064.
5. Englyst HN, Kingman SM, Cummings JH. Classification and measurement of nutritionally important starch fractions. *Eur J Clin Nutr*. 1992;46(Suppl 2):S33-S50.
6. Suarez FL, Springfield J, Furne JK, Lohrmann TT, Kerr PS, Levitt MD. Gas production in humans ingesting a soybean flour derived from beans naturally low in oligosaccharides. *Am J Clin Nutr*. 1999;69(1):135-139.
7. Pimentel M, Lin HC, Enayati P, et al. Methane, a gas produced by enteric bacteria, slows intestinal transit and augments small intestinal contractile activity. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol*. 2006;290(6):G1089-G1095.
8. Remer T, Manz F. Potential renal acid load of foods and its influence on urine pH. *J Am Diet Assoc*. 1995;95(7):791-797.
9. Frassetto LA, Todd KM, Morris RC Jr, Sebastian A. Estimation of net endogenous noncarbonic acid production in humans from diet potassium and protein contents. *Am J Clin Nutr*. 1998;68(3):576-583.
10. Zuckerman JM, Assimios DG. Hypocitraturia: pathophysiology and medical management. *Rev Urol*. 2009;11(3):134-144.
11. Frassetto L, Sebastian A. Age and systemic acid-base equilibrium: analysis of published data. *J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci*. 1996;51(1):B91-B99.

Chapter 16, The SCFA enema

Recovering a functional gut microbiome in all three colon compartments (ascending, transverse and descending) is one of the most important things you can do for improving health. We use stool pH as a measurement of this.

Lactitol and HMOs ferment in the ascending colon. Arabinoxylan oligosaccharides carry into the transverse. The descending colon and the sigmoid are the hard rung, and the previous chapter explained why: the retrograded starch of an ordinary tuber is low-amylose, ferments fast, and is largely consumed before it arrives. What reaches the far end does so on volume rather than on slowness. Give all three rungs and stool pH should fall. In many patients it does. We now discuss what to do when it does not.

What the measurement can see

Roughly ninety-five percent of the short-chain fatty acid produced in the colon is absorbed before the residue becomes stool.¹

The consequence for the clinician is that fecal pH is not simply a measure of colonic fermentation. It is a measure of what fermentation survived absorption in the final segment. Acidification from the ascending and transverse colon is real, is therapeutically meaningful, and is very nearly invisible at the endpoint we test.

Acid present in stool tells us that all three compartments fermented. Alkaline stool says only that acidification failed somewhere. It cannot say where.

Lactitol requires no particular organism. It is a small polyol, cleaved by a widely distributed enzyme, fermentable by generalist saccharolytes that nearly everyone still carries. HMOs prefer *Bifidus infantis*, but other forms will also suffice. AXOS is only slightly more demanding. None have a bottleneck species.

Retrograded starch is the demanding one, and for two separate reasons that are easily conflated.

The first is arrival. A low-amylose retrograded starch is largely consumed before it reaches the segment the protocol was aiming at, so a patient can take a generous serving of chilled potato daily and deliver very little of it to the descending colon. This is a substrate-placement failure and it looks identical, at the stool pH strip, to an organism failure.

The second is degradation. Resistant starch is not fermented by the general community; it must first be attacked by a primary degrader, and *Ruminococcus bromii* holds that role with unusual exclusivity across both the granular and the retrograded forms.³ Remove it and the resistant starch that does arrive is not fermented slowly, it is not fermented at all.

The order matters clinically, because the first is far cheaper to test than the second. Before concluding that a keystone degrader is absent, change the substrate: swap the potato for green plantain, boiled whole in the peel and chilled, and hold everything else constant. A pH that moves was an arrival problem. A pH that does not move, with the higher-amylose substrate in place and fecal starch persisting, points to the organism.[†]

Feeding the three compartments

Before the non-responder, a prior question: how are the three compartments fed in the first place, and can food do it. The ladder is not one prescription but two, and which one a patient needs is decided before any measurement, by what they eat.

The depleted gut — refined food, low fiber throughout, quiet fermentation in every compartment — needs all three rungs built up, because nothing is being fed. This is the ladder as written: a proximal feed, a transverse feed, a distal feed.

The grain-shifted gut is the opposite, and giving it the full ladder can make it worse. A grain-heavy diet already over-feeds the ascending colon. The raffinose-family oligosaccharides, the fructans, and the fast-fermentable fraction of milled grain all ferment high and early, which is the very displacement of fermentation toward the proximal colon that the previous chapter named as the injury. That gut does not need its ascending colon fed. It needs it quieted, and fermentation walked back down toward the distal colon it abandoned.

With that split in hand, each compartment has a different answer, and they are not equally solvable by food.

The ascending colon is food-solvable for everyone. The grain eater has more than enough already and should add nothing. The grain-avoider, who has dropped grains for the proximal reasons above, needs a replacement proximal feed, and has two workable choices.

The first is the cooked-and-cooled starch-banking tuber. The previous chapter established why its retrograded starch does not reliably reach the far colon: potato runs twenty to twenty-five percent amylose, and its crystallites are opened early. What reads as a limitation for the distal rung is precisely the qualification for this one. The tuber delivers fermentable substrate in real quantity to the ascending and early transverse colon, it carries its cell-wall matrix along with it, it is cheap, it is tolerated, and it produces none of the gas that the fructans do. For the grain-avoider who needs the proximal rung fed without a FODMAP load, chilled potato is the first thing to reach for.

The second is lactitol, or its ancestral equivalent, the inulin-banking underground storage organs — camas and the wild lily-family bulbs ancestrally, chicory root and Jerusalem artichoke as the modern equivalents a patient can actually buy. Onion and garlic belong here too, for their inulin and fructan content. Where the tuber banks starch, these bank fructan, and fructan ferments faster and further forward than starch does. The caution is the same thing that makes them work. Short-chain fructans produce gas in anyone who eats them, healthy gut included — sunchoke has its reputation for good reason — and what the terrain decides is not whether the gas is made but how well it is handled. A gut that disposes of hydrogen into acetate and moves its contents along tolerates the load. A methane-loaded or ileoceccally strained gut converts it and holds it, and tolerance drops far enough to defeat compliance. So the inulin roots and the alliums are a proximal feed for the client who tolerates them, never a starting move, and their tolerance improves with the terrain without the fructan load ever going away.

The distal colon is the rung most often assumed solved and least often actually solved. Retrograded starch is manufactured at home from an ordinary ingredient, boil or steam a starch-banking tuber, chill, eat it cold or gently reheated, the RS3 hack of the cooking chapter, and this does deliver real fermentable substrate. What it does not reliably do is deliver it distally. Where a retrograded starch lands is set by its amylose content and the perfection of the crystallites that amylose forms. Potato runs twenty to twenty-five percent amylose and produces crystallites the proximal community opens early. Dessert banana (common supermarket bananas) are no better; measured values for Cavendish and several dessert cultivars run at or below potato. The cooking bananas are the exception and the reason to name them specifically: green plantain and the cooking cultivars measure in the mid-thirties to low forties, above anything a tuber reaches, and their retrograded starch is correspondingly better ordered and more slowly fermented.†

So there are two kitchen routes to this rung, and neither is the plain chilled potato eaten alone. The first is the substrate: green plantain, boiled whole in the peel and chilled, where the higher amylose does the work. The second is the carrier, and it is available to anyone who cannot find a plantain. Coarse insoluble fiber eaten with the starch changes where that starch is consumed, suppressing proximal fermentation and speeding transit past the ascending colon, so a share of the tuber's own retrograded starch reaches segments it would not have reached alone. The previous chapter's cellulose section specifies the form: coarse raw shredded vegetable, never cooked and never ground fine. On that route the potato is still the substrate and the vegetable is the vehicle, and they are eaten together rather than as a starch with a side dish.† There is a third

mechanism, and it is the ancestral one: where the volume is large enough to overrun proximal fermentative capacity, the tuber pushes substrate onward by sheer quantity. That is a dose argument rather than a property of the starch, and modern intake does not reach it.

The transverse colon is the rung the modern diet fails most reliably, and the reason is structural rather than a matter of effort.

Its defining substrate is arabinoxylan, and arabinoxylan is a cereal fiber. It is made by the grass family — which is to say wheat, rye, barley, oats, rice, corn, and their wild ancestors, the grass seeds a forager gathered. Nothing else makes it. No tuber, legume, fruit or vegetable supplies arabinoxylan in meaningful amount; their cell walls are built on different polymers entirely. The molecule belongs to one food family, and a patient who has given up cereal grains has given up the only family that carries it.

Nor can the kitchen manufacture it. Retrograded starch is created at home, by gelatinization and cooling, out of a food that did not contain it before. Arabinoxylan cannot be created at all. It arrives intact in a food or it does not arrive.

A second loss compounds the first, and it catches the patients who believe they have already solved this. Arabinoxylan is not scarce. Cereal grains are the richest common source, rye above all, with the fiber concentrated in the bran and aleurone rather than distributed through the kernel. Not all cereals are equal here — rye leads, wheat and barley follow, and oats and rice are poor sources whose value lies elsewhere. But what refinement removed was not the molecule so much as the particle. Coarse material ferments slowly from the surface inward and survives into the transverse colon. The same material milled to flour presents enormous surface area, ferments rapidly, and is consumed in the ascending colon. Whole grain flour retains arabinoxylan chemically and destroys it functionally. This is why a patient can eat whole grain products faithfully for years and see nothing change in the compartment those products were meant to feed, and why for the grain-shifted patient the fine-milled version is worse than nothing, since it loads the compartment that was already over-fed.

So the modern eater fails this rung by one of two routes. Either they eat cereal in the milled form, which delivers the fiber to the wrong compartment, or they have given up cereal entirely for the proximal and bicarbonate reasons this book has given, and with it the only food family that carried the substrate at all. The grain-avoider's gap is not a failure of diligence. It is the predictable consequence of removing the food that had it.

Ancestrally the problem did not arise, because wild grass seed was eaten whole and barely broken. It delivered arabinoxylan and starch still locked inside intact cell structure in the same coarse mouthful, and the fiber released slowly as bacteria worked their way inward from the particle surface. That release rate was the mechanism. Milling did not merely relocate the fiber; it abolished the process that metered it.†

The food answers all require cooking a whole grain, and that is the practical difficulty rather than an incidental one. Whole rye berries are the richest source and the strongest

choice on substrate alone. Hulled barley is the more useful one, because it covers two compartments in a single food. Hulled, not pearled — pearling abrades away the bran and aleurone where the arabinoxylan sits, and pearled is what most stores sell. The intact kernel carries arabinoxylan into the transverse colon, fermenting slowly from the particle surface inward, and it carries beta-glucan, a soluble viscous fiber that ferments early and feeds the ascending colon. One grain, two rungs. Cook it just to tenderness rather than to mush, since the particle is doing the work and a kernel cooked to collapse has lost it.

Two things are deliberately absent from that list. Milled bran is the richest arabinoxylan fraction there is, and it is also where field and storage fungi colonize first, held afterward in a high-surface-area form that goes rancid and recolonizes readily. A book that spends a chapter on water-damaged buildings cannot then recommend a daily habit of the most mycotoxin-prone fraction of the grain, and the same question applies at lower concentration to the intact kernel, which is why sourcing and storage matter for the berry as well. Psyllium is arabinoxylan-adjacent and reaches the transverse on structure rather than chain length, but its effects on the microbiome are unpredictable enough that it is not a general recommendation.

For most patients, then, the realistic answer is supplementation with arabinoxylan oligosaccharides, or AXOS. The one caveat is that the formulator must be mindful of the degree of polymerization of the grade they choose, since not all AXOS sources reach the compartment we are aiming at.

For those that enjoy anthropology science, before fire, and the ability to create RS3, the descending colon was fed two other ways, and this much is reasoned inference rather than established fact. Resistant fiber carried most of it: the tough cell-wall matrix of raw leaves, stems, skins, and fibrous roots ferments slowly along the whole length and reaches the distal colon by recalcitrance, the same way a coarse intact kernel does now. Mechanical processing added the rest: pounding and grinding coarse seed creates RS1, starch locked inside intact particles that resists proximal digestion and ferments distally on structure rather than on retrogradation. The pre-fire distal colon was fed less by resistant starch than by resistant fiber, with RS1 from crushed seed as the starch contribution.

To summarize. By food: cooked-and-cooled potato (or green bananas) for the ascending colon, hulled barley for the transverse and, through its beta-glucan, the ascending as well, and cooked-and-cooled green plantain for the descending. That being said, some clients will do best by avoiding all grains and the potatoes and bananas will feed transverse fermentation so long as transit time moves it there at a reasonable pace. By supplementation the picture is uneven. Lactitol and HMOs cover the ascending, AXOS the transverse, and both can be bought without difficulty. The descending rung has no comparable option, and the practitioner should understand the asymmetry rather than be surprised by it. The molecule built for it is acetylated high-amylose maize starch, which reaches the far colon by a route the others do not: its acetyl esters are cleaved progressively by microbial esterases along the tract, releasing

acetate distally rather than depending on fermentation rate alone. But the material used in the trials that established the effect runs at a degree of substitution above the food-grade ceiling, and the food-grade version is not sold in bulk without industrial minimums. Other candidates exist — resistant dextrins, polydextrose, polymeric arabinoxylan as distinct from its oligosaccharide, acacia gum — and each has a plausible case for slow distal fermentation, but none has been characterized for this purpose the way the proximal and transverse agents have.[†] So the first two rungs are a purchase and the third is a kitchen problem, a sourcing problem, or an unanswered question. Which is what the rest of this chapter is about.

Why more substrate cannot fix this

The temptation, on finding alkaline stool, is to feed it harder. Increase the resistant starch, extend the chain length, push the dose.

This will not always work, and the reason is that the distal segment is not merely unfed. It has become uninhabitable for the organisms that would feed it. Butyrate oxidation by the colonocyte is what consumes luminal oxygen and holds the mucosal surface anaerobic.⁵ When butyrate is absent the colonocyte shifts to anaerobic glycolysis, stops consuming oxygen, and the epithelial surface oxygenates. Facultative anaerobes expand into that oxygen; the obligate anaerobes that produce butyrate cannot tolerate it.⁶ The state defends itself.

Substrate delivered into that segment meets a community that has already been selected against the ability to use it. You may deliver a perfect substrate to a colon that has lost the capacity to respond, and you will read the result as a delivery failure when it is a habitability failure. Which means the intervention has to adapt.

The inversion

Deliver the butyrate itself, and deliver it where the loop is running, as an enema.

Restoring luminal butyrate restores colonocyte beta-oxidation, which restores epithelial hypoxia, which restores the conditions under which oxygen-intolerant butyrate producers can hold ground. The enema is not a substitute for the missing fermenters. It is what makes the segment habitable for them again.

The clinical proof that instilled short-chain fatty acids reverse a substrate-starved distal mucosa is old and clean. Diversion colitis resolves under short-chain fatty acid irrigation and returns when irrigation stops.⁷ SCFA enemas improve distal colitis on the same principle.^{8,9} The mechanism was never in doubt; only the application to the non-responding acidification patient is new.

Application

You may get cramping or urgency in the first few instillations. A pH of 5.7 against a lumen that normally sits near neutral is a real deviation. That acidity is the point, not an artifact, but the patient should be told to expect it.

Keep all three compartments' oral substrate running through the entire course. An enema course run alone produces a colon that could support fermenters and offers them nothing, and the gains reverse as soon as instillation stops.

There is a second reason to keep it running, independent of the first. The distal butyrate producers do not build butyrate from nothing; they cross-feed on acetate and lactate generated proximally. The oral ladder is not only food for the returning distal population, it is the upstream co-substrate that population requires to produce butyrate at all. Run alone, the enema supplies the end product; run with the oral substrate, it also restores the supply chain that lets the segment make its own. The move to arabinoxylan is favorable here, since its fermentation is acetate-rich.

Be patient. The intervention is competing against a self-defending state, and the first several readings may show nothing while the underlying shift is occurring. Judging it early is judging it on the measurement that was already established to be blind to what it is doing.

When it does not take

There is a scenario in which the enema restores the segment and nothing returns to it, because one or more keystone degraders are not merely suppressed but absent. The distal butyrate producers of consequence, *Faecalibacterium prausnitzii*, *Roseburia*, *Eubacterium rectale*, *Anaerostipes*, are not available as commercial probiotics, and *R. bromii* is not either. If fecal starch persists after a full course with the ladder in place, the organism is gone rather than crowded out, and reinstallation rather than restoration is the requirement.

The spore-forming *Clostridium butyricum* is the one commercially available organism that both survives to the distal colon and produces butyrate in quantity, and it is the reasonable next step. Fecal microbiota transplant is the only route that reinstalls the keystone degrader itself. Be sure to find a donor with acidic stool.

Clinical Pearl: *If we liken microbiome restoration to re-starting a 'fire in the belly', supplemental prebiotics are the kindling and SCFA enemas are the spark.*

References

1. Ruppin H, Bar-Meir S, Soergel KH, Wood CM, Schmitt MG. Absorption of short-chain fatty acids by the colon. *Gastroenterology*. 1980.
2. Binder HJ. Role of colonic short-chain fatty acid transport in diarrhea. *Annual Review of Physiology*. 2010.

3. Ze X, Duncan SH, Louis P, Flint HJ. Ruminococcus bromii is a keystone species for the degradation of resistant starch in the human large intestine. ISME Journal. 2012.
4. Macfarlane GT, Macfarlane S. Bacteria, colonic fermentation, and gastrointestinal health. Journal of AOAC International. 2012.
5. Donohoe DR, Garge N, Zhang X, et al. The microbiome and butyrate regulate energy metabolism and autophagy in the mammalian colon. Cell Metabolism. 2011.
6. Byndloss MX, Olsan EE, Rivera-Chavez F, et al. Microbiota-activated PPAR-gamma signaling inhibits dysbiotic Enterobacteriaceae expansion. Science. 2017.
7. Harig JM, Soergel KH, Komorowski RA, Wood CM. Treatment of diversion colitis with short-chain-fatty-acid irrigation. New England Journal of Medicine. 1989.
8. Scheppach W, Sommer H, Kirchner T, et al. Effect of SCFA enemas on the colonic mucosa in distal ulcerative colitis. Gastroenterology. 1992.
9. Vernia P, Marcheggiano A, Caprilli R, et al. Short-chain fatty acid topical treatment in distal ulcerative colitis. Alimentary Pharmacology and Therapeutics. 1995.
10. Duncan SH, Louis P, Flint HJ. Lactate-utilizing bacteria, isolated from human feces, that produce butyrate as a major fermentation product. Applied and Environmental Microbiology. 2004.

Chapter 17, Transit time and stool weight

Two hundred and twenty healthy British adults swallowed plastic markers, collected every stool, and let the markers be counted. Their median whole gut transit time was 60 hours and their median daily stool weight was 106 grams.¹

Rural Ugandan villagers eating their indigenous diet had a mean intestinal transit time of 36 hours and passed 470 grams of stool a day.²

That puts rural African transit times and weights 1.7x faster and 4.4x heavier than their western counterparts. The weight comparison is the firmer of the two, because stool is weighed the same way everywhere, while the African transit figures were gathered by a mix of dye and pellet methods and are not strictly commensurable with the marker studies. The direction is not in doubt. The multiplier is.

This means that transit time cannot be treated as an independent dial. Distension from larger mass is one input to the propagating contraction and short chain fatty acids are another; the high amplitude propagating contraction is stimulated by colonic distention and by short chain fatty acids alike.³

The relocation of fermentation from the far colon to the near colon has been laid at the door of processing, and correctly. Milling removes the arabinoxylan that the transverse colon eats. Cooking without cooling fails to create the retrograded starch that the descending colon would eat. Breeding for sweetness, softness and tenderness removes the recalcitrant fraction from plant and animal alike. Each of these takes a slowly fermenting substrate and converts it into a fast one, and a fast substrate is consumed where it first meets bacteria, which is the cecum and the ascending colon.

That account is true and it is incomplete. It explains the substrate. It does not explain the transit time.

Two further losses act on the transit time rather than on the substrate, and they compound with everything above.

The first is the loss of unfermented residue. Fiber does not only feed; it also survives. The fraction that reaches the rectum undigested is the fraction that holds water, makes weight, and generates the distention that drives propulsion. Removing it removes the propulsive stimulus.

The second is methane. Where methanogens establish, the gas they produce is not simply a byproduct; it is a brake. Methane slows transit, and slowed transit lengthens the residence of substrate in the proximal colon, which favors more complete fermentation there, which supplies more hydrogen to the methanogens.[†] The arrangement is self-reinforcing, and it is the same reflex chain that produces stasis and cecal loading elsewhere in this book.

A third alteration acts on neither the substrate nor the transit time. It acts on the fermenter.

Domestication changed what the plant makes. Milling changed which part of it arrives. Both are subtractions, and both were largely accidental with respect to the colon. The third alteration is an addition, and it is not accidental at all. We began putting compounds into food and drink for the explicit purpose of stopping microbial growth.

What drove each of the three was distance. Domestication happened where the food was grown and eaten in the same place. Milling put a region between the field and the loaf, and the removal of the germ — the fraction that goes rancid — is what made a flour that could survive that distance. Preservation answers to a national distribution network and to the shopkeeper at the end of it, holding inventory that must not be thrown out. Each step lengthened the interval between when a food is made and when it is eaten, and the antimicrobial is what the longest interval costs.

The plant's own defenses were doing the same job. Tannins, phenolics, saponins and glycoalkaloids are not there to be bitter; bitterness is only how we detect them. They deter insects, fungi and bacteria, and where a crop's storage organ carries too much water to be dried, that chemistry is the entire defense.

Not all anti-microbials in food are a bad idea. Propionate is a genuine antifungal and a genuine short chain fatty acid, the same molecule the colon manufactures for itself, and the baking industry has used its salts as mold inhibitors for the better part of a century. Acetic acid does similar work, which is why vinegar remains a serviceable mold inhibitor and why fermentation-derived cultured wheat and cultured dextrose now appear on clean labels. The short chain fatty acids are demonstrably capable of the job. It is worth pausing on how little of the preservation problem was ever handed to them. They lost out on the terms industrial preservation actually optimizes: they are needed in gram quantities rather than milligram, they carry flavor, and they act on a narrow band of organisms rather than across the board. Every one of those disadvantages is a

description of a compound that resembles food. What the industry chose instead were agents potent at parts per million, flavorless at use level, and effective against everything — and breadth against everything is precisely the property that makes a compound a problem for an organ whose function is microbial. The road not taken was the one where our preservatives and our fermentation products were the same chemistry.

Bread is the clearest case of what was chosen instead, because bread is where the industry has been forced to be explicit about what its preservatives do.

Sorbic acid and potassium sorbate are the broad-spectrum options, effective against molds and yeasts alike. Molds and yeasts are what the compound is sold to control, but the designation describes a commercial purpose rather than a spectrum. Sorbate and benzoate both carry documented activity against bacteria as well, and the gut isolate work makes the point directly: these are the same compounds that suppress *Bacteroides*, lactobacilli and butyrate producers in culture. An agent that disrupts a membrane or acidifies a cytoplasm does not first check which kingdom it has entered. Sodium benzoate presents the same problem from the same cause — it too inhibits yeast — which is why it appears in acid fillings and jams rather than in dough where it might interfere with the bakers yeast.⁴

The encapsulation of sorbate makes a point that no toxicology study needs to make. The baker already knows these compounds suppress a beneficial fermenter, and the entire engineering exists because of it. The only question left is whether the suppression stops at the oven door.

It does not, and the mechanism is selection rather than killing. When human gut isolates are tested against the common preservatives, susceptibility spans nearly three orders of magnitude between organisms — *Bacteroides coprocola* is roughly five hundred and eighty times more sensitive to sodium nitrite than *Enterococcus faecalis*.⁵ The sensitive end includes butyrate producers and lactobacilli. The resistant end includes the organisms that expand when their competitors are suppressed. Tested at the concentrations actually used in food rather than at laboratory doses, nearly all of the common preservatives inhibit gut bacterial growth.⁶ In rats given benzoate or sorbate in drinking water for eight weeks at no-observed-adverse-effect doses, *Lactobacillus* falls and *Enterococcus* expands.⁷ Nothing has been sterilized. A community has been tilted, and tilted in the same direction described everywhere else in these chapters

Nor is this a bread problem, and the reader who has already concluded that bread is not their difficulty should look harder. Benzoate works only in acid, which is why it is in the soft drinks, the juices, the dressings and the pickles. Sorbate covers the broad middle and appears in wine, cheese, tortillas, syrups, fillings and dried fruit. Sulfites cover wine, dried fruit and processed potato. Nitrite covers cured meat. Natamycin covers cheese and yoghurt surfaces. Between them the antimicrobials tile the entire pH range of the human diet, and the tiling is deliberate, because a distribution network is only as good

as its weakest product category. Nothing in a modern grocery store is exempt by being wholesome, and the coverage was engineered to be complete.

The clean-label movement has not changed this; it has changed which molecules do it. Nisin, natamycin, lysozyme, epsilon-polylysine and fermentation-derived mushroom glycolipids are antimicrobials in the strict sense, developed and marketed as such, and they appear in exactly the products a health-conscious shopper reaches for — the cultured drink, the protein beverage, the fiber soda sold for the benefit of the gut. When a panel of preservatives was tested against the murine gut microbiome, the biogenic ones were not the gentle members of the set: nisin produced the most distinct community of any compound tested, and *Bifidobacterium* was significantly reduced by natamycin, lysozyme and epsilon-polylysine as well as by benzoate.⁸ That work is in mice and should be read as such.

It is not just the anti-microbials. Many preservatives and antioxidants such as BHA, BHT and TBHQ also have anti-microbial aspects as well.

A fourth alteration follows the same logic into the field, and it is the one least likely to be recognized as belonging to this list, because it is filed under weed control rather than under preservation.

Glyphosate applied before harvest is not doing weed control. It is a desiccant. The practice began in Scotland in the 1980s, where wet summers left wheat and barley ripening unevenly, and killing the standing crop a week or two before combining forces uniform dry-down and lets the harvest start as much as two weeks earlier.⁹ The benefit is agronomic and logistical: lower grain moisture at harvest, a shorter drying bill, a crop that stores. It is the same problem the miller solved by removing the germ and the baker solved with a mold inhibitor, solved one step further upstream. Farmer and shopkeeper both, exactly as before.

The consequence for exposure is disproportionate to the acreage. Pre-harvest desiccation is a small fraction of total glyphosate use, but because it is applied days before harvest rather than months, the residue does not have time to dissipate, and one estimate puts it at over half of all dietary glyphosate exposure.¹⁰ It reaches the diet through wheat, oats, barley, lentils, peas and dry beans — the staples, not the novelties.

The argument for its safety is that glyphosate inhibits EPSPS, an enzyme of the shikimate pathway, and humans do not have it. That is true, and it is beside the point. Our bacteria have it. Classifying gut organisms by the structure of their EPSPS enzyme, one analysis found fifty-four percent of core human gut bacterial species carry the sensitive form; the same group's conservative floor is twelve to twenty-six percent.¹¹ In vitro, *Bifidobacterium* proves more sensitive than several pathobionts, and reduced *Lactobacillus* has been reported across rats, mice, poultry and bees.¹²

Toxins additive properties

Toxicological clearance is granted one compound at a time. An acceptable daily intake is established for benzoate, and separately for sorbate, nitrite, sulfite, natamycin and nisin, each expressed as milligrams per kilogram of body weight per day and each derived from studies in which that compound was administered by itself. Every one of those limits is a limit on a single compound. There is no limit on the total, because no one sets one. A person's daily antimicrobial load is not a quantity that any regulatory body calculates, and the framework contains no place to record it.

A reader may object that the individual limits are conservative enough to absorb the overlap. That objection assumes the limits were set by a process insulated from the interests of the parties they constrain, and the history does not support the assumption. The clearest case is aspartame. In September 1980 the FDA's own Public Board of Inquiry concluded that aspartame should not be approved pending further investigation of brain tumors in animals. Donald Rumsfeld had by then been president of G.D. Searle, aspartame's manufacturer, since 1977, and he was also seated on Ronald Reagan's presidential transition team. Searle re-filed its application on January 21, 1981, the day after the inauguration. In April the outgoing FDA commissioner was replaced by Arthur Hull Hayes Jr. In July, less than three months into the post and with little background in food additives, Hayes overturned the board and approved aspartame for dry foods. He resigned in September 1983 while under investigation for accepting travel and lodging from industry trade groups, and in 1986 took a senior scientific consulting position at the public relations firm representing Searle and the largest users of the sweetener.¹³ Offering high paying 'consulting' jobs in the very industry they are tasked to regulate upon retirement is a bribe, full stop.

There is a further reason the individual limits cannot simply be summed and compared. The usual reply to a cumulative-exposure argument is that mixture effects are additive rather than synergistic. It is not defensible here, because these particular compounds were selected for synergy on purpose. The industry's own term is 'hurdle technology', and its entire premise is that agents acting through different mechanisms — membrane disruption, enzyme inhibition, cytoplasmic acidification — combine to an effect greater than their sum.¹⁴ One plus one equals three, and it equals three because someone engineered it to. This principle does not stop with the ingredients in any particular product. Add the preservatives in soda, bread, yogurt, cheese and meat all together and $1+1+1+1+1$ does not equal 5. It equals 500.

The published work has concluded in as many words that single-additive safety assessment is inadequate and that microbiome endpoints belong in regulatory toxicology.⁷ In a human-microbiota-associated mouse model, fructose and potassium sorbate together produced liver pathology that neither produced alone.¹⁵

So the modern colon is working against many things at once. It is fed a substrate engineered to be consumed before it arrives. It has lost the residue that would have pushed what remains along. It is braked by a gas produced by organisms that slow transit in order to feed themselves further. And the population doing the fermenting has

been under continuous low-grade selection from compounds chosen, deliberately, for the property of stopping microbial growth.

The lever

Compartment by compartment, we have solutions for the substrate. The ascending colon in most Western eaters, is already overfed, but we also have Lactitol and HMOs if this compartment as suppressed levels of beneficial bacteria and we wish to rebuild them. For the transverse, the intact kernels of certain grains, and arabinoxylan-oligosaccharides for those who do not like coarse grain diets. For the descending and sigmoid there is RS3 resistant starch from cooked and chilled potatoes, sweet potatoes and Basmati rice. But the fermentation of every one of these is shifted proximal by slow transit time. So, prebiotic solutions must be paired with transit time solutions.

Two cautions before this is treated as a target.

The first is the one already stated: transit is pulled through mass and fermentation, not commanded directly. A transit time shortened by herbs or drugs that force peristalsis does not carry the same benefit. The colon is not a pipe with continuous flow. It moves its contents in a small number of propagating events.^{16,17} The goal is to re-establish the natural peristalsis signals, most importantly, SCFA levels.

The second is that transit time can also be too fast. The substrate exits mostly unfermented. A transit time shorter than 24 hours is someone that is not an athlete, is likely an issue.

What to watch

Two endpoints, both available at the toilet.

The first is a sinking stool. Buoyancy is nearly always a gas phenomenon, and only very rarely a fat phenomenon; a stool floats because it is aerated. Persistent floating is therefore a bedside indication of active gas production, and in the presence of the slow transit and the alkaline pH described above, that gas is disproportionately methane. The target is a stool that sinks, which is to say a colon in which methanogenesis is minimal or absent.

The second is a shorter transit time. First appearance of a dye such as chlorophyll and mean transit of a marker cohort are different quantities, and the practitioner should know that dye gives faster readings than the plastic markers referenced earlier. The first appearance of dye is roughly 2x faster than actual transit time, so we are now aiming for a ~24 hour transit time.

Clinical pearl: *Mechanisms don't stop at the tissue you target. BHT, a preservative, was taken by anti-aging bio-hackers for decades at gram doses to protect membranes.*

Brain tissue may have had less oxidation, but the damage to the gut was likely a net loss for their anti-aging purposes.

References

1. Cummings JH, Bingham SA, Heaton KW, Eastwood MA. Fecal weight, colon cancer risk, and dietary intake of nonstarch polysaccharides. *Gastroenterology* 1992. [Locator to verify.]
2. Burkitt DP, Walker ARP, Painter NS. Effect of dietary fibre on stools and transit-times, and its role in the causation of disease. *Lancet* 1972;2(7792):1408-12. doi:10.1016/S0140-6736(72)92974-1
3. [Primary source needed. The claim that high amplitude propagating contractions are stimulated by colonic distention and by short chain fatty acids is drawn from a review overview, not from the original manometric or infusion study.]
4. [Source needed. That sodium benzoate inhibits baker's yeast, and is therefore used in acid fillings and jams rather than in dough, is standard bakery practice.]
5. Hrnčirová L, et al. Human gut microbes are susceptible to antimicrobial food additives in vitro. *Folia Microbiol (Praha)* 2019.
6. [Am J Clin Nutr 2025 — nine preservatives tested at diet-relevant concentrations; all but sodium chloride and sodium nitrate significantly inhibited growth at or below use levels. ScienceDirect PII S0002916525001960.]
- Rezaei A, Sadeghi Habibabad F, Bina S, Khoshnoud MJ, Haghshenas M, Rashedinia M, et al. Beyond antimicrobial efficacy: complex interactions of sodium benzoate, potassium sorbate, and citrate alter the rat gut microbiome. *J Sci Food Agric* 2026. doi:10.1002/jsfa.70703
8. [npj Science of Food 2022 — panel of preservatives against the murine gut microbiome; nisin produced the most distinct community; Bifidobacterium reduced by benzoate, natamycin, lysozyme and epsilon-polylysine.]
9. [Source needed. Origin of pre-harvest glyphosate desiccation in Scotland in the 1980s, and the harvest-timing and dry-down benefit.]
10. [Source needed. The estimate that pre-harvest desiccation accounts for more than half of dietary glyphosate exposure.]
11. Leino L, Tall T, Helander M, et al. Classification of the glyphosate target enzyme (5-enolpyruvylshikimate-3-phosphate synthase) for assessing sensitivity of organisms to the herbicide. *J Hazard Mater* 2021.

12. [Source needed. In vitro Bifidobacterium sensitivity relative to pathobionts, and reduced Lactobacillus reported across rats, mice, poultry and bees.]
13. [Sources needed. Aspartame approval chronology. Cite the FDA Public Board of Inquiry decision of September 1980, the Federal Register approval notice of July 1981]
14. Leistner L. Basic aspects of food preservation by hurdle technology. *Int J Food Microbiol* 2000.
15. [Source needed. Fructose and potassium sorbate co-exposure producing liver pathology in a human-microbiota-associated mouse model that neither produced alone.]
16. Nandhra GK, Mark EB, Di Tanna GL, et al. Normative values for region-specific colonic and gastrointestinal transit times in 111 healthy volunteers using the 3D-Transit electromagnet tracking system: influence of age, gender, and body mass index. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2020;32(2):e13734. doi:10.1111/nmo.13734
17. Wang YT, Mohammed SD, Farmer AD, et al. Regional gastrointestinal transit and pH studied in 215 healthy volunteers using the wireless motility capsule: influence of age, gender, study country and testing protocol. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2015;42:761-772.

Chapter 18, The Exudative Loop - How pathobionts farm us

When the fermentable carbon that once reached the descending colon disappears, the community there does not starve so much as change its diet, and the only substrate left in quantity at the far end of the tract is us.

The first protein eaten is the barrier itself. Starved of dietary polysaccharide, the mucin-degrading residents (*Akkermansia*, *Bacteroides thetaiotaomicron*, *Ruminococcus gnavus* and *R. torques*) turn their glycan-foraging machinery onto the colonic mucus layer, thinning it and closing the buffer of distance that normally holds the microbial mass off the epithelium.^{1 2}

At the same time the loss of resistant starch removes the butyrate that was the colonocyte's primary fuel, so the epithelium is underfed exactly as its outer defense is being consumed. Barrier erosion proceeds from both sides at once: less mucus made, more mucus eaten, the cells that make it running on empty.

The protein need not all be dietary, and in the injured colon most of it is not. An inflamed or ulcerated mucosa weeps a protein-rich exudate, serum albumin and globulins, fibrin, complement, sloughed epithelium, and, where the surface is breached, frank blood, delivered straight into the lumen. Protein-losing enteropathy is the clinical proof that this leak is real and quantitatively substantial; the escaped protein has to go somewhere, and in the colon a share of it is bacterial food. The proteolytic residents consume it, and the blood among it hands the lumen heme and iron, which favor the *Enterobacteriaceae* and *Fusobacterium* and add a pro-oxidant insult of their own. This is the point the argument has been building toward: the exudate of an injured distal colon is itself a substrate, and the community that feeds on it produces the metabolites that keep the surface injured. The wound feeds the flora, and the flora's output keeps the wound weeping.[†]

How does an infection come to farm a wound? Salmonella does not wait for an inflamed gut; it manufactures one. Its type-III secretion systems inject effectors that provoke mucosal inflammation, and that inflammation is not collateral damage but the object of the exercise, the inflamed surface oxidizes the lumen's hydrogen sulfide to tetrathionate and drives nitrate from the induced nitric oxide, and Salmonella alone among the residents can respire those acceptors.³ It triggers the injury because the injury exhales the one substrate that lets it out-breathe every competitor. That is farming in the strict sense: an organism degrading host tissue to release a resource it is uniquely equipped to harvest, driven by a dedicated genetic apparatus selected for exactly that end.

The farming is emergent, assembled by selection out of a consortium rather than executed by one species. Proteolytic and mucolytic residents secrete the proteases and mucinases that liberate peptide from the barrier and from the exudate, and feed directly on what they cleave. The blood of a breached surface hands the lumen heme and iron, and the organisms that thrive on them are the Enterobacteriaceae and Fusobacterium, so bleeding both feeds those taxa and selects for them. And the putrefactive output of that feeding, the ammonia, the sulfide, the phenols and cresols, is mucosally toxic,^{4 5 6 7} so the very act of eating the exudate degrades the surface that produces it. Each strain pursues nothing but its own substrate; the aggregate behaves as though the community were holding the wound open to keep itself fed.† Wound-farming is real, then, a property of a dysbiotic ecosystem rather than an intention of any member.

The precedent is not speculative. Chronic wound biofilms thrive on protein-rich wound exudate and are the accepted reason such wounds fail to close,⁸ and a diverted colon inflames on substrate loss and heals on short-chain fatty acid irrigation.⁹ The exudative distal colon is the same phenomenon one organ over: a transient injury converted by an adapted community into a self-maintaining one.†

The clinically important property of a loop of this kind is that it becomes semi-autonomous of its trigger. Removing the original insult does not restore the prior state, because the community now sustaining the lesion is adapted to the lesion and not to the trigger. The exudative distal colon is an alternative stable state, and like the chronic wound it defends itself; healing requires breaking the loop directly rather than merely withdrawing what first opened it.†

A compounding factor sits on the input side, and it belongs here because it worsens the loop. The protein arriving there has also changed, and changed in the one direction that removes its own protection.

Ancestrally the protein that reached the descending colon was substantially connective tissue. The collagen and elastin that resist the small intestine and arrive intact, carrying with them the glycosaminoglycans of cartilage, chondroitin and hyaluronan, a bound carbohydrate the bacteria ferment alongside the protein. This is the candification of meat, named in the framing chapters as the animal case of the same refinement that took the fiber: modern meat is bred young, kept still, marbled, and trimmed toward tenderness, and tenderness is connective tissue engineered away.† Proteolytic fermentation is held in check by carbohydrate fermenting beside it. Bacteria take the

sugar first, the pH falls, and ammonia and sulfide fall with it. The modern diet removes that check twice over, stripping the free fiber from the plant and the bound glycosaminoglycan from the animal.

Where the loop leads

Once locked, the loop does not idle. It drives, amplifies, or defends three disease processes at the distal colon, and each feeds back to deepen it.

Surgical interventions offer the cleanest possible proof. Divert the fecal stream and the distal segments inflame, from short-chain fatty acid starvation specifically, and the inflammation reverses on SCFA irrigation.⁹ Diversion colitis is this chapter's whole thesis demonstrated in humans: deny the distal colon its fermentable acid and it develops colitis; restore the acid and it heals. In ulcerative colitis the same energy starvation appears from the epithelial side, the UC colonocyte fails to oxidize butyrate, and sulfide worsens the failure.^{7 10}

The second trajectory is malignant, and the loop selects for precisely the organisms and metabolites now most implicated in it. The colibactin-producing pks⁺ *Escherichia coli*, an Enterobacterium, the very organism the oxygenated inflamed surface enriches^{11 12}, leaves its own specific mutational signature in human colorectal cancer.¹³ *Fusobacterium nucleatum* promotes tumorigenesis and immune evasion;¹⁴ enterotoxigenic *Bacteroides fragilis* drives an IL-17 tumorigenic program;¹⁵ hydrogen sulfide is a direct genotoxin;¹⁶ ammonia promotes the proliferation already noted;⁵ protein fermentation yields N-nitroso compounds;¹⁷ and the lost butyrate was itself a histone-deacetylase inhibitor and a brake on epithelial proliferation, so its absence is procarcinogenic in its own right.¹⁷ Genotoxic bacteria, genotoxic metabolites, a removed tumor-suppressive brake, and sustained inflammation converge, and the loop enriches for every one. The claim is promoter and driver within the inflammation route to colorectal cancer, not the sole cause of the sporadic, mutation-initiated tumor.

The third is not a disease but a chemistry, and it is the one with the most immediate bearing on treatment. Stool pH is set by the contest between the two fermentations: saccharolytic makes acid, proteolytic makes ammonia and other toxic alkaline amines. A locked proteolytic loop does both wrong things at once, it manufactures the alkaline toxins while failing to make short-chain fatty acid, so the stool runs alkaline and resists correction.⁴ And the alkalinity is not merely a readout. Alkaline pH itself favors proteolytic and pathobiont taxa and suppresses the acid-making saccharolytes, so the pH the community produces is the pH that selects for the community, a loop nested inside the larger one. The corollary for any acidification protocol is direct: acidic SCFAs by enema and acidogenic substrates displacing the proteolytic community, restoring saccharolytic substrate to re-anaerobiose the surface and out-competing it, and suppressing the ammonia producers, before the pH will hold.[†]

Clinical pearl: *While not specific to the exudative loop, acupuncture point LI4 is a fair general measurement of colonic inflammation, as are enlarged, red, twisted or*

otherwise prominent vessels in the lower portion of the sclera (see the works of Mehlmauer¹⁹).†

References

1. Desai MS, Seekatz AM, Koropatkin NM, et al. A dietary fiber-deprived gut microbiota degrades the colonic mucus barrier and enhances pathogen susceptibility. *Cell*. 2016;167(5):1339-1353.
2. Martens EC, Chiang HC, Gordon JI. Mucosal glycan foraging enhances fitness and transmission of a saccharolytic human gut bacterial symbiont. *Cell Host Microbe*. 2008;4(5):447-457.
3. Winter SE, Thiennimitr P, Winter MG, et al. Gut inflammation provides a respiratory electron acceptor for *Salmonella*. *Nature*. 2010;467(7314):426-429.
4. Windey K, De Preter V, Verbeke K. Relevance of protein fermentation to gut health. *Mol Nutr Food Res*. 2012;56(1):184-196.
5. Visek WJ. Diet and cell growth modulation by ammonia. *Am J Clin Nutr*. 1978;31(10 Suppl):S216-S220.
6. Lin HC, Visek WJ. Colon mucosal cell damage by ammonia in rats. *J Nutr*. 1991;121(6):887-893.
7. Roediger WE, Duncan A, Kapaniris O, Millard S. Reducing sulfur compounds of the colon impair colonocyte nutrition: implications for ulcerative colitis. *Gastroenterology*. 1993;104(3):802-809.
8. James GA, Swogger E, Wolcott R, et al. Biofilms in chronic wounds. *Wound Repair Regen*. 2008;16(1):37-44.
9. Harig JM, Soergel KH, Komorowski RA, Wood CM. Treatment of diversion colitis with short-chain-fatty-acid irrigation. *N Engl J Med*. 1989;320(1):23-28.
10. Roediger WE. The colonic epithelium in ulcerative colitis: an energy-deficiency disease? *Lancet*. 1980;2(8197):712-715.
11. Byndloss MX, Olsan EE, Rivera-Chávez F, et al. Microbiota-activated PPAR- γ signaling inhibits dysbiotic Enterobacteriaceae expansion. *Science*. 2017;357(6351):570-575.
12. Winter SE, Winter MG, Xavier MN, et al. Host-derived nitrate boosts growth of *Escherichia coli* in the inflamed gut. *Science*. 2013;339(6120):708-711.
13. Pleguezuelos-Manzano C, Puschhof J, Rosendahl Huber A, et al. Mutational signature in colorectal cancer caused by genotoxic pks⁺ *E. coli*. *Nature*. 2020;580(7802):269-273.
14. Rubinstein MR, Wang X, Liu W, et al. *Fusobacterium nucleatum* promotes colorectal carcinogenesis by modulating E-cadherin/ β -catenin signaling via its FadA adhesin. *Cell Host Microbe*. 2013;14(2):195-206.
15. Wu S, Rhee KJ, Albesiano E, et al. A human colonic commensal promotes colon tumorigenesis via activation of T helper type 17 T cell responses. *Nat Med*. 2009;15(9):1016-1022.
16. Attene-Ramos MS, Wagner ED, Plewa MJ, Gaskins HR. Evidence that hydrogen sulfide is a genotoxic agent. *Mol Cancer Res*. 2006;4(1):9-14.

17. Louis P, Hold GL, Flint HJ. The gut microbiota, bacterial metabolites and colorectal cancer. Nat Rev Microbiol. 2014;12(10):661-672.
18. Mehlmauer L. Sclerology: A New View of an Ancient Art. Grand Medicine Books.

Chapter 19, The colonic protocol

Let's take a moment to go over what we've learned and put it all together as a protocol.

Diet

RS3 from cooked and cooled potatoes, sweet potatoes and Basmati rice along with shredded bulk vegetables like carrots form the base of the initial diet and provide both the slow fermenting starch and the water carrying bulk. Protein as wild caught fish, chicken and beef in amounts starting at 1/2 the palm of one's hand per meal minimize protein overflow to the colon. Some oil at each meal stimulates peristalsis. Non-chlorinated water sufficient to keep the mouth moist. Avoid processed foods with preservatives.

Prebiotics

Prebiotics for all three compartments include Human Milk Oligosaccharides (HMOs) and Lactitol for the ascending colon (consider our Acidulem product), arabinoxylans for the transverse colon (consider our Acetamet product), RS3 for the descending colon, and a wide range of paleolithically accurate prebiotics to increase microbial diversity in general (consider our Panaceum).

For the patient who would rather source these from nature than buy them, insects, cartilage and seaweed feed the distal colon, and coarse whole rye or coarse hulled barley feed the transverse.

Transit time

Walking is extremely important. It generates repetitive small stretches in the colon wall which triggers serotonin release which triggers peristalsis. Remember, hunter gatherers would walk 6 miles a day. Also important is keeping bile flowing properly (consider our Glytamins product) and finishing dinner at least 3 hours before sleep. SCFA enemas (consider our Klisatmet product) and proper hydration however are often the most helpful here. Without proper transit speed, all the prebiotics we give the client, even RS3, will ferment proximally leaving the distal colon bacteria no choice but to shift to proteolytic fermentation, which is the main problem we are trying to address.

Colon repair

The distal colon in most people has been starved of prebiotics for most of their life and has been in near complete proteolytic fermentation during that time. The toxins created and the 'wound farming' together damage the mucosa. Adding RS3 may not be enough as it requires a mucosa capable of engaging in saccolytic fermentation in the first place. Direct delivery of butyrate to the distal colon via microenema to feed the colonocytes and suppress the proteolytic bacteria may be needed until the mucosa heals and can generate it for itself (consider our Klistamet).

Bacteriophages

Bacteriophage therapy is relatively unknown in the West. Bacteriophages (viruses that predate on bacteria) targets specific bacterial populations using phages that kill the target without affecting non-target populations.¹ Response is binary, the target is either present or it is not.

Sextaphage, a Russian polyvalent pyobacteriophage, has a labeled spectrum covering staphylococci, streptococci including enterococci, Proteus, Klebsiella pneumoniae, Pseudomonas aeruginosa, and Escherichia coli, six phage components.² Phages are strain-specific rather than gram-specific; a cocktail broadens coverage but does not guarantee the patient's resident strain is susceptible. Oral delivery must survive gastric acid. Gastric-resistant formulations have been made for exactly this;³ for the liquid ampoule form, buffering the stomach serves the same purpose, which is why I suggest taking baking soda fifteen minutes before phage therapy on an empty stomach.

Clinical pearl: *For patients with a history of sore throats or suspected PANDAS, including adults who may have had it as children, the bacteriophages may address the streptococcal piece of that picture. Tonsils may also have to be addressed (see our Tonsil chapter).*

References:

1. Kortright KE, Chan BK, Koff JL, Turner PE. Phage therapy: a renewed approach to combat antibiotic-resistant bacteria. Cell Host Microbe. 2019;25(2):219-232.

2. Microgen (NPO Microgen). Sextaphage (Polyvalent Pyobacteriophage): product information. Moscow: Microgen.

3. Pyobacteriophage (Sextaphage) gastric-resistant tablet composition. Russian Federation patent RU2410084C1; 2011.

Chapter 20, Your genetics are not your destiny

A patient walks in with a genetic test report. They have been told they carry a variant for a methylation gene, or are at a higher risk for a specific type of cancer. They have read about what it means. They feel broken, that something fundamental has been decided about them.

Genetic variants are real. They affect how the body handles certain inputs. But what the test does not tell the patient is that their human genome is not the only genome operating in their body. The microbiome carries metabolic pathways the human genome does not encode, produces compounds the body cannot make on its own, and performs detoxification, vitamin synthesis, immune regulation, and neurotransmitter precursor generation.¹ The patient's biology is a partnership between their human genome and their microbial genome.

What the patient was told their genes condemned them to is, in many cases, what their human genes alone would produce in the absence of microbial support.† With a healthy microbiome, the picture is different.

What genetic variants actually mean

Some variants reduce the patient's capacity to run a particular enzymatic step efficiently. The MTHFR variant is one, the enzyme still functions, but at a fraction of normal speed.² The patient is not making zero. They are making less. Lifestyle determines how much demand they put on that pathway. A patient whose toxin load is low, diet clean, digestion intact, and microbiome healthy may never feel the limitation. A patient overwhelming the same pathway will feel it strongly.

The library

Think of the genome as a library. Each gene is a cookbook on the shelf. Some contain recipes for healthy food. Others contain recipes that should never reach the table. Every patient has both kinds.

It matters little which cookbooks are in the library if no one takes them off the shelf. A book never opened changes nothing. A book used every day shapes everything.

Epigenetics is the study of which books come off the shelf.³ Lifestyle decisions, diet, sleep, stress, microbiome, determine which books get pulled down and which stay gathering dust. The genetic test tells the patient which books they have. It does not tell them which books are being read.

Clinical pearl: *This is another reason to work towards greater genetic diversity in the microbiome. The more diverse the microbiome, the greater epigenetic resource we have.*⁴

References

1. Gill SR, Pop M, DeBoy RT, et al. Metagenomic analysis of the human distal gut microbiome. **Science**. 2006;312(5778):1355-1359.
2. Frosst P, Blom HJ, Milos R, et al. A candidate genetic risk factor for vascular disease: a common mutation in methylenetetrahydrofolate reductase. **Nat Genet**. 1995;10(1):111-113.
3. Feinberg AP. The key role of epigenetics in human disease prevention and mitigation. **N Engl J Med**. 2018;378(14):1323-1334.
4. Davie JR. Inhibition of histone deacetylase activity by butyrate. **J Nutr**. 2003;133(7 Suppl):2485S-2493S.

Chapter 21, Parasites: don't always kill them - sometimes just show them the door

Parasites are an interesting case. Traditional doctors believe that they are mostly absent from the general population and that people wanting a "parasite cleanse" are misinformed at best. On the other side, some alternative practitioners believe that parasites are endemic in even first-world patients and a contributor to virtually all diseases. Where is the truth? Likely in the middle. Parasites are common, they contribute to a great deal of disease even in first-world countries,¹ but the correct strategy for addressing them is not the strategy most practitioners reach for first.

For this chapter, parasites means helminths, roundworms, tapeworms, hookworms, flukes, and protozoa including *Toxoplasma*, *Trypanosoma*, *Giardia*, and *Entamoeba*. Bacterial and fungal overgrowths are addressed in other chapters.

Why kill-based protocols aren't always best

The instinct on encountering a parasite is to kill it. This can produce problems varying by parasite size and location.

Small parasites dissolved in place release their contents. Many protozoa and small helminth larvae, when killed chemically, dissolve in host tissue, releasing metabolic byproducts, accumulated heavy metals and any organisms the parasite itself carried.² Large parasites encapsulated produce chronic irritation. Larger parasites the body cannot dissolve are walled off in granulomatous capsules.³ Killing the parasite inside does not remove the capsule. The encapsulated material continues to irritate surrounding tissue, sometimes for life.

So, should we attack them chemically? Chemical irritation drives burrowing or resistance. Helminths that can migrate through tissue respond to chemical attack by burrowing deeper, where concentration is lower.⁴ Sub-lethal doses drive parasites into less accessible tissue. Over time, repeated sub-lethal pressure may also produce resistance.

The toxicity ceiling on herbal antiparasitics

Most antiparasitic herbs are toxic by design. Wormwood contains neurotoxic thujone at sustained doses.⁵ Clove (eugenol) is hepatotoxic at elevated doses.⁶ Black walnut and juglone-containing herbs have their own profiles. Berberine at antiparasitic doses places significant hepatic load.⁷

Don't always kill them. Sometimes, show them the door

One strategy is non-kill expulsion: make the host tissue inhospitable so the parasite leaves,† and an excellent tool for this is negative high voltage applied externally over the affected region.†

Two mechanisms

Stun effect. High voltage, low amperage can stun parasites and disrupt the parasite's nervous system and mobility without killing them in place, causing them to dislodge from tissue walls.† This is similar to the effect of cloves. Consider our electron charger.

Counter-attractant signal. Healthy tissue carries a baseline negative charge that parasites orient toward. Inadequate tissue voltage produces an attractive signal. Supra-physiological negative voltage reverses this, the parasite receives a repellent signal and is driven to leave.†

Unlike chemical antiparasitics, voltage at therapeutic settings has no toxicity ceiling and can be repeated as often as warranted.

Clinical pearl: Practitioners and patients applying negative high voltage over the abdomen routinely report finding living parasites in the toilet afterward, alive because they were driven out, not killed in place. Squeamish patients should be advised in advance.

References

1. Hotez PJ. Neglected infections of poverty in the United States of America. *PLoS Negl Trop Dis*. 2008;2(6):e256.
2. Herricks JR, Hotez PJ, Woc-Colburn L, et al. Diagnostic and treatment challenges for neglected parasitic infections in the United States. *Am J Trop Med Hyg*. 2017;97(5 Suppl):24-32.

3. Meyers WM, Neafie RC, Connor DH. Pentastomiasis. In: Binford CH, Connor DH, eds. **Pathology of Tropical and Extraordinary Diseases**. Washington, DC: Armed Forces Institute of Pathology; 1976.
4. Geerts S, Gryseels B. Drug resistance in human helminths: current situation and lessons from livestock. **Clin Microbiol Rev**. 2000;13(2):207-222.
5. Lachenmeier DW, Walch SG. The role of thujone in absinthe. **Drug Test Anal**. 2011;3(4):234-238.
6. Thompson DC, Barhoumi R, Burghardt RC. Comparative toxicity of eugenol and its quinone methide metabolite in cultured liver cells using kinetic fluorescence bioassays. **Toxicol Appl Pharmacol**. 1998;149(1):55-63.
7. Imanshahidi M, Hosseinzadeh H. Pharmacological and therapeutic effects of *Berberis vulgaris* and its active constituent, berberine. **Phytother Res**. 2008;22(8):999-1012.

Chapter 22, The challenge of the small intestine

We began with the large intestine microbiome, but there are more. In the following chapters, we will discuss three additional microbiomes: the sinuses, the throat, and the vagina. Each has its own ecology and its own rules.

This chapter is about the small intestine. Unlike the large intestine, feeding diversity and building dense populations would harm the small intestine. The small intestine wants the opposite.

What the small intestine is for

The small intestine is the digestive and absorptive corridor. Food passes through approximately twenty feet of jejunum and ileum, acted on by bile, pancreatic enzymes, and brush-border enzymes.¹ Breakdown products are absorbed into the bloodstream and lymphatics. By the time what remains reaches the ileocecal valve, the host has extracted most of what was nutritionally available.

This work depends on the small intestine having a relatively low microbial population. A dense microbial population would compete with the host for nutrients, produce gas and acid before absorption, consume bile acids, and interfere with fat digestion.²

The colon wants high microbial density. The small intestine wants low. Same gut, same continuous tube, two completely different ecologies.

The defenses of the small intestine

Keeping a twenty-foot warm, wet, nutrient-rich tube sparsely populated is not a passive state. It is maintained by a series of layered defenses, and small intestinal bacterial overgrowth is what happens when enough of them fail at once. Each layer is worth assessing individually, because each has its own remedy.

Gastric acid. The principal chemical barrier. Gastric juice at physiological pH is lethal to most ingested organisms, and hypochlorhydria — from acid-suppressing medication, atrophic gastritis, or age — allows a substantially larger inoculum into the duodenum.³ This is one of the most common and most correctable contributors to overgrowth.

Bile as detergent. Bile acids disrupt the lipid membranes of bacteria and fungi.⁴ A patient with poor bile flow, from gallbladder removal, bile stasis, or chronic biliary dysfunction, has lost a major antimicrobial layer. As bile acids reach the terminal ileum, they activate FXR, triggering local antimicrobial peptide production — a sentinel system at the ileal-colonic boundary.⁶ When bile flow fails, this signaling fails too. If bile insufficiency is suspected, consider a gallbladder protocol and bicarbonate supplementation.

Pancreatic enzymes. Proteases, lipases, and amylases reduce the substrate available to microbes in the lumen as well as digesting it for the host.⁵ Pancreatic insufficiency leaves undigested material in the corridor, which is precisely what a microbial population needs to establish.

The migrating motor complex (MMC). The cleaning rhythm between meals — a wave of contraction sweeping from duodenum to ileocecal valve roughly every ninety minutes during fasting, physically removing accumulated microbes.⁷ The MMC requires fasting to fire. A patient who eats continuously suppresses it for most of their waking hours. The MMC needs at least three to four hours between meals, and the most important activity happens during overnight sleep. A twelve-to-fourteen-hour overnight fast gives the MMC its most thorough window. The difference between a clean and a colonized small intestine often comes down to this.†

Peyer's patches. The immune sensors of the small bowel, sampling luminal contents and directing the secretory IgA response that keeps particular organisms in check.⁸ They are the reason the small intestine's control over its population is selective rather than merely chemical.

The ileocecal valve. This one-way boundary keeps colonic contents from refluxing into the terminal ileum.⁹ When incompetent, most often from surgical adhesions, dense colonic populations colonize the small intestine in retrograde. This is one of the most common origins of SIBO.¹⁰ More on this in the next chapter. Topical castor oil or oral liposomal proteolytic enzymes can be considered for adhesions.

Spore-formers and the soil-plant-gut cycle

The healthy small intestine hosts predominantly transient bacteria, including the spore-forming bacteria from the genus *Bacillus*.¹¹ Soil contains many thousands of microbial species, but only a small fraction survive cooking and human digestion. The *Bacillus* species, perhaps five percent of soil microbes, are the fraction that became digestive symbionts once humans mastered fire.†

Their life cycle fits the small intestine's needs. They exist in soil as dormant spores, metabolically inactive, resistant to heat and acid.¹² Spores enter the body on plant matter and from soil contact. They survive the stomach because spores are not metabolizing. When they reach the small intestine, bile triggers germination.¹³ The active cell produces antimicrobial compounds, regulates local immunity, and supports digestion.

The sickest colons, those with the highest pH, provide the environment in which these organisms exert their effects most powerfully. A proper *Bacillus* formulation is most active where it is most needed,† in compromised, dysbiotic environments with elevated pH, settling toward a background protective posture as gut pH returns to health. A graph plotting pH against *Bacillus* activity can be seen at remedylink.com/charts.

Antibiotics affect the spore population differently from resident colonic populations. Because spores are transient and are not metabolizing while in spore form, they are not susceptible to antibiotics the way colonized bacteria are.¹¹ This makes the spore protocol usable during and after antibiotic courses, a significant advantage when antibiotics are clinically necessary.

The loss of the spore bacteria

In soil, the spores participate in the plant-root symbiosis: plants exude sugars to feed soil microbes, which in return solubilize minerals, fix nitrogen, and protect root zones.¹⁴ Soil to plant to gut to soil. Modern farming has broken that connection.

Fertilizer. Synthetic NPK feeds plants directly, bypassing the symbiotic exchange.¹⁵ Plants stop feeding soil microbes, and spore populations decline around root zones.

Agricultural chemicals. Pesticides, herbicides, and fungicides damage the broader soil microbiome, including spore populations.

Human hygiene. Paved surfaces, indoor environments, and antimicrobial hand products minimize soil contact.

The kitchen. Peeling and thoroughly washing vegetables removes the spores that remain. The skin of root vegetables is where most soil-derived microbial content sits.

The combined effect is that modern patients receive a vanishingly small fraction of the spore exposure human biology evolved to receive daily. The small intestine loses a population that was doing several protective jobs: *Bacillus* species secrete antimicrobial peptides — surfactin, iturin, fengycin, bacillomycin^{16,25} — modulate local immunity,³⁸ and contribute enzymatic digestive activity.

These organisms were a routine part of the ancestral intake, arriving continuously on food grown in and harvested from living soil, and their disappearance from a washed and sanitized food supply arrived alongside broad antibiotic exposure and a diet stripped of the substrates anaerobes depend on. These removals push in the same

direction rather than opposing one another. It is the convergence that raises the odds, not any single loss, and that is the honest reason to attempt restoring the exposure even where it cannot be shown to be the deciding factor in a given patient.†

The seven strains

There are at least seven *Bacillus* spore bacteria that should be included in the human diet to recreate a paleolithic exposure.† Three, and occasionally four, can be found in common spore-based supplements; several are rare, and their absence from a blend is not a minor difference. As the section below explains, the strains that appear to do the work most relevant to methanogen suppression are disproportionately the uncommon ones.

Commonly available strains

Bacillus subtilis- The foundational immunoregulator. Produces iturin and fengycin (antifungal).¹⁶ Contributes diamine oxidase activity, degrading dietary histamine.¹⁷ Digests biofilm matrices.¹⁸

Bacillus coagulans- Produces L-form lactic acid, contributing to pH regulation in the proximal colon.¹⁹

Bacillus clausii- Contributes antibiotic resilience and immune modulation. Tolerates concurrent antibiotic exposure, making it useful during and after courses.²⁰

Bacillus licheniformis- The protein specialist. Produces proteases reducing protein spillover into the colon.²¹ May also have an anxiolytic effect.†

Specialty strains- Useful, not commonly available

Bacillus velezensis- The antifungal and biofilm disruptor. Produces polyketide compounds and proteases.²²

Bacillus megaterium- The largest *Bacillus* species, with the most varied output. Contributes chelation activity, B12 production, and phosphate solubilization.²³

Bacillus amyloliquefaciens- The starch specialist. Produces amylase and bacillomycin, an antifungal targeting ergosterol.²⁴

Reaching the methanogen through its partners

The organism we now address is *Methanobrevibacter smithii*, the one responsible for methane production. Common approaches all run into one wall. It is not a bacterium and does not have a bacterium's vulnerabilities. Its cell wall is pseudomurein rather than peptidoglycan²⁹ and is inert to the hydrolases and to the lysozyme that open bacterial cells.³⁰ Its membrane is built from isoprenoid lipids rather than the fatty acids that most membrane-active antimicrobials evolved against. Nearly the entire arsenal a formulator

has to work with was developed against bacteria, and the archaea are not bacteria. You can use allicin from garlic, but allicin is broad spectrum and not without consequence.

I have come to think that the *Bacillus* spores may reach methanogenesis obliquely, by way of the bacteria the archaea depend on rather than the archaea themselves. *M. smithii* does not make its own hydrogen. It receives it, at close quarters, from bacterial partners. *Christensenella* species are the most efficient of these, supporting the archaeon's growth by interspecies hydrogen transfer considerably better than the commensals previously assumed to do that work, and the two grow together in dense flocs rather than mixing freely through the lumen.³¹ That physical arrangement is not incidental. Syntrophic hydrogen transfer requires proximity, because the point of the arrangement is that the bacterium hands off hydrogen before it accumulates to a concentration that would stall its own fermentation. Separate the partners and the transaction fails even though both organisms survive.

A floc is a structure, and structures can be taken apart. The strains best equipped to do it are the genus's principal producers of nonribosomal lipopeptides and of the proteases that disassemble biofilm matrices: *subtilis*, *licheniformis*, *velezensis*, and *amyloliquefaciens*. Surfactin, iturin, fengycin, bacillomycin, and lichenysin are membrane-active compounds,^{16,25} and *velezensis* and *amyloliquefaciens* come out of agricultural biocontrol, an industry that selected them precisely for their capacity to break up microbial communities.^{22,24} That is the correct machinery for dismantling an aggregate, even though none of it can touch the archaeon inside. There is indirect corroboration from the ruminant literature, where bacitracin — a cyclic peptide originally obtained from *B. licheniformis* and *B. subtilis* — reduced the relative abundance of *Methanobrevibacter* and of the *Christensenellaceae* group together in the same in vitro system.³⁴

This has a direct consequence for product selection, and it is the reason this section sits next to the strain list. *B. subtilis* is in nearly every spore blend on the market and *B. licheniformis* is common enough, but *B. velezensis* and *B. amyloliquefaciens* are rare in commercial products; their growing requirements are more demanding, and most manufacturers do not carry them. A blend containing only the common two is not the same intervention. If the mechanism described here is the operative one, all four need to be present, and the clinician will have to read labels rather than assume. Consider our Bacillimet product.

The ceiling: when spores become the problem

The human microbiome evolved alongside *Bacillus* spores, so the resident anaerobes carry some resistance, but resistance is not tolerance at any dose.

Unless you are looking at a completely dysbiotic gut and want a fresh start, start small with the *Bacillus* spores.† What we are looking for is differential suppression below the concentration that kills anything, which is exactly how a microbial community gets reshaped without a single organism being eliminated. This is the same principle at work in the food preservative literature, where compounds at ordinary dietary concentrations

reorganize the gut community without approaching a minimum inhibitory concentration for anything in it. Overdose on the spores and you can suppress the good with the bad. Recovery then runs to weeks rather than days, because strict anaerobes recolonize slowly and Christensenellaceae in particular is substantially heritable rather than reliably restored from the plate.^{32,33}

So there are two edges. Too little spore exposure leaves the small intestine without the transient population that helped keep it clean, and, in combination with everything else modern life has removed, makes overgrowth and methanogenesis more likely. Too much suppresses the colonic community the rest of the work depends on.

Reading the difference

The practical difficulty is that too much and too little look much alike from the outside. Both give sparse, small, infrequent stools.

The methane-dominant patient is constipated because methanogenesis slows transit. The over-suppressed patient is constipated because a large share of fecal solids is bacterial biomass and there is less of it,³⁷ and because the short-chain fatty acids that drive colonic propulsion have thinned along with the organisms that make them. The stool looks the same in both cases, and reading the second as the first leads directly to more spores, which drives the patient further into the state you were trying to correct.

Stool pH will not separate them either. One would expect the over-suppressed colon to run alkaline from lost acid production, and it does. But the methanogenic colon runs alkaline as well, for an entirely different reason: slow transit gives the mucosa extended contact time to absorb the short-chain fatty acids before the stool is passed, so the acids are stripped from the sample even when they were produced in normal quantity. Absent production and slow transit time arrive at the same reading.

If you have the ability, you can test for breath methane, but there is a simpler test. Does the stool float. If so... methane is present.

So, start slow. Once stool sinks, that is sufficient. Going further is unnecessary and can be counterproductive.

Bile and the spore protocol

Spores require bile to germinate.¹³ A patient with adequate bile flow takes spores and they activate in the duodenum. A patient with compromised bile flow — gallbladder removed, chronic biliary stasis — does not produce enough bile for reliable germination. The spores pass through poorly activated.†

The workaround is bile salts taken alongside the spores to provide the germination trigger. For long-term success, though, the gallbladder itself must be addressed directly.

When and how

Spore supplementation operates in the small intestine and is not gated by colonic stool pH.† A patient still working on stool pH can begin spore work simultaneously, since the two act in different compartments.

Take with food, when bile flow is most active. Because *Bacillus* spores are transient, they must be a daily part of the diet.

The bacteriophage Any discussion on the small intestine should include the polyvalent pyobacteriophage described in the colonic protocol chapter.²⁶ which covers the gram-positive small-bowel players and the gram-negative ones in a single product. It is the best-in-class agent against strep, staph, and the bile-resistant enterococcus.²⁷ Its caveats, strain specificity and gastric survival²⁸, are given there, along with its place in the stepped colon work and the PANDAS connection.

Clinical pearl: *Certain food-grade Bacillus species (subtilis, coagulans) can be added to an ultrasonic nebulizer for home application. Airborne exposure to these commensals may support a more allergen-tolerant immune system and inoculate the home with healthy microbes that compete with mold and toxic bacteria.† Avoid aerosolizing any Bacillus strain not established as inhalation-safe.*

References

1. Kiela PR, Ghishan FK. Physiology of intestinal absorption and secretion. *Best Pract Res Clin Gastroenterol.* 2016;30(2):145-159.
2. Bures J, Cyrany J, Kohoutova D, et al. Small intestinal bacterial overgrowth syndrome. *World J Gastroenterol.* 2010;16(24):2978-2990.
3. Martinsen TC, Bergh K, Waldum HL. Gastric juice: a barrier against infectious diseases. *Basic Clin Pharmacol Toxicol.* 2005;96(2):94-102.
4. Hofmann AF, Eckmann L. How bile acids confer gut mucosal protection against bacteria. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA.* 2006;103(12):4333-4334.
5. Layer P, Keller J. Pancreatic enzymes: secretion and luminal nutrient digestion in health and disease. *J Clin Gastroenterol.* 1999;28(1):3-10.
6. Inagaki T, Moschetta A, Lee YK, et al. Regulation of antibacterial defense in the small intestine by the nuclear bile acid receptor. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA.* 2006;103(10):3920-3925.
7. Deloose E, Janssen P, Depoortere I, Tack J. The migrating motor complex: control mechanisms and its role in health and disease. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol.* 2012;9(5):271-285.
8. Jung C, Hugot JP, Barreau F. Peyer's patches: the immune sensors of the intestine. *Int J Inflam.* 2010;2010:823710.
9. Roland BC, Ciarleglio MM, Clarke JO, et al. Small intestinal transit time is delayed in small intestinal bacterial overgrowth. *J Clin Gastroenterol.* 2015;49(7):571-576.
10. Rao SSC, Bhagatwala J. Small intestinal bacterial overgrowth: clinical features and therapeutic management. *Clin Transl Gastroenterol.* 2019;10(10):e00078.

11. Hong HA, Duc LH, Cutting SM. The use of bacterial spore formers as probiotics. *FEMS Microbiol Rev.* 2005;29(4):813-835.
12. Setlow P. Spores of *Bacillus subtilis*: their resistance to and killing by radiation, heat and chemicals. *J Appl Microbiol.* 2006;101(3):514-525.
13. Tam NKM, Uyen NQ, Hong HA, et al. The intestinal life cycle of *Bacillus subtilis* and close relatives. *J Bacteriol.* 2006;188(7):2692-2700.
14. Philippot L, Raaijmakers JM, Lemanceau P, van der Putten WH. Going back to the roots: the microbial ecology of the rhizosphere. *Nat Rev Microbiol.* 2013;11(11):789-799.
15. Geisseler D, Scow KM. Long-term effects of mineral fertilizers on soil microorganisms — a review. *Soil Biol Biochem.* 2014;75:54-63.
16. Stein T. *Bacillus subtilis* antibiotics: structures, syntheses and specific functions. *Mol Microbiol.* 2005;56(4):845-857.
17. Kim JH, Ahn HJ, Kim DH, et al. Histamine degradation by *Bacillus* species. *J Food Prot.* 2003;66(8):1485-1490.
18. Nithya C, Pandian SK. Antibiofilm activity of α -amylase from *Bacillus subtilis* S8-18 against biofilm forming human bacterial pathogens. *Appl Biochem Biotechnol.* 2012;167(6):1778-1794.
19. Konuray G, Erginkaya Z. Potential use of *Bacillus coagulans* in the food industry. *Foods.* 2018;7(6):92.
20. Nista EC, Candelli M, Cremonini F, et al. *Bacillus clausii* therapy to reduce side-effects of anti-*Helicobacter pylori* treatment. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther.* 2004;20(10):1181-1188.
21. Schallmeyer M, Singh A, Ward OP. Developments in the use of *Bacillus* species for industrial production. *Can J Microbiol.* 2004;50(1):1-17.
22. Rabbee MF, Ali MS, Choi J, et al. *Bacillus velezensis*: a valuable member of bioactive molecules within plant microbiomes. *Molecules.* 2019;24(6):1046.
23. Vary PS, Biedendieck R, Fuerch T, et al. *Bacillus megaterium* — from simple soil bacterium to industrial protein production host. *Appl Microbiol Biotechnol.* 2007;76(5):957-967.
24. Chen XH, Koumoutsis A, Scholz R, et al. Comparative analysis of the complete genome sequence of the plant growth-promoting bacterium *Bacillus amyloliquefaciens* FZB42. *Nat Biotechnol.* 2007;25(9):1007-1014.
25. Sumi CD, Yang BW, Yeo IC, Hahm YT. Antimicrobial peptides of the genus *Bacillus*: a new era for antibiotics. *Can J Microbiol.* 2015;61(2):93-103.
26. Microgen (NPO Microgen). Sextaphage (Polyvalent Pyobacteriophage): product information. Moscow: Microgen.
27. Buzikov RM, Kazantseva OA, Pilgrimova EG, Ryabova NA, Shadrin AM. Bacteriolytic potential of Enterococcus phage iF6 isolated from "Sextaphag" therapeutic phage cocktail and properties of its endolysins, Gp82 and Gp84. *Viruses.* 2023;15(3):767.
28. Pyobacteriophage (Sextaphage) gastric-resistant tablet composition. Russian Federation patent RU2410084C1; 2011.
29. Kandler O, König H. Cell wall polymers in Archaea (Archaeobacteria). *Cell Mol Life Sci.* 1998;54(4):305-308.

30. Altermann E, Schofield LR, Ronimus RS, Beattie AK, Reilly K. Inhibition of rumen methanogens by a novel archaeal lytic enzyme displayed on tailored bionanoparticles. *Front Microbiol.* 2018;9:2378.
31. Ruaud A, Esquivel-Elizondo S, de la Cuesta-Zuluaga J, Waters JL, Angenent LT, Youngblut ND, Ley RE. Syntrophy via interspecies H₂ transfer between *Christensenella* and *Methanobrevibacter* underlies their global cooccurrence in the human gut. *mBio.* 2020;11(1):e03235-19.
32. Waters JL, Ley RE. The human gut bacteria *Christensenellaceae* are widespread, heritable, and associated with health. *BMC Biol.* 2019;17:83.
33. Goodrich JK, Waters JL, Poole AC, et al. Human genetics shape the gut microbiome. *Cell.* 2014;159(4):789-799.
34. [AUTHORS TO BE COMPLETED]. Methanogenesis inhibition by bacitracin via modulating rumen microbial composition as demonstrated in in vitro assays. *J Dairy Sci.* 2025. doi:10.3168/jds.2025-26545
35. Duin EC, Wagner T, Shima S, et al. Mode of action uncovered for the specific reduction of methane emissions from ruminants by the small molecule 3-nitrooxypropanol. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA.* 2016;113(22):6172-6177.
36. Zhou X, Meile L, Kreuzer M, Zeitz JO. The effect of saturated fatty acids on methanogenesis and cell viability of *Methanobrevibacter ruminantium*. *Archaea.* 2013;2013:106916.
37. Stephen AM, Cummings JH. The microbial contribution to human faecal mass. *J Med Microbiol.* 1980;13(1):45-56.
38. Huang JM, La Ragione RM, Nunez A, Cutting SM. Immunostimulatory activity of *Bacillus* spores. *FEMS Immunol Med Microbiol.* 2008;53(2):195-203.

Chapter 23, The Ileo-cecal valve Dilemma

The cecum is built to be the lowest-pressure chamber in the gastrointestinal tract. It is the most compliant and most capacious segment of the colon, and that slackness is not incidental, it is the receiving condition the terminal ileum depends on. Ileal emptying is not a passive overflow but an active, pulsed ejection: the terminal ileum contracts, generates a pressure that briefly exceeds cecal pressure, drives a bolus through the valve in a jet, and the valve closes behind it.¹ The whole arrangement assumes the chamber on the far side has low pressure. Empty into a slack sump and little contractile force is required; empty into a pressurized one and the mechanics begin to fail. This chapter concerns what happens when proximal fermentation pressurizes the sump.

The junction between ileum and cecum is governed by two reciprocal reflexes.

Ileal distension triggers reflex relaxation of the junction and cecum, the ileocecal inhibitory reflex, opening the gate to let accumulated chyme pass.

Cecal distension does the opposite: it triggers reflex contraction of the junction and the terminal ileum, the cecoileal excitatory reflex, which raises junctional pressure above both cecum and ileum, holds the gate shut, prevents reflux of cecal contents into the ileum, and lets chyme accumulate in the terminal ileum until the next ejection.^{1,2}

Now pressurize the cecum chronically. Excessive proximal fermentation as a result of our 'candified' diets generate gas in the cecum and ascending colon, and where the community is methanogen-loaded, the methane itself slows intestinal transit and augments segmental contractile activity, prolonging the residence of fermentable material and sustaining the gas load rather than clearing it.^{3,4} The chamber engineered to stay slack is now becomes distended and pressurized.

The ileum cannot wait indefinitely; it must eventually eject. When it does, it now ejects against an elevated cecal back-pressure and must generate a higher contraction to overcome it. Two failures open here. If ileal contractile force is limited, as in the

neuropathic patient, whose reflex and musculature are already compromised, ejection is incomplete and the small bowel is not fully cleared. And at the end of each ejection, as ileal pressure relaxes toward baseline while the valve is still open or slow to close, the gradient can transiently invert: cecal pressure now exceeds the falling ileal pressure, and in that window cecal contents move retrograde into the ileum.† This is not the steady overflow of a filling pipe. It is a discrete, end-of-ejection reversal, once per emptying event, and its magnitude is set entirely by how fast and how tightly the valve closes.

Additionally, the valve closes by even apposition of its lips, and that apposition depends on the surrounding cecal wall holding the junction's geometry in register, the two lips coaxial, symmetric, meeting squarely. The cecum, though, does not distend as a symmetric sphere: the ileum enters it medially and posteriorly,⁹ the wall haustrates unevenly, and the taeniae anchor it non-uniformly, so gas distension loads the junction asymmetrically by default rather than compressing the lips together with clean concentric hoop stress. That asymmetric load imposes torsional and shear forces on the tissue the valve is anchored in, and those forces can rack the valve frame out of coaxial alignment, tenting one lip relative to the other, skewing the closure plane.† The result is a geometric incompetence independent of muscle tone or reflex: the sphincter contracts fully, but it is apposing two edges that no longer meet, and the reflex offers no rescue, because tightening a warped ring against a skewed seat does not restore apposition.† Acutely this is reversible, the frame racked while the gas is present and resealing when it clears; but under the chronic distension this chapter posits, sustained torsional loading is a plausible route to fixed deformation of the lips and junction, a contributor to the very incompetence the rest of the argument otherwise takes as given.†

The hazard is not gas but a *standing* gas load, and gas becomes standing only when the gut cannot clear it. Hydrogen does not accumulate: it has a biological sink in the hydrogenotrophs that consume it, it diffuses into blood and is exhaled, and it vents, three fast exits that keep its partial pressure low. Methane has no biological consumer, so it loses the fastest of those drains; but its real cost is not physical persistence, since it too is absorbed and exhaled. It is that methane suppresses motility, slowing the clearance of the bolus, the substrate, and the whole gas load together.† A methanogen-loaded gut therefore converts a transient hydrogen pulse into a sustained, pressurizing load, and that conversion, not the fermentation itself, is what pressurizes the cecum.†

For this reason, even though allicin garlic extracts are typically avoided due to their broad spectrum anti-microbial effects, a short course may be indicated with stool that does not sink (rich in methane) even after regular protocols have been tried.

Clinical pearl: *Prior abdominal surgery, especially appendectomy or anything near the cecum, can seed adhesions that tether and distort ileocecal geometry. Consider topical castor oil and oral liposomal proteolytic.*

References

1. Shafik A, et al. Physiological assessment of the function of the ileocecal junction with evidence of ileocecal junction reflexes. *Med Sci Monit.* 2002;8(9):CR629–CR635.
2. Miller LS, Vegesna AK, Sampath AM, Prabhu S, Kotapati SK, Makipour K. Ileocecal valve dysfunction in small intestinal bacterial overgrowth: a pilot study. *World J Gastroenterol.* 2012;18(46):6801–6808.
3. Pimentel M, Lin HC, Enayati P, et al. Methane, a gas produced by enteric bacteria, slows intestinal transit and augments small intestinal contractile activity. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol.* 2006;290(6):G1089–G1095.
4. Kunkel D, Basseri RJ, Makhani MD, et al. Methane on breath testing is associated with constipation: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Dig Dis Sci.* 2011;56(6):1612–1618.
5. Spiller RC, Trotman IF, Higgins BE, et al. The ileal brake, inhibition of jejunal motility after ileal fat perfusion in man. *Gut.* 1984;25(4):365–374.
6. Vantrappen G, Janssens J, Hellemans J, Ghooos Y. The interdigestive motor complex of normal subjects and patients with bacterial overgrowth of the small intestine. *J Clin Invest.* 1977;59(6):1158–1166.
7. Roland BC, Ciarleglio MM, Clarke JO, et al. Low ileocecal valve pressure is significantly associated with small intestinal bacterial overgrowth (SIBO). *Dig Dis Sci.* 2014;59(6):1269–1277.
8. Gazet JC, Jarrett RJ. The ileocaeco-colic sphincter: studies in vitro in man, monkey, cat and dog. *Br J Surg.* 1964;51(5):368–370.
9. Manoj C, Yogapriya V, Paul P. Assessment of anatomical morphology of the ileocecal junction and ileocecal valve by dissection and endoscopy. *Cureus.* 2024;16(6):e61974.

Chapter 24, The Sinuses, Where mold, the brain, immune system, lungs, and circulation converge

The paranasal cavities, frontal, maxillary, ethmoid, sphenoid, together hold a volume the size of a couple of golf balls, but this is misleading. When the microvilli are added in, the surface area is ~100sf. There is also their location to consider. The brain sits directly above them. The immune system runs through the lymphoid tissue in and around the sinus walls. The lungs receive the air the sinus conditions. The circulation receives the nitric oxide the sinus produces continuously.

The brain

To understand why they can affect the brain, we need to understand a bit of anatomy. The cribriform plate is a thin, perforated shelf of the ethmoid bone separating the roof of the nasal cavity (sinuses) from the floor of the anterior cranial fossa (brain). The name comes from the Latin for "sieve": the bone is riddled with hundreds of tiny openings called the olfactory foramina. Through these pass the axons of the olfactory sensory neurons.

Traffic through these openings runs in both directions. Inbound, from nose to brain, postbiotic and neurotrophic signals, and toxins when the sinus is compromised, travel by two routes. The slower is intraneuronal transport within the olfactory neurons themselves. The faster, and more consequential for toxins and particulates, is the extracellular perineural route: the spaces surrounding the olfactory nerve bundles as they cross the plate. Both bypass the blood-brain barrier entirely. Outbound, from brain to nose, the glymphatic system carries metabolic waste out through the same foramina into the lymphatic vessels of the nasal submucosa.

The brain's glymphatic system, lymphatic-like clearance run by glial cells, is most active during sleep, when cerebrospinal fluid flows through perivascular spaces, picks up metabolic waste, and exits the brain. Roughly half of that outflow leaves by lymphatic routes rather than the venous system, and the dominant lymphatic route by a wide margin is the cribriform plate. Until recently the crossing itself was unaccounted for, since the arachnoid membrane was understood as a barrier and no one had shown how

the fluid got through it. The answer, described in 2026, is more structured than the diffuse seepage the older model assumed: in a discrete region of arachnoid surrounding the olfactory bulbs there are openings two to twelve micrometers across, and cerebrospinal fluid passes through these into meningeal lymphatic vessels lying between the bulbs and the plate. Those vessels then descend through the foramina of the cribriform plate alongside the olfactory nerve bundles, emerge into the nasal submucosa, join the nasal lymphatics, and drain to the nasopharyngeal plexus and the deep cervical lymph nodes.

It travels inside the tissue, not across its surface; this is a lymphatic exit, not a drip into the airway. The remaining lymphatic outflow follows other cranial nerve sheaths and the dural lymphatics along the sides of the brain. The remaining lymphatic outflow follows other cranial nerve sheaths and the dural lymphatics along the sides of the brain. The arachnoid granulations at the top of the brain, long taught in older anatomy texts as the primary drainage site, carry a substantial share of bulk fluid but behave as a pressure-dependent overflow: their contribution rises as intracranial pressure rises and falls when it does not. For solutes, antigens, and immune cells, the waste that matters clinically, the cribriform plate is the brain's main sewer line.

Two failure modes follow. The first is obstructive. Chronic inflammation at the ethmoid and olfactory cleft compresses the perineural channels crossing the plate, and the outflow they carry slows. Chronic rhinosinusitis also fragments sleep, and glymphatic influx is overwhelmingly a sleep phenomenon, so the same condition throttles the system at both ends. Clearance falls, solutes that should have left accumulate, and the result appears as brain fog, dulled cognition, low-grade headache, and, over years, a plausible contribution to the cognitive decline of aging.†

The second is directional. The cribriform plate is two-way, and whatever can leave through it can enter. A sinus containing mycotoxins, bacterial toxins, or volatile organic compounds delivers those compounds through the plate into the olfactory bulb. From there the bulb projects by the lateral olfactory tract to the piriform cortex, the amygdala, and the entorhinal cortex, which is the gateway to the hippocampus. Olfaction is the only sensory system that reaches cortex and limbic structures without relaying through the thalamus, and hypothalamic and endocrine effects follow from the amygdalar and hypothalamic connections downstream. A toxic sinus therefore delivers its load preferentially into the circuitry governing fear, memory, mood, and hormonal regulation,† without conscious oversight. This is the structural reason sinus dysfunction so often copresents as cognitive difficulty or mood disorder.†

A practical note: raising the head of the bed four to eight inches with risers a foam wedge under the mattress or risers under the bed supports at the head of the bed supports both sinus and glymphatic drainage.

One consequence deserves naming here and is developed in the chapter that follows. The proteins that accumulate in the aging brain, amyloid-beta among them, appear to function in part as binders, capturing what the clearance route failed to remove. Read

that way they are a response rather than a primary disease, which is consistent with the disappointing outcomes of the major drug trials aimed at removing them and leaving the upstream input untouched. The next chapter takes up this challenge in more detail.

The immune system

The sinus mucosa hosts a small consortium of organisms that occupy niches otherwise available to pathogens, calibrate local immune response, and produce neuroactive metabolites that reach the brain via the cribriform plate.

Three organisms do most of this work. The following is not a complete list of the postbiotics they make, but is included to show the complexity of their output.

Corynebacterium pseudodiphtheriticum, feeds on host lipids and supplies the rest of the consortium with raw material: amino-acid precursors (glutamate and tryptophan among them), polyamines, and vitamins that the more fastidious members cannot manufacture for themselves.

Dolosigranulum, Produces GABA, which crosses the cribriform plate and dampens amygdala activation. A patient with a healthy Dolosigranulum population is getting continuous low-dose GABA delivery to the fear-response center.

Commensal Staphylococcus epidermidis, carries the enzyme SadA, converting precursors from Corynebacterium into phenylethylamine, dopamine, serotonin, and tryptamine. These also cross the cribriform plate.

Together they produce a continuous stream of neuroactive compounds that calm the amygdala and support mood and cognition.

These outputs raise a question the older probiotic literature tends to skip: what do these organisms themselves eat, in a cavity that never sees food? Each runs on a different host-supplied fuel, and the division of labor is the point.

Corynebacterium pseudodiphtheriticum is a lipid feeder, it lives on the fats in sinus secretions and in the membranes of sloughed epithelial cells, and the act of feeding is itself a defense, because the free fatty acids it liberates from those lipids are antibacterial, suppressing Streptococcus pneumoniae and Staphylococcus aureus as a byproduct of its own metabolism.

Commensal Staphylococcus epidermidis is a protein feeder, it secretes proteases that break host proteins into peptides and amino acids, and here too the feeding and the defense are the same machinery: the enzyme that liberates its food is the enzyme that dismantles S. aureus biofilm and strips the adhesins the pathogen needs to hold on.

Dolosigranulum pigrum is the sugar feeder of the three, fermenting the glycan chains on mucin and the trace glucose dissolved in the airway surface liquid.

But *Dolosigranulum* is also the fragile one, genetically unable to manufacture several of its own amino acids, its polyamines, and a set of B-vitamins. It carries the transporters to import these but not the genes to build them, which means it cannot live alone. It survives only by scavenging those growth factors from the host mucosa and, critically, from its neighbors. *Corynebacterium* is the neighbor that provisions it: in culture, medium conditioned by *Corynebacterium* raises *Dolosigranulum* yields by one to two orders of magnitude. And the partnership produces something neither organism manages by itself, medium conditioned by the two together suppresses *S. pneumoniae*, where either alone does not. This is why the consortium behaves less like three interchangeable probiotics and more like a single organism with three organs: the members feed one another, and their defense is emergent. It is also why a single-strain product underperforms the community, and why the whole arrangement is only as stable as the terrain that feeds it. Consider our Floramet product.

The terrain: bicarbonate and the mucin gate

The consortium can only feed if the terrain both presents the food and holds a livable chemistry, and that terrain is governed upstream by a single ion: bicarbonate.

Mucin is packed inside secretory granules in an extremely condensed state, its negative charges shielded by calcium and protons. When the cell releases it, the polymer has to expand several hundred-fold and hydrate into a proper gel. That expansion, the "fluffing", requires bicarbonate to sequester the calcium and neutralize the protons. Without bicarbonate the mucin stays compact, sticky, tethered, and dehydrated; this is precisely the cystic-fibrosis phenotype, where a failing CFTR channel cannot secrete bicarbonate and the mucin never unfolds even though the mucin protein itself is normal.

Bicarbonate does three things at once. It fluffs the mucin, it raises the surface pH toward neutral, and it enables the hydration and ciliary clearance that keep the layer moving. Those three unlock feeding in three corresponding ways. Fluffed mucin finally splays its glycan chains open where bacterial enzymes can reach them, in condensed, un-fluffed mucin the sugars are buried and the pantry is locked. Neutral pH is the range in which the host's own antimicrobial peptides work, and it is also where the lactic acid the fermenters excrete gets buffered instead of accumulating and poisoning the organisms that made it. And restored clearance flushes pathogens downstream and denies them the stagnant, dehydrated mucus that biofilm-formers exploit.

The rate limiter is specifically the sugar stream. *Corynebacterium*'s lipids and *S. epidermidis*'s proteins arrive from ordinary tissue turnover, sloughed cells, sebum, secretions, a supply that flows more or less regardless of bicarbonate. The glycan food is the one gated by fluffing. So a bicarbonate deficit starves the sugar feeder first, and the sugar feeder is *Dolosigranulum*, the fragile auxotroph. It is therefore the first casualty of a bicarbonate shortfall on every axis at once: its food is the gated food, its self-made acid goes unbuffered, and it has the least tolerance of the three for a degrading niche. *Corynebacterium*, feeding on lipid and comparatively indifferent to pH,

and *S. epidermidis*, acid-tolerant and carrying its own urease to buffer itself, both ride out conditions that kill *Dolosigranulum* outright.

This is the clinical hinge, because *Dolosigranulum* is the source of the continuous GABA delivery described above. Lose bicarbonate, and you lose *Dolosigranulum* first; lose *Dolosigranulum*, and the amygdala loses its steady low-dose GABA brake. A bicarbonate-poor sinus is, among its other liabilities, an anxious sinus. The keystone is also the canary: its loss both unravels the cooperative defense, the emergent suppression of pneumococcus goes with it, and removes an inhibitory signal aimed straight at the fear center.

The practical consequence is an order of operations: terrain before organisms, soil before seed. Repopulating a sinus that cannot fluff its mucin and cannot buffer its surface is planting into ground that will not hold, the food stays locked, the pH disarms both host defenses and the newcomers, and anything the seeded organisms ferment acidifies a field that has no way to neutralize it. This is the physiological reason the restoration protocol below runs the bicarbonate-bearing biofilm spray first and only seeds the probiotics afterward.

One honest caveat: the mucin-unfolding and surface-pH data come largely from cystic-fibrosis research, which is the extreme end of bicarbonate loss. Extending it to subclinical bicarbonate insufficiency in an otherwise-healthy sinus is sound physiology but an extrapolation, and is best held as a working model rather than settled fact. The direction of the effect, however, is well supported.

Two regulatory peptides are characteristically depleted in patients with chronic sinus and mold illness.

Melanocyte-stimulating hormone (MSH), produced by the pituitary, with roles far beyond the name. MSH regulates inflammation, mucosal immunity, sleep cycle, leptin signaling, and pain modulation, and alpha-MSH has direct antimicrobial activity at mucosal surfaces. Low MSH is associated with chronic mucosal inflammation, disrupted sleep, leptin resistance, and increased pain sensitivity. Mold-toxin exposure is associated with MSH depletion, proposed to act by disrupting hypothalamic signaling. The general link between chronic inflammation and neuroendocrine output is uncontroversial, and alpha-MSH's antimicrobial activity is well established; the fuller model that makes MSH the central hub of the entire cascade is developed most completely in the Shoemaker biotoxin literature and is best treated as a working model rather than settled fact. The reader who wants the detailed pathway can follow the work of Shoemaker on MSH.

Vasoactive intestinal peptide (VIP), produced throughout the body, with roles in vascular tone, immune regulation, circadian rhythm, and pulmonary function. Depleted VIP produces shortness of breath on exertion that does not match cardiovascular workup, exercise intolerance, dysregulated immune response. Also depleted by mold exposure.

Sinus restoration removes the suppression of MSH and VIP at its source. If needed to accelerate recovery, nasal delivery of these peptides may be helpful.

The lungs and circulation

The sinuses produce NO continuously, in concentrations far higher than the rest of the airway. NO is released into air passing through the sinus during nasal breathing and carried into the lungs, where it dilates pulmonary blood vessels, improves ventilation-perfusion matching, relaxes bronchial smooth muscle, and exerts antimicrobial activity. NO reaching the bloodstream contributes to systemic vasodilation.

This is why nasal breathing matters. Mouth breathing bypasses the sinus entirely. No NO delivery.

What displaces the consortium

Two exposures do the displacing. Antibiotics use and mold exposure. Where the two overlap at sufficient severity, the resident biofilm-forming staph lose the restraint that normally checks them and entrench. Because each precondition is so widespread, the practitioner cannot use the presence of either one to predict who is affected; it is the overlap, not the rarity of the inputs, that gates the disease.

Antibiotics do two things to the sinus, The sinus has no microbial reservoir analogous to the appendix. When the healthy sinus microbiome is displaced, its return is slow and rarely complete. Second, and separately, a lifetime of antibiotic exposure anywhere in the body selects for resistant staphylococci in the body's general flora, the selection happens wherever the drug landed, not in the sinus specifically, and those resistant organisms then populate the nose as ordinary carriage. This is why the staph that later entrench are so often already resistant before any sinus treatment begins: the resistance was imported on commensal flora shaped by unrelated antibiotic courses, not generated on the spot.

Water-damaged building exposure carries both mold and toxic bacteria together. Aspergillus, Stachybotrys, Penicillium produce mycotoxins. Actinomyces, certain pathogenic Bacillus species, and Mycobacteria produce endotoxins and exotoxins. These are ancient enemies. Mold and bacteria in the sinus enter active chemical combat, both sides escalating output, the patient caught in the crossfire of mycotoxins, exotoxins, and endotoxins.

Bacteria under this attack form biofilms, defensive matrices that resist antibiotics, ordinary antimicrobials, and persist years after the patient has left the moldy environment. MARCoNS, multiple-antibiotic-resistant coagulase-negative staphylococcus, has been documented in sinuses of chronic mold patients. It is worth being precise about the name: MARCoNS is by definition coagulase-negative, so the coagulase-positive Staphylococcus aureus is not itself a MARCoNS, though it forms

biofilm by the same baseline staph biology and frequently colonizes alongside. The two are co-equal biofilm builders in the sinus; only one carries the acronym.

There is also a direct physical link between the two compartments. We continuously swallow sinus and nasal mucus, on the order of a liter or more a day, and that mucus carries whatever the sinus contains, consortium postbiotics when the sinus is healthy, or pathogenic organisms, mycotoxins, and inflammatory debris when it is not. A dysbiotic sinus therefore seeds the gut continuously from above, delivering a steady inoculum of the wrong organisms and their products to the stomach and small intestine. On its way down, that drainage runs over the adenoid, the pharynx, and the tonsils, so a colonized sinus reseeds the throat as continuously as it reseeds the gut. It is worth being precise about the two routes, because they are not equivalent. The throat sits in the same mucosal-immune compartment as the sinus and receives the same drainage directly, so handling the sinus protects the throat both physically and immunologically, which is why the tonsil work later in this section cannot hold unless the sinus is also handled. The gut connection is chiefly the physical one: the swallowed inoculum. A gut that resists restoration despite correct colon and small-intestine work should prompt a look upward, because the sinus, oral cavity and/or tonsils may be re-seeding the gut faster than the gut protocol can correct it.

The gut and the sinus carry different immune assignments. The gut must tolerate food, tolerate its commensal populations, and avoid constant inflammation across roughly thirty feet of mucosal surface exposed to everything the patient eats. It evolved to control immune balance globally. The sinus has a smaller territory and a different job, detect airborne threats quickly and respond to inhaled particles. It evolved to trigger responses, not to define a tolerogenic baseline. This is why a chronically inflamed sinus has outsized systemic consequences. The gut's tolerance signaling, broad and deeply established, can be overridden by sustained threat signaling from the sinus. A patient with chronic sinus infection is broadcasting threat signals from a tissue built to broadcast them, and those signals override the tolerance signals coming from a tissue built to broadcast tolerance. The whole-body immune set point shifts toward inflammation regardless of what the gut is doing.

The arrival of these organisms reverses the consortium's signaling through three mechanisms.

Tryptophan theft. Sinus inflammation activates IDO, shunting tryptophan from serotonin into the kynurenine pathway, terminating in quinolinic acid, an excitotoxin that crosses the cribriform plate and activates the amygdala.

GABA blockade. Mycotoxins act as GABA receptor antagonists, removing the brake on amygdala activation at the receptor level. In the bicarbonate-depleted sinus this insult compounds a loss already underway: the same conditions that antagonize the GABA receptor have often already starved out *Dolosigranulum*, the organism supplying the GABA in the first place. The brake is removed at the receptor while the supply is cut at the source.

Hormonal predation. Pathogenic *S. aureus* strains carry Hsd12, which degrades testosterone and estradiol locally in nasal mucosa. This local hormone degradation is not detected by conventional serum testing, the destruction happens at the tissue level while circulating levels appear adequate. Practitioners running standard hormone panels miss it.

The patient is losing inhibitory signals and gaining excitatory and damaging ones while MSH and VIP are simultaneously suppressed.

The signals reach the rest of the body through two anatomically distinct channels, and each produces its own symptom signature. The clinical pattern recognition matters because the two signatures look like two different diseases until the practitioner sees them as outputs of the same upstream cause.

The first channel is olfactory to amygdala, the fear and anxiety channel. And it bears repeating, that the signal is monosynaptic, unfiltered, and affect-laden. It bypasses the thalamus and the cortex entirely, which means it is not available to conscious reasoning. The patient cannot think their way out of it because the signal never went through the part of the brain that thinks. This is the pathway that generates the feeling of threat. Patients experience it as anxiety, dread, hypervigilance, a sense that something is wrong without being able to name it, intrusive emotional reactivity, and the limbic component of brain fog. It is also why olfactory triggers, a particular smell, a perfume, a mold note in a building, can produce immediate emotional and panic responses in sensitized patients. The wiring is built for speed, not deliberation.

The second channel is trigeminal to brainstem to sympathetic axis, the stress and exhaustion channel. Trigeminal afferents from the sinus mucosa feed the spinal trigeminal nucleus, which drives the rostral ventrolateral medulla and the hypothalamus, which then drive sympathetic outflow and HPA axis activation. The output is tachycardia, vasoconstriction, cortisol elevation, suppressed digestion, suppressed immune regulation, and over time the classic picture of HPA exhaustion: morning fatigue, afternoon crashes, poor stress tolerance, salt cravings, blood sugar lability, and the eventual flattening of the cortisol curve that gets labeled adrenal fatigue. This channel does not feel like fear. It feels like being tired and wired, then just tired.

The two channels together produce a recognizable clinical pattern. The amygdalar channel makes the patient feel afraid and reactive. The trigeminal-sympathetic channel makes the patient be depleted. A patient describing both, anxiety that resists psychiatric treatment alongside fatigue that resists adrenal support, is a patient whose sinuses deserve evaluation regardless of whether they report sinus symptoms.

Chronic rhinosinusitis is associated with a 4.39-fold higher risk of anxiety and a 2.04-fold higher risk of depression. Any patient with treatment-resistant psychiatric symptoms deserves a sinus workup.

Detection

The chronic sinus infection is easy to miss, and the practitioner who waits for the obvious signs will overlook a large share of the patients carrying one. It does not always announce itself the way an acute sinusitis does. There may be no discharge, no facial pain, no post-nasal drip, none of the signs a patient or practitioner would call a sinus infection. Frequently the only outward sign is restricted airflow from swollen turbinates, the boggy anterior heads of the inferior turbinates described in the sleep apnea chapter, narrowing the nasal valve where the airway is already at its tightest. A patient who breathes through one blocked nostril, or who mouth-breathes at night without knowing why, may be carrying a low-grade sinus colonization that a symptom review would never surface. Swollen turbinates have other causes, allergy, vasomotor rhinitis, but in the patient carrying the systemic picture this chapter has drawn, restricted nasal airflow is reason enough to work the sinus.

Where the practitioner cannot directly visualize the turbinates with a nasal endoscope, or even an otoscope with a nasal speculum tip for the anterior heads, restricted airflow can be estimated by proxy using the sniff-collapse threshold. The patient sniffs inward through both nostrils in front of a mirror, starting gently and increasing force in steps, watching the soft sidewall just above each nostril. The point at which that wall visibly buckles inward is the external nasal valve giving way. It has no cartilage of its own and stays open only by the stiffness of the surrounding tissue and the pull of the dilator naris. What sets the threshold is how much negative pressure develops inside the airway at a given flow, and that depends on the resistance upstream of the valve. When the turbinate heads are congested, resistance rises, the pressure drop steepens, and the wall caves at a lower inspiratory effort than it does when the nose is clear. Two constraints govern its use. The nasal cycle alternates turbinate congestion side to side every few hours, so the reading must be bilateral and taken at a fixed time of day, first thing in the morning being the most reproducible. And it measures congestion, not infection. It will also move with allergen exposure, cold air, alcohol, sleep position, and antihistamines. All that being said, it can be a useful tool in this work.

Where the practitioner wants confirmation of a bacterial infection and its organisms, a sinus culture can be obtained (microbiologydx.com). This matters most when deciding whether to escalate to bacteriophage therapy, discussed below, because it identifies whether staph or strep is actually present. Fortunately, some bacteriophage products contain both elements, so even without a culture, you can certainly try bacteriophage in a nasal spray.

For the patient, the easiest tests are verbal recall for both sexes, loss of morning erections for men (more on this in Chapter 35) and anxiety and/or depression for women.

Restoration

The goal is a sinus that holds its own ecology without ongoing intervention. The sinus makes this harder to reach than almost any other system. Its labyrinthine architecture gives pathological organisms places to hide that no spray reaches on the first pass, so stubborn pockets take time to clear and some patients require active support for months. For some, ongoing sinus protocols may be needed for health, for others it may be preferred for optimization.

Before turning to the sprays, it is worth noting that an old ENT practice already points in the right direction. Some ENTs have long prescribed sinus rinses with a drop of baby shampoo, and the practice turns out to be quietly rational for two reasons. The surfactant destabilizes biofilm, disrupting the extracellular matrix that a plain saline rinse simply flows past. And the detergent action solubilizes fat-soluble inflammatory agents that saline cannot lift at all, lipophilic mycotoxin residues, the lipid A moiety of bacterial endotoxin, lipoteichoic acids, and the membrane lipids shed by the staph themselves. Saline moves water-soluble debris and leaves the lipid fraction sitting in place. The sprays below are the engineered version of what the baby shampoo reaches for, using ingredients chosen for the biofilm rather than a general detergent.

Two sinus sprays run in parallel from the start. They do different and synergistic work.

The first addresses the biofilm matrix that protects the toxic infections and binds the fat-soluble toxins, mycotoxins, bacterial lipid toxins, retained inflammatory lipids, that ordinary water-based washes cannot solubilize. HPBCD, NAC, magnesium di-potassium EDTA, and bicarbonates may address these issues, and together they attack the biofilm along three separate axes at once: the mineral scaffold, the organic matrix, and the lipid cargo. Magnesium di-potassium EDTA is a calcium-free EDTA salt; it may support localized chelation at the tissue interface, stripping the divalent cations that cross-link and stabilize the matrix so the structure loses integrity from within. NAC may support the dissolution of the disulfide bonds and extracellular DNA that give the matrix its cohesion, thinning it and exposing what was hiding inside. HPBCD is a molecular cage with a hydrophobic interior, it encapsulates fat-soluble compounds and may support their removal from sinus tissue, carrying away the membrane lipids and fat-soluble toxins that the other two agents cannot touch (we will speak more on HPBCD cyclodextrins in an upcoming chapter). Bicarbonate does the terrain work described earlier in this chapter: it fluffs the mucin layer, raises the surface pH toward neutral, and supports ciliary clearance, the step without which the postbiotics in the second spray have neither an exposed food supply nor a buffered surface to establish on. The mineral scaffold, the organic matrix, and the lipid cargo are three different targets, and no single agent reaches all three. Consider our Ventrimet product.

The second sinus spray provides the postbiotics a healthy sinus microbiome would normally produce, both to suppress intruders and to regulate the neuro-immune axis and mood. Consider our Sentrimet product.

After two weeks of using the first two sprays, or once the sinuses are clear, you can repopulate *Corynebacterium pseudodiphtheriticum*, *Dolosigranulum pigrum* and Commensal *Staphylococcus epidermidis*.

Seeding, however, is not the same as feeding, and this is where repopulation most often fails. The reintroduced organisms establish only if the terrain supplies what they eat, host lipids and proteins, which healthy tissue turnover provides on its own, and, for the fragile *Dolosigranulum*, both the mucin glycans that only a bicarbonate-fluffed mucus layer exposes and the growth factors that *Corynebacterium* must be alive and established to provision. This is also why the conventional instinct to reach for a "prebiotic", a fermentable sugar, is the wrong lever in the sinus. Two of the three feeders do not run on sugar at all, and free sugar in the nasal fluid feeds *S. aureus* as readily as anything protective, risking the opposite of the intended effect. The prebiotic work that actually matters here is bicarbonate, hydration, and mucosal integrity, the terrain, not a sugar.

Where the sinus infection is bacterial and antibiotic-resistant, antibiotic or bacteriophage spray belongs in the toolkit. The chronic bacterial colonizers of the sinus are most often staphylococcal, the MARCoNS and pathogenic *S. aureus* strains named earlier, with streptococci appearing as well. The polyvalent pyobacteriophage of the colonic protocol chapter. covers exactly this spectrum (available at kalinka-store.com).

Its value here is the same as everywhere else it appears in this book: it lyses its host on contact without regard to antibiotic resistance, which is exactly the problem a MARCoNS colony presents. Phage therapy is warranted in either of two situations: when minimal results are seen after two weeks of the first two sprays, or upon a positive sinus culture for staph or strep. The strain-specificity caveat given there is another reason the culture is worth obtaining. Delivered as a nasal spray, the phage reaches the compartment the oral route cannot.

A point most people get wrong about mold recovery, and it is the reason a patient can do everything right about the building and still not get well is that a mold-toxic house has to be addressed, remediated or left. But remediation, and even moving, is frequently not enough to recover a mold-exposed patient, because by the time they present they carry the problem in their own body along two separate lines, not one. There are the mycotoxins retained in tissue, which are removed through the chemical detoxification protocol taught elsewhere in this book. And there is a self-sustaining, resistant sinus biofilm infection that persists on its own terms regardless of the building. Fix the house and clear the toxins, and the biofilm is still there, still entrenched, still capable of driving the entire symptom picture this chapter has described. It has to be treated as its own target. The environment started the process; by the time the patient is in the office, the environment is no longer the only thing keeping it going.

A reasonable objection at this point is that the openings into the sinuses are only a millimeter or two across, that they drain into a narrow channel, and that mucus is flowing outward through that channel at all times, so a nasal spray has essentially no

chance of flooding a sinus. This is correct, and it is beside the point, because the sinus was never the reservoir.

Staphylococcus aureus lives in the nasal vestibule, the skin-lined entryway just inside the nostril, because that tissue carries two skin proteins the organism has dedicated surface hooks for, on an oily surface it tolerates better than its competitors do. The sinuses and the nose behind that entryway are lined with ciliated cells instead. They carry none of those proteins, and their cilia sweep the surface clean every ten to twenty minutes, so the bacterium lands there constantly and cannot hold on. The vestibule sits outside that sweeping action entirely, and fingers and facial skin reseed it many times a day.

That change in tissue is also a change in tenants. The skin-lined vestibule hosts skin organisms, the staphylococci and corynebacteria that colonize oily surfaces anywhere on the body. The ciliated lining behind it hosts an entirely different set, the respiratory organisms adapted to that surface: pneumococcus, *Haemophilus*, *Moraxella*, and *Neisseria*, along with the viruses that need it, influenza, RSV, and SARS-CoV-2, none of which have anything to attach to in the vestibule. The ridge where skin gives way to ciliated lining is an ecological border, not just an anatomical landmark, and staph sits on the near side of it.

So the part of the nose a spray actually reaches, the front third, is the part that matters. Beyond that, ingredients may still move inward by routes other than bulk flow. Volatile and oil-soluble constituents evaporate into the air inside the nose and can cross the sinus openings by diffusion and by the pressure changes of ordinary breathing and sniffing, and the nasal and sinus linings share the same blood supply, so absorbed compounds reach sinus tissue from the inside rather than from the surface.

There is also a mechanical argument. Swelling at the drainage channel is what closes a sinus opening, and a closed opening is what turns a self-cleaning sinus into a stagnant, low-oxygen, biofilm-friendly one. Reducing inflammation in the tissue a spray can reach keeps the drainage open and lets the cilia do the work they are built for.

Finally, clearing and reseeding the vestibule matters for the immune system in its own right. Staph superantigens made at that site do not stay there; they drive local IgE production, eosinophilic inflammation, and the Th2 shift associated with nasal polyps and with asthma. Displacing the organism in favor of the commensals that normally hold it in check, the corynebacteria, *Dolosigranulum*, and benign staphylococci, removes that antigenic drive and restores the antimicrobial peptide tone of the barrier.

The spray is not trying to get into the sinus. It is treating the doorway, the drainage, and the source.

Clinical pearl: *In some cases where blunt force trauma to the nose or face has caused issues, NeuroCranial Restructuring, or its predecessor, the bilateral nasal specific technique can yield life changing results.*

References

1. Lundberg JO, Farkas-Szallasi T, Weitzberg E, et al. High nitric oxide production in human paranasal sinuses. *Nat Med*. 1995;1(4):370-373.
2. Doty RL. The olfactory system and its disorders. *Semin Neurol*. 2009;29(1):74-81.
3. Iliff JJ, Wang M, Liao Y, et al. A paravascular pathway facilitates CSF flow through the brain parenchyma and the clearance of interstitial solutes, including amyloid beta. *Sci Transl Med*. 2012;4(147):147ra111.
4. Johnston M, Zakharov A, Papaiconomou C, Salmasi G, Armstrong D. Evidence of connections between cerebrospinal fluid and nasal lymphatic vessels in humans, non-human primates and other mammalian species. *Cerebrospinal Fluid Res*. 2004;1(1):2.
5. Lochhead JJ, Thorne RG. Intranasal delivery of biologics to the central nervous system. *Adv Drug Deliv Rev*. 2012;64(7):614-628.
6. Doty RL. The olfactory vector hypothesis of neurodegenerative disease: is it viable? *Ann Neurol*. 2008;63(1):7-15.
7. Soscia SJ, Kirby JE, Washicosky KJ, et al. The Alzheimer's disease-associated amyloid beta-protein is an antimicrobial peptide. *PLoS One*. 2010;5(3):e9505.
8. Kumar DKV, Choi SH, Washicosky KJ, et al. Amyloid-beta peptide protects against microbial infection in mouse and worm models of Alzheimer's disease. *Sci Transl Med*. 2016;8(340):340ra72.
9. Eimer WA, Vijaya Kumar DK, Navalpur Shanmugam NK, et al. Alzheimer's disease-associated beta-amyloid is rapidly seeded by Herpesviridae to protect against brain infection. *Neuron*. 2018;99(1):56-63.
10. van Dyck CH, Swanson CJ, Aisen P, et al. Lecanemab in early Alzheimer's disease. *N Engl J Med*. 2023;388(1):9-21.
11. Cochrane Review. Anti-amyloid antibodies for Alzheimer's disease: systematic review. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2026.
12. Laufer AS, Metlay JP, Gent JF, Fennie KP, Kong Y, Pettigrew MM. Microbial communities of the upper respiratory tract and otitis media in children. *mBio*. 2011;2(1):e00245-10.
13. Cho DY, Skinner D, Zhang S, et al. *Corynebacterium pseudodiphtheriticum* and its role in the nasal microbiome. *Allergy Rhinol*. 2020;11:2152656720961676.
14. Luqman A, Nega M, Nguyen MT, Ebner P, Gotz F. SadA-expressing staphylococci in the human gut show increased cell adherence and internalization. *Cell Rep*. 2018;22(2):535-545.
15. Getting SJ. Targeting melanocortin receptors as potential novel therapeutics. *Pharmacol Ther*. 2006;111(1):1-15.
16. Shoemaker RC, House DE. Sick building syndrome (SBS) and exposure to water-damaged buildings: time series study, clinical trial and mechanisms. *Neurotoxicol Teratol*. 2006;28(5):573-588.
17. Said SI. Vasoactive intestinal polypeptide (VIP): current status. *Peptides*. 1984;5(2):143-150.

18. Guo FH, De Raeve HR, Rice TW, Stuehr DJ, Thunnissen FBJM, Erzurum SC. Continuous nitric oxide synthesis by inducible nitric oxide synthase in normal human airway epithelium in vivo. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 1995;92(17):7809-7813.
19. Mendell MJ, Mirer AG, Cheung K, Tong M, Douwes J. Respiratory and allergic health effects of dampness, mold, and dampness-related agents: a review of the epidemiologic evidence. *Environ Health Perspect*. 2011;119(6):748-756.
20. Peleg AY, Hogan DA, Mylonakis E. Medically important bacterial-fungal interactions. *Nat Rev Microbiol*. 2010;8(5):340-349.
21. Costerton JW, Stewart PS, Greenberg EP. Bacterial biofilms: a common cause of persistent infections. *Science*. 1999;284(5418):1318-1322.
22. Brewer JH, Thrasher JD, Straus DC, Madison RA, Hooper D. Detection of mycotoxins in patients with chronic fatigue syndrome. *Toxins*. 2013;5(4):605-617.
23. Schwarcz R, Bruno JP, Muchowski PJ, Wu HQ. Kynurenines in the mammalian brain: when physiology meets pathology. *Nat Rev Neurosci*. 2012;13(7):465-477.
24. Purzycki CB, Bhatt H. Mycotoxins and glutamate balance: review of mycotoxin effects on brain. *J Food Prot*. 2006;69(3):705-714.
25. Xiang G, Wang Y, Ni K, et al. Nasal *Staphylococcus aureus* carriage promotes depressive behaviour in mice via sex hormone degradation. *Nat Microbiol*. 2025.
26. Khan NS, Shih LC, Mahomva CR, et al. Chronic rhinosinusitis and mental health. *JAMA Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg*. 2024;150(11):987-994.
27. Riise GC, Qvarfordt I, Larsson S, Eliasson V, Andersson BA. Inhibitory effect of N-acetylcysteine on adherence of *Streptococcus pneumoniae* and *Haemophilus influenzae* to human oropharyngeal epithelial cells in vitro. *Respiration*. 2000;67(5):552-558.
28. Brugger SD, Eslami SM, Pettigrew MM, et al. *Dolosigranulum pigrum* cooperation and competition in human nasal microbiota. *mSphere*. 2020;5(5):e00852-20.
29. Bomar L, Brugger SD, Yost BH, Davies SS, Lemon KP. *Corynebacterium accolens* releases antipneumococcal free fatty acids from human nostril and skin surface triacylglycerols. *mBio*. 2016;7(1):e01725-15.
30. Iwase T, Uehara Y, Shinji H, et al. *Staphylococcus epidermidis* Esp inhibits *Staphylococcus aureus* biofilm formation and nasal colonization. *Nature*. 2010;465(7296):346-349.
31. Gustafsson JK, Ermund A, Ambort D, et al. Bicarbonate and functional CFTR channel are required for proper mucin secretion and link cystic fibrosis with its mucus phenotype. *J Exp Med*. 2012;209(7):1263-1272.
32. Abou Alaiwa MH, Reznikov LR, Gansemer ND, et al. pH modulates the activity and synergism of the airway surface liquid antimicrobials beta-defensin-3 and LL-37. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 2014;111(52):18703-18708.
33. Brugger SD, Bomar L, Lemon KP. Commensal-pathogen interactions along the human nasal passages. *PLoS Pathog*. 2016;12(7):e1005633.

Chapter 25, Neurologic connections to the microbiome and metals

The brain has no lymphatic vessels inside it. Every other organ in the body threads a drainage network through its own tissue, but the brain does not, and it still produces metabolic waste at a rate no other organ approaches. It solves the problem by pushing that waste out of itself first and draining it after, through a small number of exits in the skull. The largest of those exits is a sieve of bone at the roof of the nose.

The previous chapter described that bone, the cribriform plate, as a two-way route, and named the two failure modes that follow: obstructive, when the exit closes, and directional, when what should be leaving is instead arriving. This chapter takes those two failure modes and follows each to its end. The claim it builds toward is that the two directions may correspond to two different diseases, and that both of them get worse for reasons a practitioner can act on.

The outbound route

Cerebrospinal fluid enters the brain along the spaces surrounding the arteries, crosses into the tissue through channels on the end-feet of astrocytes, mixes with the interstitial fluid and picks up its solutes, and exits along the spaces surrounding the veins. This is the glymphatic circuit, and it runs overwhelmingly during sleep.^{1,2} The fluid returns to the subarachnoid space, the cerebrospinal-fluid-filled compartment between the arachnoid mater and the surface of the brain, and travels forward to the anterior cranial fossa, where it sits directly above the cribriform plate.

Until 2026 the next step was a gap in the anatomy. Cerebrospinal fluid was known to reach the nasal lymphatics, but the arachnoid mater was understood as a barrier, and no one had shown how the fluid crossed it. The older model assumed diffuse seepage along the olfactory nerve sheaths.

The gap has now been filled, and the answer is more structured than the seepage picture.³ In a discrete region of arachnoid surrounding the olfactory bulbs there are openings, two to twelve micrometers across, which the authors named arachnoid fenestrations. Cerebrospinal fluid passes through them into meningeal lymphatic vessels lying in the space between the olfactory bulbs and the cribriform plate. Those vessels then descend through the foramina of the plate, alongside the olfactory nerve bundles, emerge into the nasal submucosa, join the nasal lymphatics, and drain to the deep cervical lymph nodes and from there into venous circulation. The same architecture was found in monkeys as well as mice.

Nothing in this displaces the cribriform plate as the principal exit. It adds a stage in front of it. What matters clinically is that the outbound route is not one gate but four in series: the arachnoid fenestrations, the meningeal lymphatics, the bony foramina, and the nasal lymphatics. In a series pathway the whole route runs at the speed of its worst segment, and every additional stage is another place to fail.

The share of the brain's waste that leaves this way is often given as a percentage, and the percentages should be treated with care. All of the classical figures came from radiolabeled albumin tracer studies in animals, and the species spread is wide, from above half in the rat to ten or fifteen percent in the cat.⁴ The fraction also varies with intracranial pressure. The one human imaging study to look for nasal mucosal enrichment after intrathecal contrast found strong signal in the cerebrospinal fluid spaces at the plate and no significant enrichment in the mucosa itself.⁵ The defensible statement is that this is the dominant lymphatic exit for cerebrospinal fluid solute in animal models, that the measured share varies widely by species and with pressure, and that human confirmation is not yet in hand. A practitioner who states a specific percentage is stating something the measurements do not support.

The inbound route, and one aperture with three occupants

Material entering the brain from the nose takes a different set of channels through the same bone.

It is deposited on the olfactory epithelium, a small patch high in the nasal cavity over the superior turbinate and adjacent septum, in a recess called the olfactory cleft. This is precisely where inhaled particulate settles.

From there, two channels. The slow one is intraneuronal: material taken up at the ending of an olfactory sensory neuron and carried up its axon, through the nerve bundles crossing the plate, to the olfactory bulb. Hours to days. The fast one is perineural: material traveling in the extracellular space around those bundles rather than inside them, in a channel continuous with the subarachnoid space.⁶ Minutes. For toxins and particulates the fast route is the one that matters.

From the bulb the signal goes out by the lateral olfactory tract to the piriform cortex, the amygdala, and the entorhinal cortex, and from entorhinal into the hippocampus. Every other sense relays through the thalamus first, which is where sensory input is gated,

routed, and made available to attention. Olfaction does not, which is why a smell reaches the fear and memory circuitry before there is any opportunity to evaluate it.

So a single foramen carries three occupants at once. A lymphatic vessel taking fluid down and out. A bundle of olfactory nerve fila carrying material up and in. And the perineural space around those fila, carrying more of it, faster. Different channels, one aperture, opposite directions. The plate is bidirectional because of what passes through it, not necessarily because any one channel reverses.

There is a detail here worth holding, because it sharpens what the sinus does. The perineural route empties into the subarachnoid space around the olfactory bulbs, which is the same compartment that holds the arachnoid fenestrations. A colonized sinus is not delivering its toxins to the brain in general. It is delivering them onto the specific patch of membrane responsible for clearing the brain.[†]

Inbound crosses one gate - the outbound crosses four

That difference alone predicts which direction degrades faster, since resistances in series add and each stage is an independent point of failure. But there is a second asymmetry, and it is the more useful one clinically.

Outbound matters as a rate. Clearance capacity is set against waste produced continuously, every day, and a shortfall accumulates immediately. Inbound matters as an integral. What matters is total dose delivered across decades, and a declining delivery rate still adds to a rising total. A clearance rate that falls by half is instantly a problem. A delivery rate that falls by half still delivers.

This resolves an objection the argument would otherwise face. If the plate narrows with age, why does inbound-driven disease rise with age rather than fall? Because the outbound side is bulk fluid flow through a lumen, where resistance scales with the fourth power of the radius and narrowing punishes it steeply, while the inbound side travels along nerve fila rather than through an open bore and does not obey that relationship. And because inbound is measured as an accumulated total rather than as a current rate. Both curves point the wrong way with age, for different reasons.

Inflammation completes the asymmetry. Inbound is not a resistance problem but a barrier problem, and inflammation degrades barriers. It thins the protective mucus, disrupts the tight junctions of the olfactory epithelium, and widens the perineural spaces. Inflammation makes it easier for material to get in, not harder. On the outbound side the same inflammation congests the nasal lymphatics and, as the next section argues, may contribute to the narrowing of the bone. One insult, one aperture, opening the way in while closing the way out.[†]

What is closing the exit

The bony openings narrow with age. The measurement most often cited comes from a study of forty cadaver skulls, which found the patent foramina area in the posterior part

of the plate declining by about six hundredths of a square millimeter per year across adulthood.⁷ Against a shrinking base that works out to roughly one percent of the remaining area annually at twenty-five, rising toward one and a half percent by seventy. That is a single small study measuring one half of the plate, and it measures bone rather than flow. Take it as a direction, not a rate to calculate from.

The soft-tissue stages decline too. In the aging animals, the arachnoid fenestrations became fewer and smaller, and the lymphatics of the olfactory bulb regressed.³ These are membrane and vessel, not bone. They cannot ossify. What happens to them is regression, which is a different process with different causes and, importantly, different reversibility.

The usual explanation for the bony narrowing is that appositional bone growth simply continues through adult life, as it does elsewhere in the skull, with no off switch and no selection pressure to install one at seventy. That may be part of it. But a process that closes the brain's principal drain deserves more scrutiny than passive drift, and there is reason to think something is driving it.

Chronic rhinosinusitis produces osteitis, inflammatory remodeling and new bone formation in the bone underlying inflamed sinus mucosa, and it is a recognized feature of recalcitrant disease.⁸ That is inflammation-driven bone thickening in the ethmoid, adjacent to the plate.

Bone forms in places it does not belong throughout the body, and the neural consequences are well described. Ossification of the posterior longitudinal ligament accounts for roughly a quarter of cervical myelopathy. Ossification of the ligamentum flavum narrows the thoracic canal. Both are driven in part by inflammatory cytokines, and both proceed through a defined sequence: cellular proliferation, then calcification, then vascular ingrowth, then mature bone.⁹ Calcification precedes ossification. And the listed initiating causes of ligamentum flavum ossification include hemochromatosis, which is to say that iron overload is a named cause of ectopic bone narrowing a neural passage in humans.

The author's position is that the cribriform narrowing belongs to this family rather than to ordinary skeletal aging: an inflammatory and metal-driven ectopic ossification that happens to occur at the one place in the body where it closes the brain's drain, with a slow appositional process underneath it.[†]

The reserve

Four stages, each with spare capacity, is a system that gives no warning. Loss at one stage is covered by capacity at the others, and the whole route runs at close to full flow while every individual stage is quietly degrading. Then reserve is spent, and the decline is abrupt.

This is the same nonlinearity taught in the coronary chapter. A stenosis is invisible to a stress test until roughly seventy percent occlusion and then is not, because resistance

scales with the fourth power of the radius. Nothing happens, and then everything happens. The clinical mistake is the same in both places: to read the absence of symptoms as the absence of narrowing.

The demonstration that the stages cover for one another is direct. In the aging animals, intranasal delivery of a lymphatic growth factor regrew the lymphatics and restored whole-route drainage to young levels while the bony narrowing persisted entirely unchanged.³ Adding capacity at one stage compensated for permanent loss at another. This is a hopeful finding. Lymphatic protocols, calcium chelation of the foramen and decreasing inflammation in the tissue can all support brain detoxification pathways.

Parkinson's, the way in

If the inbound direction matters clinically, the place to look is where inbound material first arrives.

Lewy pathology in Parkinson's disease first appears at two sites, and the staging names both together: the olfactory bulb and anterior olfactory nucleus, and the dorsal motor nucleus of the vagus in the medulla.¹⁰ Two doorways. Loss of smell precedes motor onset by four to ten years and is present in the large majority of cases. Constipation precedes it by longer still.

The nasal doorway is the one this chapter has been describing. The vagal doorway is reached from the enteric nervous system, the network of nerves in the gut wall, ascending along vagal fibers to the brainstem. The experimental support is unusually clean for a gut-brain claim: injecting misfolded alpha-synuclein into the gut wall of a mouse produced ascending brain pathology, and cutting the vagus prevented it.¹¹ The human epidemiology fits, with reduced Parkinson's incidence after truncal vagotomy but not after the nerve-sparing version.¹² Borghammer's refinement splits patients into a brain-first subtype with olfactory onset and a body-first subtype with gut onset.¹³

Two doorways, two microbiomes, one disease. Both compartments are the ones this book spends much of its length restoring.

Alzheimer's, the way out

Alzheimer's fits the other direction, and the argument has to be stated carefully because the obvious version of it is wrong.

The earliest tau in Alzheimer's is not olfactory. Pretangles appear in the locus coeruleus and other brainstem nuclei before anything cortical, and those nuclei do not drain through the cribriform plate.¹⁴ That is the standing objection to any pure drainage-failure account and it should be conceded openly.

What is true is that the olfactory bulb, the anterior olfactory nucleus, and the entorhinal cortex carry tau pathology at the earliest cortical stages (Braak I and II), and that the first cortical site of all is transentorhinal cortex.¹⁵ The naming is worth noticing.

Entorhinal means within the rhinal region, named for olfaction, and the entorhinal cortex receives direct projection from the olfactory bulb. The earliest cortical pathology in Alzheimer's is in olfactory-connected territory.

Note also which protein. What appears there early is tau, not amyloid. Amyloid follows a separate sequence beginning in basal neocortex and reaches the bulb late.¹⁶

Read together, and marked as the author's synthesis: Parkinson's may be what enters the brain from the two dysbiotic microbiomes, and Alzheimer's may be what the brain cannot get out.† Neither is established. Both diseases are multifactorial, neither direction excludes the other, and a patient may be carrying both failures at once.

The frame also carries an instruction the reader will meet again later in this book. What propagates from the gut and the sinus into the brain is a misfolded protein, and the cyclodextrin chapter explains this further: a protein whose misfolding has left its fat-soluble amino acids exposed on the outside, which is precisely what the body's water-based clearance machinery cannot get hold of, and precisely what a cyclodextrin cage can enclose. The argument made there applies here without modification.

What is particular to the brain is the route. Cyclodextrins are excluded by the blood-brain barrier and actively pumped back out of what does cross, so no systemic route reaches brain tissue at useful concentration, whether the dose was given intravenously, rectally, or orally. The rectal route does its work on the liver and the circulation, and does it well. The nasal spray is the only route that reaches the brain, and it reaches it not by crossing the barrier but by going around it, through the same cribriform plate this chapter has been describing. The anatomy that lets the sinus poison the brain is the anatomy that lets the practitioner treat it.

There is a caution attached, and it is the one this chapter has spent its length establishing. Anything mobilized inside the brain has to leave by the route described here, and in the patient who most needs the intervention that route is the one that has already failed. Mobilization ahead of clearance capacity is the same error the detox chapters name in every other compartment, and the brain is the compartment with the least tolerance for it. Always open the exit before loading it.

What the three proteins share

There is a unifying observation that makes the two arms one argument rather than two.

Amyloid-beta, tau, and alpha-synuclein are all metal-binding proteins. Amyloid-beta binds copper, zinc, and iron, and plaques are metal-enriched.¹⁷ Tau binds the same metals, and iron promotes its aggregation. Alpha-synuclein binds copper and iron. Two of the three have documented antimicrobial activity, and amyloid-beta's has been demonstrated directly.¹⁸ Withholding iron and zinc from invading organisms is one of the oldest strategies the immune system has, and the body runs it deliberately using other proteins. So an aggregating metal-binding protein having antimicrobial properties is not a coincidence. Perhaps it is a response to infections or infection cell wall fragments in

the brain with the metal binding may be part of how the antimicrobial function works. It could also be a response to metal toxins in the brain itself.[†] Given the ubiquity of both gut and sinus chronic infections and metal exposure, likely both.

The author's position, held as hypothesis: these are not three diseases with three proteins. They are three regional responses to a common insult, aggregating when the load they were handling exceeded the capacity to clear it. In this reading the aggregate is initially protective sequestration and becomes visible pathology once capacity is exceeded.[†] It is the same argument the previous chapter made about amyloid as a binder, generalized to all three, and it puts the metal work of the chelation chapters directly upstream of neurodegeneration. Note that the metals doing this work are iron, copper, and zinc, essential metals mishandled, with the toxic metals acting as the upstream driver that displaces and disrupts them.

What can be done

The nasal lymphatics are fully reachable, and the sinus protocol of the previous chapter is already working on them. Congestion, biofilm, mucosal inflammation, mucin hydration, and ciliary clearance all act here.

The meningeal lymphatics between bulb and plate are partly reachable. They are continuous with the nasal lymphatics, so downstream congestion acts on them. They have no pump of their own and move when the body moves, which is the argument of the lymphatics chapter applied one compartment up. And glymphatic flow is overwhelmingly a sleep phenomenon, which puts the apnea chapter directly on this stage: fragmented sleep removes the window in which the system runs at all. Raising the head of the bed acts here as well.

The arachnoid fenestrations and the mature ossifications of the bony foramina are not reversible short of surgery. Yet, HPBCD cyclodextrins are showing promise in supporting healthy calcium CT scores, so this is a potential direction. What is available is slowing the narrowing rather than reversing it, by removing the sinus inflammation that drives osteitis in the surrounding bone.[†] There is a precedent for local chelation dissolving ectopic mineral elsewhere in the body while sparing normal bone, and a matching finding that systemic chelation fails at the same task, which suggests that local concentration is the whole variable.¹⁹ Nothing of the kind has been tried at the cribriform plate, and the chelating agent already in the sinus spray is there for the biofilm rather than for the bone. Whether it does anything to the bony foramina is unknown.

And there is a fifth lever the four-gate frame conceals. If the pipe cannot be widened, reduce what has to pass through it. Every chapter in this book that lowers the patient's metal burden, chemical burden, inflammatory load, and endotoxin load is acting on this same failure from the demand side rather than the capacity side. A drain at half capacity carrying a quarter of the load is not failing. We will discuss this more in the upcoming chapter on cyclodextrins.

Clinical pearl: *A workable protocol for all dementia could include gut and sinus microbiome restoration, metal chelation and cyclodextrins.*

References

1. Iliff JJ, Wang M, Liao Y, et al. A paravascular pathway facilitates CSF flow through the brain parenchyma and the clearance of interstitial solutes, including amyloid beta. *Sci Transl Med.* 2012;4(147):147ra111.
2. Xie L, Kang H, Xu Q, et al. Sleep drives metabolite clearance from the adult brain. *Science.* 2013;342(6156):373-377.
3. Hong SP, et al; Koh GY. CSF clearance through arachnoid fenestrations to olfactory meningeal lymphatics. *Cell.* 2026. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2026.06.035.
4. Bradbury MW, Westrop RJ. Factors influencing exit of substances from cerebrospinal fluid into deep cervical lymph of the rabbit. *J Physiol.* 1983;339:519-534.
5. Melin E, Eide PK, Ringstad G. In vivo assessment of cerebrospinal fluid efflux to nasal mucosa in humans. *Sci Rep.* 2020;10:14974.
6. Lochhead JJ, Thorne RG. Intranasal delivery of biologics to the central nervous system. *Adv Drug Deliv Rev.* 2012;64(7):614-628.
7. Kalmey JK, Thewissen JGM, Dluzen DE. Age-related size reduction of foramina in the cribriform plate. *Anat Rec.* 1998;251(3):326-329.
8. Snidvongs K, McLachlan R, Sacks R, Earls P, Harvey RJ. Correlation of the Kennedy osteitis score to clinico-histologic features of chronic rhinosinusitis. *Int Forum Allergy Rhinol.* 2013;3(5):369-375.
9. Sun X, Sun C, Liu X, et al. The roles of inflammatory cytokines in the pathogenesis of ossification of ligamentum flavum. *Am J Transl Res.* 2013;5(1):13-19.
10. Braak H, Del Tredici K, Rüb U, et al. Staging of brain pathology related to sporadic Parkinson's disease. *Neurobiol Aging.* 2003;24(2):197-211.
11. Kim S, Kwon SH, Kam TI, et al. Transneuronal propagation of pathologic alpha-synuclein from the gut to the brain models Parkinson's disease. *Neuron.* 2019;103(4):627-641.
12. Svensson E, Horváth-Puhó E, Thomsen RW, et al. Vagotomy and subsequent risk of Parkinson's disease. *Ann Neurol.* 2015;78(4):522-529.
13. Borghammer P, Van Den Berge N. Brain-first versus gut-first Parkinson's disease: a hypothesis. *J Parkinsons Dis.* 2019;9(s2):S281-S295.
14. Braak H, Thal DR, Ghebremedhin E, Del Tredici K. Stages of the pathologic process in Alzheimer disease: age categories from 1 to 100 years. *J Neuropathol Exp Neurol.* 2011;70(11):960-969.
15. Braak H, Braak E. Neuropathological staging of Alzheimer-related changes. *Acta Neuropathol.* 1991;82(4):239-259.
16. Thal DR, Rüb U, Orantes M, Braak H. Phases of A-beta deposition in the human brain and its relevance for the development of AD. *Neurology.* 2002;58(12):1791-1800.
17. Bush AI. The metal theory of Alzheimer's disease. *J Alzheimers Dis.* 2013;33 Suppl 1:S277-S281.

18. Moir RD, Lathe R, Tanzi RE. The antimicrobial protection hypothesis of Alzheimer's disease. *Alzheimers Dement*. 2018;14(12):1602-1614.
19. Karamched SR, Nosoudi N, Moreland HE, Chowdhury A, Vyavahare NR. Site-specific chelation therapy with EDTA-loaded albumin nanoparticles reverses arterial calcification in a rat model of chronic kidney disease. *Sci Rep*. 2019;9:2629.

Chapter 26, The teeth and the sinuses

Recovering the oral microbiome would be a book in it's own right, but we can say a few things on the subject here. The mouth has its own microbiome, and its own failure modes. Dead teeth, root canals, and cavitations can become focal infections, chronic, low-grade, often asymptomatic at the dental site itself. The problems they create appear elsewhere in the body, along predictable pathways mapped by the tooth meridian system (available at remedylink.com/charts). A dead upper bicuspid and a chronic lung problem. A failed root canal on a lower molar and a recurring gut or heart problem. The connections are not random.

If a patient developed a persistent problem after a root canal, extraction, cavitation, or tooth death, check whether the affected organ or tissue falls on the same meridian as the tooth. For cancer, the time delay is usually about five years. A biological dentist, one trained in the systemic consequences of dental focal infections, may be required for evaluation and treatment.

In the chapter on the sinuses, we discussed how the cribriform plate is an anatomic weak spot that allows for sinus toxins to enter the brain. Now we will discuss another anatomic weak spot between the teeth and the sinuses.

About half of maxillary sinusitis is dental in origin. A meta-analysis of thirty-one CT-based studies put the pooled prevalence of odontogenic maxillary sinusitis at 51 percent per sinus and 50 percent per patient.¹ This is largely unknown to the practitioners managing the sinus.

The reason is that the floor of the maxillary sinus is the roof of the posterior upper teeth. There is no third structure between them, only bone, and often not much of it.

The wall

In some people the sinus floor sits well above the root tips with substantial bone between. In others it descends between the roots so that they project into the chamber as bumps under the sinus lining, separated from the airspace by a shell of bone measured in tenths of a millimeter. In a meaningful minority there is no cortical bone at that point at all, and the root apex is separated from the sinus by mucosa alone.

The cortical bone of the sinus floor measured at its thinnest against the mesiobuccal root of the second molar at 0.46 millimeters, with a standard deviation of 0.28 — meaning a substantial fraction of that population had a quarter of a millimeter or less.² Frank protrusion of the apex past the floor occurred in about one in five of those roots.² This is common enough that a radiologist will not comment on it. The absence of cortical bone over a projecting apex is often called dehiscence.

It would be reasonable to assume this wall thins steadily with age, the way so much else does. Measured, it does the opposite. Root-to-sinus distance increases with age and that apical protrusion into the sinus becomes less frequent, not more.^{3,4}

What is progressive is what happens after the tooth leaves. Remove a posterior maxillary tooth and the sinus floor descends into the space over the following years. So the wall is not eroded by time. It is maintained by the tooth and it fails when the tooth is gone. The site of a previous extraction is not a healed site with respect to this wall. It is a thinner one.

Which teeth

By root proximity the second molar is most often the closest tooth to the sinus floor, followed by the first molar, then the second premolar, then the first premolar. Anterior teeth are essentially irrelevant here. Their apices approximate the nasal floor, not the antrum, and periapical infection there vents accordingly.

By actual clinical source of infection, however, the first molar leads.⁵ The reason is not anatomy but exposure. The first molar erupts earliest, is restored most often, is endodontically treated most often, and is extracted most often.

Why the drainage geometry makes this worse

The ostium of the maxillary sinus sits high on the medial wall, well above the floor. The sinus therefore clears upward, against gravity, by mucociliary transport alone. A contaminated source at the floor is at the point furthest from the exit. This is why a small apical leak does not simply drain and resolve, and why odontogenic sinusitis so characteristically presents as the chronic unilateral case that has failed three rounds of antibiotics.

Dr. Weston Price revisited

One of the conclusions from Dr. Price's research was that a humans that shifted away from traditional foods had predictable degeneration patterns that worsened with each generation. As a dentist, he made special note of the lack of space in the modern mouth for all it's teeth. Two things follow from crowding.

The first is surgical. Maxillary third molar removal is a classic setting for opening the antrum. The roots sit high in the tuberosity, the bone is thin and often absent over them, and displacement of a root fragment or an entire tooth into the sinus is a recognized complication rather than an exotic one.

The second is developmental... maxillary underdevelopment. The narrow, high-vaulted, transversely deficient upper jaw. And the palate is the nasal floor. A narrow high palate is a narrow nasal floor, with the reduced nasal volume and higher airway resistance that follow from it. The impacted third molar and the poorly ventilated sinus are not a sequence of cause and effect. They are one developmental finding read from two directions.

What dentistry opens

The iatrogenic category is large, accounting for an estimated ~50% of odontogenic sinusitis.⁵

Extraction of a posterior maxillary tooth can produce an oroantral communication: a direct opening between mouth and sinus. Most close spontaneously. Those that do not become an oroantral fistula, an epithelialized tract that will not close on its own and delivers oral flora into the antrum indefinitely. This is the cleanest example of the wall failing, and it is also the one that most reliably produces the anaerobic sinus culture.

Root fragments and whole teeth displaced into the sinus during extraction act as foreign bodies. So does extruded endodontic material: sealer or gutta-percha pushed beyond the apex into the antrum, where it sits permanently. There is a long-standing association between extruded endodontic material and maxillary fungal balls, generally attributed to the zinc content of certain sealers.

Then there are implants. The posterior maxilla has the least available bone height and the poorest bone quality in the mouth, which is precisely why implant placement there so often requires the floor to be lifted and grafted first. Every one of those steps is an intervention on the wall this chapter is about. The membrane can be perforated during elevation. Graft particulate can be delivered into the airspace. The fixture itself can migrate into the sinus, either at placement or years later as bone remodels around it. And a failing implant with peri-implant bone loss drains upward, into a chamber that clears against gravity, through a tract that no longer has a periodontal ligament to seal it.

A great deal of routine dentistry is performed on a wall that separates two distinct microbial ecosystems, by a profession that does not treat the other side, on a patient

whose sinus symptoms will subsequently be managed by a profession that does not review the dental history.

What this does to the sequence

If the dental history indicates, the oral microbiome must be addressed as its own step, because it will feed both the sinuses and the tonsils. We often find *Fusobacterium*, an oral organism, resident in all three locations - sinus, tonsil and mouth. One organism, one source, and three sites presenting as three separate complaints. It follows that unilateral maxillary sinus symptoms are also a dental finding until proven otherwise.

This chapter is not a treatise on biological dentistry. Proper removal of mercury amalgam, biocompatible restorative materials, the tooth-organ relationships, and cavitations could be the topic of an entire separate book. What belongs here is only the wall, and the recognition that it is thinner, more often opened and with negative health effects than is commonly known.

Clinical pearl: *A custom dental tray, or even an over-the-counter mouth guard, filled with hydrogen peroxide gel and worn for 15 minutes once or twice a day provides oxidative challenge to anaerobic oral organisms.*

1. Global Prevalence of Maxillary Sinusitis of Odontogenic Origin and Associated Factors: A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis. *Journal of Endodontics*, 2023. PMID 36754253. (Author list to be filled from the source record.)
2. Investigating the anatomical relationship between the maxillary molars and the sinus floor in a Chinese population using cone-beam computed tomography. (Journal and year to be filled; PMC6915992.)
3. Relationship of maxillary posterior roots to the maxillary sinus and cortical bone: a cone beam computed tomographic study. 2020. PMID 32105233.
4. Evaluation of the Proximity of the Maxillary Teeth Root Apices to the Maxillary Sinus Floor in Romanian Subjects: A Cone-Beam Computed Tomography Study. (Journal and year to be filled; PMC12293585.)
5. George et al. Odontogenic sinusitis: a literature review. *Oral Surgery*, 2024. doi:10.1111/ors.12861

Chapter 27, The Tonsils: Focal infections waiting to happen

Like the appendix, the tonsils are not spare parts. They are the immune system's forward outpost, a ring of lymphoid tissue standing guard at the one place where the outside world pours in, the crossroads of air and food. Anatomists call it Waldeyer's ring: the palatine tonsils which you can see, the adenoid up behind the nose, the lingual tonsil at the base of the tongue, the tubal tonsils by the ear tubes. A garrison around the gate.

Their genius is in the crypts. Each tonsil folds its surface inward, deep branching tunnels that multiply the area exposed to whatever you breathe and swallow. It is a sampling organ. It reaches into the stream, pulls out a piece of every microbe passing through, and shows it to the immune cells waiting behind. Brilliant design. And a design flaw in the same stroke, because what samples the world also traps it.

When we painted throats

The Ebers Papyrus, thirty-five centuries old, lists throat applications. The Greeks and Romans did it; Hippocrates and later Galen swabbed astringents onto inflamed throats. Ayurvedic medicine in India gave the technique a name, *pratisarana*, the medicated swabbing of the mouth and throat, and traditional Chinese medicine reached for the same idea. Four civilizations, no contact between them, the same instinct: the throat is the one battlefield you can actually reach, so reach it.

The version we remember is the last and most refined. For roughly a hundred years, from the mid-1800s, when the laryngoscope finally let a doctor see the living throat, into

the 1950s, Western medicine turned throat painting into a standardized ritual. Iodine on a brush. Silver nitrate, methylene blue, gentian violet. A camel-hair applicator and a steady hand, straight onto the inflamed tonsil.

It made sense in its time. You treat what you can see. And before antibiotics the throat Strep, scarlet fever, diphtheria, rheumatic fever taking children by the thousand. Painting was one of the few things a physician could actually do. It was unpleasant. It gagged you. Someone else had to do it. But it was action against a real and frightening enemy.

The pill that ended the practice

Then came penicillin. The 1940s. Suddenly you could cure strep with a tablet and head off rheumatic fever before it scarred a heart. Throat painting became obsolete almost overnight. So did the routine tonsillectomy that had boomed alongside it. For the acute infection, it was the right trade.

What the pill can't reach

Antibiotics cure the acute infection, but rarely the chronic one. And chronic tonsil trouble is not a cloud of free-floating bacteria waiting to be killed. It is biofilm, bacteria dug in, wrapped in a self-made matrix, slowed to a crawl, shielded from the immune system and from the drug. Antibiotics need bacteria that are dividing and reachable. Biofilm offers neither. So the strep clears, and returns. Clears, and returns. The medicine that conquered the epidemic cannot touch the reservoir that outlives it. And in the case of the tonsillar crypts, doubly hard to reach.

And there is a sharper twist. Streptococcus in the throat is not a passive squatter. It activates the body's own contact system and generates bradykinin, a swelling peptide that antihistamines don't answer. That is why the chronic throat swells in a way the allergic nose does not. The bug in the crypt is manufacturing the symptom.

The crypts are deep, narrow and branching, like a glove turned outside-in. Perfect for immune surveillance. Difficult to clean. Debris, dead cells, keratin, bacteria, and calcified stones collect exactly where nothing reaches. The disease lives where our medicine does not go.

Two clean weeks, and what they can and can't do

Here is the door out. The crypts clean themselves. The crypt lining is not ordinary skin, it is a specialized lymphoepithelium, built to shed, to let immune cells pass through it, to slough its own debris outward. And like all the lining of the mouth, it turns over fast: a fresh surface roughly every one to two weeks.

That changes the goal. You do not have to sterilize a tonsil. You cannot, and trying only wrecks the ecology. You have to give it a clean fortnight, keep the crypts open and the

biofilm suppressed long enough for the surface to renew and the balance to tip. For many patients, that is enough. The refreshed epithelium and the local immunity behind it take over, and the tonsil holds its own.

But understand what the two weeks actually did. It reset the *surface*. It cleared an acute imbalance. It did not sterilize the crypt, because no method does. A biofilm carries dormant persister cells that survive every antimicrobial and then repopulate, anchored in a matrix that reseeds. The fortnight suppresses that reservoir; it does not remove it. Whether the tonsil holds depends on what happens after the surface is clean.

Why it comes back

When it returns, four things are usually behind it, and only one of them is the tonsil itself.

The first is the reservoir. Biofilm is a chronic ecological state, not an infection you cure. Suppress it and the persisters wait; stop suppressing and they re-expand. Some of the organisms hide deeper still. Group A strep can invade the crypt epithelial cells and live inside them (yes, intracellularly), re-emerging when conditions allow. This is why a course of penicillin so often clears the throat and the throat comes back.

The second is the watershed above. The sinuses drain over the adenoid, the pharynx, and the tonsils every night. If the sinus and nasopharyngeal reservoir is colonized, the tonsils are re-inoculated continuously, no matter how well you cleared them. This is the factor that most often separates the patient who needs two weeks from the patient who needs a lifetime. Fix the throat and leave the sinus colonized, and you are emptying a well that refills each night.

The third is the terrain that let it happen. Mouth breathing and a dry mouth remove the salivary flushing and the antimicrobial saliva that normally police the crypts. Reflux bathes the throat in acid. High blood sugar, whether from diet or metabolic disease, raises salivary glucose to feed the flora while blunting the neutrophils that should be holding it in check. A mold burden suppresses mucosal immunity. An immune set point that permitted colonization once will permit it again. None of this reverts on its own.

The fourth is the tonsil's own architecture. Years of inflammation scar the crypts, fibrosis distorts them and, worse, degrades the shedding that is supposed to keep them clean. A crypt that can no longer empty itself is a permanent trap, and the deeper and more branched the crypt was to begin with, the harder it is to keep clear.

A visual indicator

Open your mouth in front of a mirror, stick your tongue out, and note how much of your throat you can actually see. Anesthesiologists scored this decades ago, the Mallampati classification, I through IV. Class I, the pillars and the whole uvula in plain view. Class IV, only the hard palate, the throat curtained off entirely. They built it to predict a difficult intubation, and it flags a crowded airway and sleep apnea besides.

Feeling for the reservoir

The tonsil drains to a single sentinel, the jugulodigastric node, at the angle of the jaw. To find it, place your fingers just below and behind the corner of the mandible on each side and roll the tissue against the muscle beneath. Most people can feel something there.

An acutely infected tonsil raises this node loudly, tender, soft, suddenly large. The node worth learning is the chronic one: firm, mobile, modest, persistent across weeks and months, and not tender, or barely so. That node is the outward face of a tonsil under continuous low-grade load. The biofilm in the crypts sheds its antigens without pause, the node processes them without pause, its germinal centers stay expanded, and the swelling neither flares nor resolves.

Here the reader may raise the standard objection: enlarged nodes are common in healthy people, so a palpable node means nothing. Notice what that objection assumes. It takes *common in the population* and quietly converts it into *normal*, and *normal* into *healthy*. This is the exact substitution this book warns against... reference ranges are calibrated against a sick population. That palpable nodes are common is not evidence the nodes are benign. It may be evidence of how widely a low-grade chronic load is now carried. The commonness is not the reassurance; it may be the finding. A node that is common in a drifted population is no more proof of health than a stool pH of seven is.

So palpation earns a place. It costs nothing, it can be done in the chair or by the patient at home, and, because a chronic node changes slowly, it can be tracked over months as the throat is worked. A quiet node that softens and shrinks across a restoration protocol is telling you the reservoir behind it is emptying.

But the node has limits that have nothing to do with the fallacy just dismissed, and they have to be held alongside the benefit. It cannot name its source. The tonsil, the teeth, and the pharynx all drain through the same chain, and the node swells the same way for each; it reports that a chronic load is draining, not where the load lives. It can also mislead by memory. A node driven to hyperplasia years ago can remain fibrotically enlarged long after the burden that raised it is gone, the lymphatic echo of the immunologic scar described later in this book. The test is insensitive in the other direction as well: a walled-off crypt can hold its biofilm without raising a node you can feel, so a neck that palpates clean does not clear the tonsil. Absence of the sign is not absence of the reservoir.

One kind of node leaves this discussion entirely. A node that is hard rather than rubbery, fixed rather than mobile, steadily and painlessly enlarging, confined to one side, or accompanied by night sweats or unexplained weight loss is no longer a tonsil question. That node goes to a physician to exclude lymphoma or metastatic disease before anything in this chapter is assumed. The quiet, soft, mobile, persistent node is the one this section is about; the hard, fixed, growing one belongs to someone else, first.

When it sits lower

Sometimes the feeling isn't at the tonsils at all. A lump, farther back and lower (globus). Most of the time globus is reflux or muscle tension, and those must be ruled out first; a persistent lump low in the throat is a reason to get a proper look, not to guess. But it can also be the lingual tonsil, the fourth member of the ring, down at the base of the tongue, with its own crypts and its own stones, sitting in territory you will never glimpse in a bathroom mirror. Same tissue, same problem, lower down.

Modern throat painting

My tool is simple, and it is throat painting reborn without the poison. A mix of compounds that target both biofilms and the bacteria that create them (see the Tonsil tab on the protocols page on our website) The method is as follows, and it goes after the whole ring, not just the two tonsils you can see. Three positions.

First, the palatine tonsils on the sides. Lie supine with the head tilted about thirty degrees to one side. Place half a dropper as far back in the cheek as possible on the side of the tilt, without gagging, and let gravity pull the solution over the tonsil on that side. Repeat on the other side.

Second, the adenoid up top. With the head straight and leaning back over an edge so the chin points up, apply the solution to the top of the back of the palate and let it drain down over the upper tonsils. This has the benefit of also treating the soft palate, which, while not tonsil per say, does inflame and swell and cause issues (sleep apnea).

Third, the lingual tonsil at the base of the tongue. Standing, head tilted back about forty-five degrees, place the solution on the back of the tongue in a line going from side to side. From there it reaches the tissue in the center base of the throat.

In all applications, move the head a bit from side to side as the drops move down the throat to increase the coated area and resist the urge to swallow as long as possible. Applied multiple daily, it gives the crypts the clean fortnight they need to turn over. Consider our Guttaschild product.

And then there's the mold

Finally, if the home is a source of mold exposure, mycotoxins suppress both sinus and tonsillar immunity. The home must also be considered. There is a bonus here for the apnea patient. Palatine and lingual tonsils swollen with biofilm crowd the airway, and clearing them relieves two of the three sites of obstructive apnea, the soft palate and the base of the tongue. The sinus is the third, which is why, again, the sinus work comes first.

The point

We do not need to cut tonsils out. We need to keep them clean long enough to heal, and stop reseeding them from above. Two weeks of a well-drained, well-populated, biofilm-suppressed throat, with the sinuses handled at the same time, and for many, the tonsils will take it from there. Others may need a continual protocol, but such is life, and a few drops in the throat before sleep is a small price to pay for better health. This is not nostalgia for the old brush and the iodine bottle. This is the old school therapy of throat painting done right: non-toxic, microbiome-aware, and aimed at the whole ecology instead of the visible surface.

Clinical Pearl: *Sinus and tonsil inflammation shift the voice in predictable ways. An observant practitioner can hear in their clients voice where the inflammation and dysbiosis is.*

Chapter 28, The tonsil-immune-brain axis

The tonsil has been described in this work as a reservoir, a self-cleaning organ whose crypts, when they fail to empty, harbor biofilm and recurrent infection. That is one face. The other is older and more fundamental, and it is the subject of this chapter: the tonsil is an immune inductive organ, and as such it is a lever. It sits in Waldeyer's ring, the lymphoid collar guarding the entrance to the gut and airway, and its crypts are lined not with ordinary epithelium but with specialized antigen-sampling lymphoepithelium. That lining pulls material from the mouth and throat deep into dense lymphoid follicles, dendritic cells, T cells, B cells packed together, where the body makes one of its oldest decisions: tolerate this, or attack it.

Because the tonsil makes that decision, and because it is reachable from the outside in a way that most inductive tissue is not, it is one of the few places in the body where the tolerate-or-attack machinery can be deliberately influenced.

The tonsil does not react only to what lands on it from the air. It samples what is swallowed, what drains down from the nasopharynx, and what has already been picked up elsewhere and carried to it. It is a decision point, not a filter. And a decision point that is chronically inflamed does not make neutral decisions. A tonsil held in a reactive, primed state, its follicles active, its resident mast cells loaded, its crypts under continuous low-grade load, is a tonsil biased toward reaction rather than tolerance.

The lever's first action: the gate to the brain

That a throat-based immune process can drive brain dysfunction is established, not speculative. The clearest clinical demonstration is the syndrome in which a streptococcal colonization of the tonsillar tissue provokes an immune response that cross-reacts with the person's own brain, producing abrupt neuropsychiatric change, obsessive-compulsive behavior, tics, cognitive and emotional disturbance.¹ The throat is the reservoir and the inductive site; the brain is where the effect appears; the immune system is the courier that carries the signal from one to the other. The accepted logic of intervention has been to remove the inductive site surgically. The premise of this chapter is that the same site can instead be quieted, that the tonsil can be calmed rather than cut, and that calming it changes what reaches the brain.†

The lever's second action: the gate to sensitization

Sensitization, the process by which a first, silent encounter primes the immune system so that later encounters provoke, is a tolerate-or-attack decision made at inductive sites, and the tonsil is one of the principal such sites.

A settled, tolerant tonsil biases the decision toward tolerance: material that reaches it is more likely to be filed as harmless and let pass, and the body does not build a reactive response against it. A chronically reactive tonsil biases the decision the other way. A follicle that is already inflamed, already primed, already skewed toward reaction is a follicle predisposed to sensitize rather than tolerate, to convert a neutral first encounter into the beginning of a reactive one. The reactive state does not only amplify responses to things the body has already learned to attack; it lowers the threshold for learning to attack something new.

Why the tissue loses composure

A tonsil does not become chronically reactive on its own. It is pushed there, and usually by more than one thing at once. Its local defenses may be suppressed, by environmental burden, by a chronic colonizing organism in its crypts, or by the two acting together. Suppressed local immunity permits resident organisms to overgrow; the overgrowth keeps the follicles provoked; the provoked follicles lose tolerance and begin both to sensitize and to amplify, and that reactive state determines whether the next provocation is tolerated or converted into a systemic event.

A particular and common version of this is mold exposure, which suppresses tonsillar immunity and permits an organism native to the crypts, usually streptococcus, to overgrow behind the lowered guard. The environmental exposure that drives an acute, intermittent reaction thereby seeds a chronic colonization, and the two then compound, intermittent insults arriving on tissue that is already primed by a standing colonizer, each conversion amplified by a follicle that never returns fully to rest. This is a challenging state to resolve, because relieving one driver leaves the other in place. It is also the state that most firmly locks the lever in its reactive position, and therefore the one that most requires the tissue to be addressed at every layer at once.

Restoring composure: calming the tissue

The first action is to calm the reactive tissue directly, to lower the reactivity of the converting tissue so that an incoming provocation is absorbed and tolerated rather than escalated or learned. Functionally, this calls for an agent that reaches reactive tonsillar tissue, stabilizes the resident cells that would otherwise release their inflammatory mediators, and quiets the local inflammatory signaling that keeps the follicle primed. Restoring composure is the core action, because composure is the variable that governs both the brain-gate and the sensitization-gate.

Clearing the standing provocation: the layered reservoir

Calming the tissue is necessary but not sufficient, because part of why the tissue lost composure is a standing microbial provocation, and that provocation does not sit in one place. It occupies three distinct compartments, and each must be addressed on its own terms.

The first compartment is the exposed surface: planktonic organisms and freely accessible material on the mucosa. This is the easiest to reach, and a surface-acting antimicrobial addresses it directly.

The second is biofilm: organisms embedded in a protective matrix that shields them from surface agents and from the immune system alike.² Biofilm cannot simply be killed from outside; it must first be structurally disrupted, its matrix cracked open, before what lives inside it becomes accessible. This yields a principle that governs the whole protocol: disruption sets the table. Cracking the biofilm converts protected organisms into exposed ones, and so the disruption step multiplies the effect of whatever clearing agent follows it. An antimicrobial applied before disruption meets a shielded target; the same antimicrobial applied after disruption meets an exposed one.

The third compartment is intracellular. Some organisms, including the streptococcus native to the crypts, invade the epithelial cells of the tonsil and live inside them. This is the deepest reservoir and the one that most reliably reseeds the others, and it defeats every agent that acts only from outside the cell. A surface antimicrobial does not enter the host cell. A biofilm disruptor works on the matrix, not on the cytoplasm. Even a self-propagating biological agent such as bacteriophage cannot enter a mammalian cell. The intracellular fraction is therefore the compartment that a surface-and-biofilm protocol leaves entirely untouched, and it is the reason a tissue can be cleared on its surface and still re-prime within days.

Reaching the intracellular compartment requires a different principle, because direct external killing is unavailable. There are two functional routes. The first is an agent that itself penetrates the host cell, one that is soluble in and able to cross the cell membrane, and that carries antimicrobial or invasion-blocking activity to the interior. Such an agent can reduce the intracellular burden directly and can also reduce the ongoing invasion that replenishes it. The second route does not attempt to reach the organism at all, but recruits the host cell's own machinery to do the killing: the cell's internal disposal systems, which exist precisely to destroy intracellular invaders, can be prompted to clear their occupants.

A third mechanism completes the intracellular strategy, and it belongs to the tissue rather than to any agent. The crypt lining renews itself on roughly a fortnightly cycle. Every epithelial cell that sheds while carrying its intracellular occupant, and is replaced by an uninfected cell, is a small clearance event. If the surface is held clear long enough that shed infected cells are not immediately re-invaded by a fresh supply from the surface, the natural turnover of the tissue gradually empties the intracellular compartment on its own. This is the deep logic beneath sustained suppression: the intracellular reservoir cannot be sterilized in a single application, but it can be starved and outlasted across a full renewal cycle. This is why duration of suppression matters more than the force of any single treatment.

There is a balance to hold here, and it is the central tension of the whole approach. Calming the reactive tissue and clearing its standing provocation pull in apparently opposite directions, one restrains the immune response, the other demands an active one. But they are not contradictory, because they act on different arms. Restoring tolerance quiets the maladaptive amplification and sensitization that send disproportionate signals to the brain; clearing the reservoir strengthens the appropriate, local, antimicrobial work that removes the standing provocation. The goal is not a uniformly suppressed tonsil nor a uniformly activated one, but a composed one: a tissue that no longer over-reacts and over-sensitizes to what it meets, while still mounting a competent local defense against what genuinely needs clearing.

Decision-makers and memory-keepers

The tonsil is a decision-maker: it determines, in the moment, whether an arriving provocation is tolerated or converted. But the durable record of the immune system's past decisions, the standing memory of what the body has learned to react to, is held more diffusely, in the disseminated lymph nodes distributed throughout the body. The tonsil decides; the lymphatic network remembers. Working on the established memory is a separate task, aimed at the distributed memory centers rather than the inductive gate; an experimental protocol using specific wavelengths of ultraviolet light directly over the lymph nodes, for addressing those centers, is described on our protocols page rather than here, since it is a distinct intervention with its own rationale, kept separate from the tonsillar work by design.

Two cautions belong with any clearing of the tonsil. First, a tonsil that has once been colonized tends toward recurrence, as an infected sinus does; some degree of ongoing maintenance will likely be needed to hold the tissue clear, because the reservoir compartments described above are not reliably emptied for good in a single course. Second, if an environmental driver such as mold exposure is not itself resolved, recurrence should be expected regardless of how thoroughly the tissue is cleared. The reason is structural. The organisms that overgrow here are native to the tissue; they are not an outside invasion to be eliminated but residents ordinarily held in check by local immunity. An unresolved immunosuppressive exposure keeps that local immunity suppressed, and suppressed immunity lets the native organisms return. Clearing the

tissue while leaving the suppression in place treats the overgrowth and ignores its permission. The exposure must be resolved for the clearing to hold.

The older name for the gate

There is a observation worth making, and it is not a mystical one. The traditions that mapped the body long before histology named a center at the throat, in the Sanskrit system, Vishuddha, the throat chakra, and assigned to it the faculties of discernment and judgment: the deciding of what is true, what to admit, what to voice, what to let pass. It is difficult to miss that this is a precise description of what the tissue at the throat actually does immunologically. The inductive apparatus at the throat is, in the most literal sense, a judgment center, its entire function is to discriminate what arrives and decide whether to admit it in tolerance or challenge it in defense. Immune response is judgment; that is not a metaphor stretched to fit but a plain statement of the operation.

The chakra systems, like other enduring anatomical traditions, tended to place their centers where the body in fact concentrates neural plexuses, glandular tissue, and, as here, immune decision-making apparatus. That the ancients located a center of discernment exactly where modern immunology finds a center of immune discrimination is remarkable.

The missing off-switch

There is a puzzle in all of this that is that points at something larger than the tonsil. An allergy, once established, appears to have no off-switch, no built-in mechanism by which the body reassesses a sensitization and asks whether the original decision was ever, or still is, a sound one. A reaction learned in error, or one that is no longer helpful, is kept faithfully. In a body otherwise so thoroughly equipped with feedback, correction, and restraint, an immune memory with no capacity for review seems less like elegant design than like something broken.

The obvious rejoinder is that the body is not without immune regulation at all. It maintains a dedicated population of regulatory T cells whose entire purpose is to restrain immune responses, to hold reactivity in check and enforce tolerance.³ Are these not the off-switch the argument claims is missing? They are not. A regulatory T cell is a brake, not a revision. It suppresses the expression of a reaction; it does not return to the decision that created that reaction and revoke it, nor erase the memory in which the decision is stored. The sensitized clone persists intact, held quiet only for as long as the suppression is actively and continuously maintained. This is restraint by ongoing effort, not correction, a hand kept pressed on a switch that is still set to on. Relax the pressure, overwhelm it, or starve it of what sustains it, and the reaction returns unchanged, because nothing was ever unlearned. Regulatory tolerance can silence a mislearned response; it cannot reassess whether the response should have been learned at all. That capacity, genuine review, the revoking of a bad decision, is the thing the body appears to lack, and the regulatory system does not supply it.

This sharpens the puzzle rather than dissolving it, because the brake, unlike a true off-switch, is not tireless and not self-sufficient. The regulatory population that holds mislearned reactions in check is itself calibrated and fueled from outside, by the microbial community that trains it⁴ and by inductive tissues, the tonsil among them, left composed enough to sustain it. So the body's real vulnerability is twofold. It seems that it has no mechanism to overturn a sensitization once made; and the one mechanism it does have, the suppressive brake that might at least hold that sensitization quiet, depends for its strength on conditions we are able to disturb.

The timing of the rise in sensitization is difficult to ignore here. Hypersensitivity conditions have climbed steeply over the same decades in which antibiotics came into wide use, and the association, for allergy, for atopic disease, for the whole reactive family, is consistent and, in the aggregate, substantial,⁵ mediated not by the drugs acting on the immune system directly but by their disruption of the microbial community that trains it.⁶ The suggestion this raises is a sobering one. We may have made a trade without knowing we were making it: the lethal outcomes of acute infection, genuinely and gratefully averted, exchanged in part for a quieter epidemic of weakened, chronically colonized tissues (especially the tonsils) and a population that sensitizes too readily and reassesses not at all. The acute killer was met. The chronic cost has been slower to come into view, and the tonsil, miscalibrated at the gate, colonized behind a lowered guard, is one of the places it is paid.†. Unanswered is whether the tonsils contain can trigger an actual 'off-switch' program that activates when they are not chronically activated.

Clinical pearl: *Unlike the sinuses, the palatine tonsils are easy to check visually without any special tools.*

References

1. Swedo SE, Leonard HL, Garvey M, et al. Pediatric autoimmune neuropsychiatric disorders associated with streptococcal infections: clinical description of the first 50 cases. **Am J Psychiatry.** 1998;155(2):264–271.
2. Costerton JW, Stewart PS, Greenberg EP. Bacterial biofilms: a common cause of persistent infections. **Science.** 1999;284(5418):1318–1322.
3. Josefowicz SZ, Lu LF, Rudensky AY. Regulatory T cells: mechanisms of differentiation and function. **Annu Rev Immunol.** 2012;30:531–564.
4. Furusawa Y, Obata Y, Fukuda S, et al. Commensal microbe-derived butyrate induces the differentiation of colonic regulatory T cells. **Nature.** 2013;504(7480):446–450. (See also Smith PM, et al. **Science.** 2013;341(6145):569–573; Arpaia N, et al. **Nature.** 2013;504(7480):451–455.)
5. Ahmadizar F, Vijverberg SJH, Arets HGM, et al. Early-life antibiotic exposure increases the risk of developing allergic symptoms later in life: a meta-analysis. **Allergy.** 2018;73(5):971–986.

6. Aversa Z, Atkinson EJ, Schafer MJ, et al. Association of infant antibiotic exposure with childhood health outcomes. **Mayo Clin Proc.** 2021;96(1):66–77.

Chapter 29, On the female microbiome and empowering mothers

We do not know what the Paleolithic vaginal microbiome looked like. The gut we can reach into the deep past. Paleofeces mineralize, coprolites survive in dry caves, and ancient DNA pulls readable communities out of thousand-year-old stool that look markedly less industrialized and more diverse than our own.¹ The mouth we can read from dental calculus, which fossilizes plaque into a time capsule of the oral flora.² The vagina leaves no such substrate.

We also have no hunter-gatherer measurements. Nobody measured vaginal pH in extant foraging populations as part of the diversity work that gave us the Hadza gut.

What the past does record

Tissue kept no archive, but the practice did. Across cultures that never met, the hand reached for acid, and often for the sugars we would now call prebiotic. The oldest gynecological prescriptions we possess, the Egyptian Kahun papyrus of roughly 1850 BCE and the Ebers papyrus three centuries later, call for a pessary of acacia and honey, and acacia gum ferments in place to lactic acid, the very molecule the healthy vagina's own lactobacilli manufacture,³ while the gum itself is a soluble prebiotic fiber⁴ and the honey is at once mildly acidic, faintly antibacterial, and, in its oligosaccharides, prebiotic in its own right.⁵ One recipe, thirty-five centuries old, that acidifies, feeds selectively, and disinfects, the three levers this chapter will spend its length pulling one at a time. The Greeks and Romans did the same with a plainer pharmacy: the Hippocratic writers and, later, Soranus of Ephesus soaked wool or a sponge in vinegar, in sour wine, in brine, in honey, and set it against the cervix, and the aim recorded in the sources that survive was to make the passage sour enough that what entered it would

not thrive.⁶ Ayurveda built the most elaborate delivery system of all, the medicated vaginal tampon, the yoni pichu; the douche; the uttara basti, and while its classical vaginal chapters reach mostly for oils and decoctions, the tradition carried alongside them a whole fermented pharmacopoeia (the asavas and arishtas) and a materia medica that prized curd and buttermilk. Those are living sour cultures, even where the texts stop short of naming them for this particular surface.⁷

The intent recorded was usually contraceptive. No one in 1850 BCE was counting *Lactobacillus*. But it would be wrong to assume the ancients had no concept of an unseen living terrain at all. They could not see a microbe. The microscope was seventeen centuries downstream of Soranus. Yet Varro, writing near 30 BCE, warned of “certain minute creatures which cannot be seen by the eyes” that enter the body and cause disease,⁸ and Ayurveda's krimi taxonomy already divided the unseen organisms into the pathogenic and the sahaja, the ones that belong: a distinction between invader and resident flora reasoned out entirely by inference, without a single lens.⁹ And every household that kept a curd starter or a sourdough alive knew, in its hands if not its words, that an invisible living culture can be carried, fed, and placed on purpose. What separates us from them is not the idea that this compartment holds a living order worth tending. It is that we can finally measure it, name the organism, and choose the substrate with a precision they could only approach by feel. They were feeling for a barrier they could not see; what we can do that they could not is read it.

What we do have is modern measurement. Reliable vaginal pH values come from the mid-to-late twentieth century onward, once metering was routine and cohorts were characterized, and they sort into a clean pattern. The theoretically healthy reproductive-age vagina, dominated by *Lactobacillus crispatus*, sits at 3.8 to 4.5.¹⁰ Dysbiosis, the bacterial vaginosis state where lactobacilli collapse and a polymicrobial anaerobic community takes over, sits above 4.5, commonly 5.0 to 6.0.¹¹ The postmenopausal vagina, stripped of estrogen, sits at 5.0 to 7.0,¹² and it is worth noticing that the two ways of being wrong, dysbiosis and menopause, both shift meaningfully alkaline.

How to measure

The method is a swab-to-strip, not a strip pressed against the tissue. A sterile swab is inserted to the lateral wall of the mid vagina, roughly two inches in, past the contaminated entrance but well short of the cervix, and touched to the side wall rather than dipped in the pooled fluid at the bottom. The swab is then dragged across the reagent pad of the pH strip. The reason for the swab is not fastidiousness. Ordinary laboratory pH paper is impregnated with indicator dyes never formulated or tested for contact with mucosa, nor are they sterile, and the vaginal mucosa is thin, vascular, and absorptive. The purpose-made kits solve this by having the swab, not the paper, do the sampling, and by using indicator systems calibrated for the vaginal range. Two are worth naming for that reason. The AZO Vaginal pH Test and Diagnox Vaginox kits solve these problems.

The reading is only as good as the conditions it is taken under, and several everyday things drive it falsely alkaline. Do not test within roughly twelve to twenty-four hours of intercourse, because semen is strongly alkaline, near pH eight, and will corrupt the reading for hours.¹³ Do not test during menstruation, because blood buffers toward neutral.¹⁴ Do not test right after a bath, after douching, or after using any spermicide, lubricant, or intravaginal medication, all of which are buffered away from the vaginal range. Do not sample too deep, because cervical mucus is more alkaline than vaginal fluid and will pull the number up.¹⁵ Because a single reading is contamination-sensitive in exactly one direction, the asymmetry is worth remembering: a healthy acidic result is hard to fake and highly informative, while a single alkaline result is weaker evidence and should be repeated on a clean day before it is treated as a finding.

The aberrant ranges are not interchangeable, and each points toward a different set of organisms. A pH above 4.5, most often in the fives, is the classic signature of bacterial vaginosis, the polymicrobial anaerobic overgrowth anchored by *Gardnerella*. It is also the range in which trichomoniasis, the protozoal infection, tends to present.¹⁶ A pH pushed higher still, into the six-to-seven band, suggests a heavier bacterial disturbance or the atrophic, substrate-starved state of menopause, both of which have lost the acid barrier entirely. A reading that stays in the normal acidic range in a woman who nonetheless has symptoms points the other way, toward a yeast infection, because *Candida* tolerates and even favors a strongly acidic vagina and does not raise the pH the way the bacterial overgrowths do.¹⁷

Yeast deserves its own note, because it is the one major pathogen of this compartment that sits entirely outside the model this chapter is built on. Everything argued here about acid as architecture is a bacterial and viral story. It does not apply to *Candida*. *Candida* is acid-tolerant and acid-adapted. It grows perfectly well at pH four, the very range that suppresses *Gardnerella* and the ascending bacterial pathogens, and mild acidity is if anything nearer its own growth optimum than neutrality. So the lactic acid barrier that walls out the bacterial threats is not a barrier to yeast at all.

What controls *Candida* instead is direct antagonism and host state, not acid. The lactobacilli do suppress yeast, but through competition, occupancy of the adhesion sites, and secreted antifungal compounds, not through the pH they create.¹⁸ Above the bacterial community sit the host factors, and for yeast they dominate: elevated tissue glucose, immunosuppression, corticosteroids and high-estrogen states such as pregnancy.¹⁹ High estrogen raises *Candida* risk because it deposits vaginal glycogen (and the glucose *Candida* feeds on),²⁰ directly signals the fungus to become more adherent and invasive,²¹ and dampens local antifungal immunity.²² Three pushes in the same direction. *Candida* is a normal commensal carried asymptotically by a large fraction of women, so the question is almost never whether it was acquired but what let the resident population overgrow.²³ The glucose dependency is the point that touches our own protocol most directly, and it is the reason we feed maltose rather than glucose or glycogen. Free glucose in the lumen feeds yeast. A substrate strategy that flooded the vagina with free glucose, or with glycogen that host enzymes break down to glucose, could suppress the bacterial dysbiosis and feed a fungal one in the same

stroke. Maltose is the safer lever precisely because *crispatus* imports it largely intact rather than liberating a glucose pool the yeast could use, though the residual free glucose left by any given maltose dose is a formulation detail worth verifying rather than assuming.

Because acid does not touch it, you cannot acidify your way out of a yeast infection, but supporting the anti-fungal healthy vaginal bacteria is supportive. The treatment is antifungal rather than ecological. The azoles are the mainstay, and boric acid is the useful second agent, genuinely antifungal and especially valuable against the azole-resistant non-*albicans* species that the azoles miss.²⁴ But boric acid carries a real toxicity. It is contraindicated outright in pregnancy, where it is developmentally toxic and not mild at all. And it is a cytotoxic irritant whose effect on the mucosa compounds with repeated or prolonged use, which is the reason it has no place as a maintenance agent, because chronic exposure of the mucosa to a cytotoxic compound works directly against the delicate *Lactobacillus* community we are trying to restore.²⁵ Boric acid does not discriminate; it is hostile to the terrain we are rebuilding, not only to the yeast. For all three reasons I do not suggest it unless yeast is actually present and confirmed as the problem. The rule is simple: boric acid is a targeted response to a confirmed fungal problem, not a background tool.

Now hold those numbers against what we already know from the stool chapter. Colonic pH has drifted alkaline across the industrialized post antibiotic era.

I apply that same suspicion to the vaginal numbers, because the same forces act on this compartment and act harder. Antibiotics do not spare the vaginal *Lactobacilli*. Every course is another knockdown, another opening for the community to resettle into a less protective state, and the vaginal community is a near-monoculture with far less redundancy than the gut, so each knockdown costs proportionally more.²⁶ The refined-carbohydrate shift that starved the colonic fermenters also altered the glycogen economy that feeds the vaginal ones. Douching, spermicides, and a century of hygiene practice aimed at exactly this surface added insults the gut never suffered. So when we read 3.8 to 4.5 we should not read that average as the target. We should read it the way we learned to read the stool number: as a population that has already drifted, carrying a large fraction of women in *inert*-dominant and mixed states that acidify incompletely.²⁷ The norm we measure today is very likely more alkaline than the optimum. The optimum is the low end, and the low end is where *crispatus*, undisturbed and well-fed, actually takes a healthy woman. If I had to guess, I'd aim at 3.5 to 3.8† as the target range.

This also reframes menopause. Menopause creates a functionally dysbiotic vaginal microbiome, the same failure reached by a different road. In bacterial vaginosis the *Lactobacilli* are displaced, crowded out by an anaerobic bloom. In menopause they are starved out, their substrate withdrawn until they cannot hold the surface. The endpoint is the same in every way that matters clinically: *Lactobacilli* gone, lactic acid gone, pH climbing into the fives and sixes, the protective acid barrier lost, the epithelium exposed.

Estrogen drives glycogen deposition in the vaginal epithelium. The epithelial cells, and the enzymes working on them, liberate that glycogen down to maltose and glucose, and the lactobacilli ferment those sugars to lactic acid.²⁸ This is why the vaginal community is estrogen-clocked across a woman's life. It is quiet before puberty, robust and *crispatus*-dominant through the reproductive years when estrogen keeps the glycogen flowing, and it collapses at menopause when the estrogen and therefore the glycogen shut off.²⁹ The pH tracks the hormone because the fuel tracks the hormone.

The prepubescent vagina is where this logic gets tested, and at first glance it looks like a contradiction. The child has no meaningful estrogen, no glycogen, no lactobacillus dominance, and a pH sitting up around neutral, near seven.³⁰ By the numbers she looks exactly like the postmenopausal woman. Yet she is healthy. If alkalinity were the disease, this could not be true. The resolution is that acidity is not health itself, it is a defense, and a defense is only needed against a threat. The acidic lactobacillus barrier exists to guard against the sexually transmitted and ascending pathogens and the anaerobes of bacterial vaginosis, threats that arrive with reproductive-age exposure. The child is not facing that exposure, so the expensive acid moat is not yet built. The body installs it precisely when the threat arrives, and it uses the same hormone to do both jobs at once: estrogen switches on reproductive capacity and, in the same stroke, the acid defense that protects it. The defense turns on with the exposure it was made to counter. Until then the compartment is a low-biomass, quiet commensal state held by ordinary mucosal immunity rather than by a chemical barrier, and that is enough, because little is being asked of it.

In terms of the post menopausal woman, hormonal replacement is not within the scope of this book, but the loop I just described has a gap in it that we can reach without touching a hormone. Estrogen does two separable things. It supplies the fuel, and it maintains the wall, the epithelial thickness and mucus that give the organisms a surface to live on. We cannot rebuild the wall without the hormone.

The protocol

The fuel we can supply directly, from the outside, as has been done for thousands of years, and if we supply it in the right chemical form the fermentation loop can run on exogenous substrate even when the estrogen that normally arranges the fuel and the enzymes are gone.

The instinct is to supply glycogen, since glycogen is what estrogen deposits. That instinct is wrong on two counts.

First, *L. crispatus* does not carry the complete enzymatic machinery for glycogen degradation. It is partly a scavenger, living off the breakdown products that host enzymes and other organisms liberate.³¹ So raw glycogen is not a food *crispatus* can reliably open on its own.

Second, *Gardnerella vaginalis*, the anchor organism of the dysbiotic biofilm, is an efficient glycogen and starch degrader.³² Thus, supplying glycogen in a compromised vagina risks feeding the very biofilm-former you are trying to suppress.

The proper vaginal prebiotics are the malto-oligosaccharide series. Vaginal lactobacilli take up glucose and maltose well, while *Gardnerella* and *L. Iners* do not.^{33,34}

In the gut we feed for diversity. In the vagina the healthy state is nearly a monoculture. A vagina dominated top to bottom by a single well-behaved organism, *L. crispatus*, holding the pH at 3.5 to 3.8† with a continuous flood of lactic acid, is not an impoverished ecosystem that needs enriching. It is the target.

STD protection

A *crispatus* monoculture at pH 3.5 to 3.8† is the frontline defense against sexually transmitted and ascending infection, and the in vitro evidence names the pathogens it reaches. Against HIV-1 the lactic acid is potently virucidal, and it does the work in a way that vindicates the whole distinction between acid and pH: it is more than tenfold more potent than the short-chain fatty acids that dominate in bacterial vaginosis when compared at equal protonated-acid concentration, and it inactivates the virus not by rupturing the particle but by penetrating the viral envelope and core to disable the reverse transcriptase and degrade the RNA genome, an effect stronger than acetic acid or simple mineral-acid acidification at the identical pH.³⁶ Same pH, different acid, different result. That is the clearest possible confirmation that the agent is the lactic acid molecule itself and not merely the hydrogen ion concentration it produces. Against *Chlamydia trachomatis* the picture is the same: media conditioned by *crispatus* kills the organism in a time- and dose-dependent way, neutralizing the pH abolishes the killing entirely, and adding lactic acid back into plain medium reproduces it, while the hydrogen peroxide these organisms also make is present at concentrations too low to account for the effect.³⁷ *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* falls into the same list of organisms the acid inactivates.³⁸ The protonated lactic acid does not check what the pathogen is first; it collapses the internal pH of the anaerobes of bacterial vaginosis and of these ascending and sexually transmitted organisms alike, and the hydrogen peroxide, bacteriocins, and the sheer physical occupancy of the adhesion sites add to the acid rather than substitute for it.

A woman whose acid defense has failed, whether by dysbiosis or by the substrate starvation of menopause, is a woman whose specific chemical guard against HIV, chlamydia, and the ascending anaerobes has been lowered, and the documented association between the dysbiotic alkaline state and increased susceptibility to sexually transmitted infection is exactly what that lowered guard looks like in the epidemiology.⁴¹

The effects on the infant

The *crispatus*-dominant community is the founding inoculum a mother passes to her infant at vaginal birth, the seeding event described in the chapter on the initiations of the

microbiome.⁴² A woman restored to *crispatus* dominance before she conceives gives her child a protective passage rather than a dysbiotic one, a first microbial exposure that is acidic, low in pathogens, and free of the bacterial-vaginosis organisms a disturbed vagina would otherwise hand over at the threshold. The community that will actually found and hold the infant's gut comes mostly from elsewhere, her fecal reservoir at birth, and the milk that selectively feeds it afterward, but the birth canal is the gateway those founders pass through.⁴³

Clinical Pearl: *Given the current state of affairs, regardless of the absence of symptoms, all microbiomes of the body should be assumed to be in a subclinical state until proven otherwise.*

References

1. Wibowo MC, Yang Z, Borry M, et al. Reconstruction of ancient microbial genomes from the human gut. *Nature*. 2021;594:617-621. Schnorr SL, Candela M, Rampelli S, et al. Gut microbiome of the Hadza hunter-gatherers. *Nat Commun*. 2014;5:3654.
2. Warinner C, Rodrigues JFM, Vyas R, et al. Pathogens and host immunity in the ancient human oral cavity. *Nat Genet*. 2014;46(4):336-344.
3. Riddle JM. *Contraception and Abortion from the Ancient World to the Renaissance*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press; 1992. Himes NE. *Medical History of Contraception*. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins; 1936.
4. Calame W, Weseler AR, Viebke C, Flynn C, Siemensma AD. Gum arabic establishes prebiotic functionality in healthy human volunteers in a dose-dependent manner. *Br J Nutr*. 2008;100(6):1269-1275.
5. Sanz ML, Polemis N, Morales V, et al. In vitro investigation into the potential prebiotic activity of honey oligosaccharides. *J Agric Food Chem*. 2005;53(8):2914-2921. Schell KR, Fernandes KE, Shanahan E, et al. The potential of honey as a prebiotic food to re-engineer the gut microbiome toward a healthy state. *Front Nutr*. 2022;9:957932.
6. Temkin O, trans. *Soranus' Gynecology*. Baltimore: Johns Hopkins University Press; 1956. Riddle JM. *Contraception and Abortion from the Ancient World to the Renaissance*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press; 1992.
7. *Susruta Samhita*. *Uttaratantra*, chapter 38 (Yonivyapat Pratishedha). Sekar S, Mariappan S. Traditionally fermented biomedicines, arishtas and asavas from Ayurveda. *Indian J Tradit Knowl*. 2008;7(4):548-556.
8. Varro MT. *Rerum Rusticarum (On Agriculture)*. Book I, chapter 12. Hooper WD, Ash HB, trans. Loeb Classical Library. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press; 1934.
9. *Caraka Samhita*. *Vimana Sthana and Cikitsa Sthana*.

10. Ravel J, Gajer P, Abdo Z, et al. Vaginal microbiome of reproductive-age women. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 2011;108(Suppl 1):4680-4687. Amabebe E, Anumba DOC. The vaginal microenvironment: the physiologic role of lactobacilli. *Front Med*. 2018;5:181.
11. Ravel J, Gajer P, Abdo Z, et al. Vaginal microbiome of reproductive-age women. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 2011;108(Suppl 1):4680-4687. Hainer BL, Gibson MV. Vaginitis: diagnosis and treatment. *Am Fam Physician*. 2011;83(7):807-815.
12. Caillouette JC, Sharp CF Jr, Zimmerman GJ, Roy S. Vaginal pH as a marker for bacterial pathogens and menopausal status. *Am J Obstet Gynecol*. 1997;176(6):1270-1277. Auriemma RS, Scairati R, Del Vecchio G, et al. The vaginal microbiome: a long urogenital colonization throughout woman life. *Front Cell Infect Microbiol*. 2021;11:686167.
13. Owen DH, Katz DF. A review of the physical and chemical properties of human semen and the formulation of a semen simulant. *J Androl*. 2005;26(4):459-469.
14. Eschenbach DA, Thwin SS, Patton DL, et al. Influence of the normal menstrual cycle on vaginal tissue, discharge, and microflora. *Clin Infect Dis*. 2000;30(6):901-907. Wagner G, Ottesen B. Vaginal physiology during menstruation. *Ann Intern Med*. 1982;96(6 Pt 2):921-923.
15. Brannigan RE, Lipshultz LI. Sperm transport and capacitation. *Glob Libr Women's Med*. 2008.
16. Swidsinski A, Mendling W, Loening-Baucke V, et al. Adherent biofilms in bacterial vaginosis. *Obstet Gynecol*. 2005;106(5 Pt 1):1013-1023. Hainer BL, Gibson MV. Vaginitis: diagnosis and treatment. *Am Fam Physician*. 2011;83(7):807-815.
17. Lourenco A, Pedro NA, Salazar SB, Mira NP. Effect of acetic acid and lactic acid at low pH in growth and azole resistance of *Candida albicans* and *Candida glabrata*. *Front Microbiol*. 2019;9:3265.
18. Vazquez-Munoz R, Dongari-Bagtzoglou A. Anticandidal activities by *Lactobacillus* species: an update on mechanisms of action. *Front Oral Health*. 2021;2:689382.
19. Workowski KA, Bachmann LH, Chan PA, et al. Sexually transmitted infections treatment guidelines, 2021. *MMWR Recomm Rep*. 2021;70(4):1-187. Nyirjesy P, Sobel JD. Genital mycotic infections in patients with diabetes. *Postgrad Med*. 2013;125(3):33-46.
20. Amabebe E, Anumba DOC. The vaginal microenvironment: the physiologic role of lactobacilli. *Front Med*. 2018;5:181. Mirmonsef P, Hotton AL, Gilbert D, et al. Glycogen levels in undiluted genital fluid and their relationship to vaginal pH, estrogen, and progesterone. *PLoS One*. 2016;11(4):e0153553.

21. Skowronski R, Feldman D. Characterization of an estrogen-binding protein in the yeast *Candida albicans*. *Endocrinology*. 1989;124(4):1965-1972. Cheng G, Yeater KM, Hoyer LL. Cellular and molecular biology of *Candida albicans* estrogen response. *Eukaryot Cell*. 2006;5(1):180-191.
22. Fidel PL Jr, Cutright J, Steele C. Effects of reproductive hormones on experimental vaginal candidiasis. *Infect Immun*. 2000;68(2):651-657. Kumwenda P, Cottier F, Hendry AC, et al. Estrogen promotes innate immune evasion of *Candida albicans* through inactivation of the alternative complement system. *Cell Rep*. 2022;38(1):110183.
23. Workowski KA, Bachmann LH, Chan PA, et al. Sexually transmitted infections treatment guidelines, 2021. *MMWR Recomm Rep*. 2021;70(4):1-187.
24. Ray D, Goswami R, Banerjee U, et al. Prevalence of *Candida glabrata* and its response to boric acid vaginal suppositories in comparison with oral fluconazole in patients with diabetes and vulvovaginal candidiasis. *Diabetes Care*. 2007;30(2):312-317. Laerkeholm Muller M, Petersen CD, Saunte DML. Boric acid for the treatment of vaginitis: a systematic review. *Dermatol Ther*. 2024;2024:2807070.
25. Acs N, Banhidy F, Puho E, Czeizel AE. Teratogenic effects of vaginal boric acid treatment during pregnancy. *Int J Gynaecol Obstet*. 2006;93(1):55-56. Heindel JJ, Price CJ, Schwetz BA. The developmental toxicity of boric acid in mice, rats, and rabbits. *Environ Health Perspect*. 1994;102(Suppl 7):107-112. De Seta F, Schmidt M, Vu B, Essmann M, Larsen B. Antifungal mechanisms supporting boric acid therapy of *Candida* vaginitis. *J Antimicrob Chemother*. 2009;63(2):325-336.
26. Lehtoranta L, Ala-Jaakkola R, Laitila A, Maukonen J. Healthy vaginal microbiota and influence of probiotics across the female life span. *Front Microbiol*. 2022;13:819958.
27. Ravel J, Gajer P, Abdo Z, et al. Vaginal microbiome of reproductive-age women. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 2011;108(Suppl 1):4680-4687. Petrova MI, Reid G, Vaneechoutte M, Lebeer S. *Lactobacillus iners*: friend or foe? *Trends Microbiol*. 2017;25(3):182-191.
28. Amabebe E, Anumba DOC. The vaginal microenvironment: the physiologic role of lactobacilli. *Front Med*. 2018;5:181. Mirmonsef P, Gilbert D, Zariffard MR, et al. Free glycogen in vaginal fluids is associated with *Lactobacillus* colonization and low vaginal pH. *PLoS One*. 2014;9(7):e102467. Spear GT, French AL, Gilbert D, et al. Human alpha-amylase present in lower-genital-tract mucosal fluid processes glycogen to support vaginal colonization by *Lactobacillus*. *J Infect Dis*. 2014;210(7):1019-1028.
29. Auriemma RS, Sciarati R, Del Vecchio G, et al. The vaginal microbiome: a long urogenital colonization throughout woman life. *Front Cell Infect Microbiol*. 2021;11:686167.

30. Auriemma RS, Scairati R, Del Vecchio G, et al. The vaginal microbiome: a long urogenital colonization throughout woman life. *Front Cell Infect Microbiol.* 2021;11:686167.
31. Hertzberger R, May A, Kramer G, et al. Genetic elements orchestrating *Lactobacillus crispatus* glycogen metabolism in the vagina. *Int J Mol Sci.* 2022;23(10):5590. Jenkins DJ, Woolston BM, Hood-Pishchany MI, et al. Bacterial amylases enable glycogen degradation by the vaginal microbiome. *Nat Microbiol.* 2023;8:1641-1652. Spear GT, French AL, Gilbert D, et al. Human alpha-amylase present in lower-genital-tract mucosal fluid processes glycogen to support vaginal colonization by *Lactobacillus*. *J Infect Dis.* 2014;210(7):1019-1028.
32. Bhandari P, Tingley JP, Palmer DRJ, Abbott DW, Hill JE. Characterization of an alpha-glucosidase enzyme conserved in *Gardnerella* spp. isolated from the human vaginal microbiome. *J Bacteriol.* 2021;203(17):e00213-21. Bhandari P, Hill JE. Glycogen-degrading activities of catalytic domains of alpha-amylase and alpha-amylase-pullulanase enzymes conserved in *Gardnerella* spp. *J Bacteriol.* 2022;204(11):e00393-22.
33. Bhandari P, Hill JE. Transport and utilization of glycogen breakdown products by *Gardnerella* spp. from the human vaginal microbiome. *Microbiol Spectr.* 2023;11(2):e04435-22. Bhandari P, Hill JE. Ligand-binding properties of substrate binding proteins of a maltose uptake system in *Gardnerella swidsinskii*. *Microbiology (Reading).* 2026.
34. Macklaim JM, Gloor GB, Anukam KC, Cribby S, Reid G. At the crossroads of vaginal health and disease, the genome sequence of *Lactobacillus iners* AB-1. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA.* 2011;108(Suppl 1):4688-4695. Petrova MI, Reid G, Vaneechoutte M, Lebeer S. *Lactobacillus iners*: friend or foe? *Trends Microbiol.* 2017;25(3):182-191.
35. O'Hanlon DE, Moench TR, Cone RA. Vaginal pH and microbicidal lactic acid when lactobacilli dominate the microbiota. *PLoS One.* 2013;8(11):e80074. Aldunate M, Srbinovski D, Hearps AC, et al. Antimicrobial and immune modulatory effects of lactic acid and short chain fatty acids produced by vaginal microbiota associated with eubiosis and bacterial vaginosis. *Front Physiol.* 2015;6:164. O'Hanlon DE, Moench TR, Cone RA. In vaginal fluid, bacteria associated with bacterial vaginosis can be suppressed with lactic acid but not hydrogen peroxide. *BMC Infect Dis.* 2011;11:200.
36. Aldunate M, Tyssen D, Johnson A, et al. Vaginal concentrations of lactic acid potentially inactivate HIV. *J Antimicrob Chemother.* 2013;68(9):2015-2025. Tyssen D, Wang YY, Hayward JA, et al. Anti-HIV-1 activity of lactic acid in human cervicovaginal fluid. *mSphere.* 2018;3(4):e00055-18. Aldunate M, Tyssen D, Johnson A, et al. Lactic acid produced by optimal vaginal *Lactobacillus* spp. potentially and specifically inactivates HIV-1 in vitro by targeting the viral RNA genome and reverse transcriptase. *PLoS Pathog.* 2025;21:e1013594.

37. Gong Z, Luna Y, Yu P, Fan H. Lactobacilli inactivate *Chlamydia trachomatis* through lactic acid but not H₂O₂. *PLoS One*. 2014;9(9):e107758.
38. Graver MA, Wade JJ. The role of acidification in the inhibition of *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* by vaginal lactobacilli during anaerobic growth. *Ann Clin Microbiol Antimicrob*. 2011;10:8. Foschi C, Salvo M, Cevenini R, et al. Vaginal lactobacilli reduce *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* viability through multiple strategies: an in vitro study. *Front Cell Infect Microbiol*. 2017;7:502.
39. Conti C, Malacrino C, Mastromarino P. Inhibition of herpes simplex virus type 2 by vaginal lactobacilli. *J Physiol Pharmacol*. 2009;60(Suppl 6):19-26.
40. Gillet E, Meys JFA, Verstraelen H, et al. Bacterial vaginosis is associated with uterine cervical human papillomavirus infection: a meta-analysis. *BMC Infect Dis*. 2011;11:10. Guo YL, You K, Qiao J, Zhao YM, Geng L. Bacterial vaginosis is conducive to the persistence of HPV infection. *Int J STD AIDS*. 2012;23(8):581-584. Roden RBS, Lowy DR, Schiller JT. Papillomavirus is resistant to desiccation. *J Infect Dis*. 1997;176(4):1076-1079.
41. Atashili J, Poole C, Ndumbe PM, Adimora AA, Smith JS. Bacterial vaginosis and HIV acquisition: a meta-analysis of published studies. *AIDS*. 2008;22(12):1493-1501. Cohen CR, Lingappa JR, Baeten JM, et al. Bacterial vaginosis associated with increased risk of female-to-male HIV-1 transmission: a prospective cohort analysis among African couples. *PLoS Med*. 2012;9(6):e1001251.
42. Dominguez-Bello MG, Costello EK, Contreras M, et al. Delivery mode shapes the acquisition and structure of the initial microbiota across multiple body habitats in newborns. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 2010;107(26):11971-11975.
43. Ferretti P, Pasolli E, Tett A, et al. Mother-to-infant microbial transmission from different body sites shapes the developing infant gut microbiome. *Cell Host Microbe*. 2018;24(1):133-145.e5. Backhed F, Roswall J, Peng Y, et al. Dynamics and stabilization of the human gut microbiome during the first year of life. *Cell Host Microbe*. 2015;17(5):690-703. Thomson P, Medina DA, Garrido D. Human milk oligosaccharides and infant gut bifidobacteria: molecular strategies for their utilization. *Food Microbiol*. 2018;75:37-46.

Chapter 30, Saliva and Urine pH

In addition to measuring stool pH, we can also measure urine and saliva pH. Together these three give the practitioner cheap, daily, patient-readable chairside readings that triangulate acid-base balance, microbiome state, and bicarbonate-generating capacity.

Saliva pH is governed primarily by three things.

The first is flow. A dehydrated or stressed person has lower salivary flow, and low flow acidifies the saliva.¹ Autoimmune conditions can also lower flow, and flow generally declines with age.

The second is the state of the mouth and nighttime breathing. Bacteria and candida in the mouth can shift saliva pH in either direction, acidic or alkaline, depending on which organisms dominate and what they are fed. Mouth breathing at night dries the mouth and pushes the reading toward the acidic.

The third is bicarbonate-generating capacity. The salivary glands manufacture bicarbonate locally, using the enzyme carbonic anhydrase to convert carbon dioxide into bicarbonate at the duct.² This is the same machinery many other tissues use to make bicarbonate. When the glands fail to deliver bicarbonate even under stimulation, and flow and oral causes have been excluded, the question is whether the shared machinery itself is compromised.

Why this matters

Saliva pH has been shown to correlate with the components of metabolic syndrome. In a cross-sectional study of women, salivary pH fell as the number of metabolic syndrome components rose, with significant correlations to triglycerides, apolipoprotein B, plasma glucose, and waist circumference; the authors framed it as a promising but exploratory screening signal requiring confirmation.³ A separate observational study likewise found salivary buffer capacity correlated with serum triglycerides.⁴ It also helps validate success in reversing sleep airway disorders, and it helps determine whether an acidic urine reading is simply the result of a recent acidic meal or whether the diet is genuinely more acid-forming than is optimal.

Beyond these uses, saliva pH reports on the bicarbonate-generating system, which matters throughout the body. The kidneys age better with healthy bicarbonate status. And the mucous membranes depend on bicarbonate to expand and hydrate their mucin: when mucin is secreted, it must undergo an at least thousand-fold volume expansion to form normal protective mucus, and bicarbonate is what drives that expansion by stripping away the calcium and raising the pH that keep the mucin packed.^{5 6} Insufficient bicarbonate leaves the mucin only partly unfolded, producing the thick, poorly clearing mucus seen when this system fails.⁷ This applies to every mucin-covered surface, including the airway, the gastrointestinal tract, and the other exocrine-lined tissues.

Under chronic acid stress, the body draws on the carbonate reserve in bone, releasing it along with calcium. It also catabolizes muscle protein for the glutamine the kidney needs as a nitrogen source to excrete acid as ammonium. These contribute to the loss of bone density and muscle mass with age — the cost of buffering an acid load the kidney can no longer fully excrete.

Three sources of bicarbonate

The salivary machinery just described manufactures bicarbonate from carbon dioxide and water at the duct, and it is one of two ways the body acquires base. The kidney and the red cell use the same carbonic anhydrase route. This is the manufacturing source, and it is what a stimulated saliva reading interrogates.

The second source is metabolic. When the body fully oxidizes the anion of an organic acid (like citrates), the reaction consumes a proton, which is the same event as generating a bicarbonate. The organic anions that feed this route come from two places: the salts of dietary organic acids in tubers and other underground storage organs, citrate and malate chief among them, and the short-chain fatty acids produced when colonic bacteria ferment fiber. This is the mechanistic reason a plant-heavy diet is base-forming and shows up as the more alkaline urine noted earlier.

A healthy microbiome can generate a fair bit of the body's bicarbonate supply. Butyrate delivers bicarbonate to the colonocytes, propionate delivers to the liver while acetate reaches the systemic circulation intact helping alkalize muscle, heart, brain, and other peripheral tissue.

The third is supplementation. Bicarbonates can be taken orally, but enteric coated is suggested so as not to neutralize stomach acids. Consider our Bicarbamet product.

A brief word on urine pH before we pair it with saliva. Normal urine pH falls between 5.7 and 6.2 on a typical Western diet, with vegans reaching up to about 6.7. A reading below this range indicates the kidney is actively excreting an acid load, which can come from a single acid-forming meal or from a sustained dietary or metabolic acid burden. A reading above 6.8 is uncommon even on a vegan diet and warrants a second look, the most likely explanations are a urinary tract infection with urea-splitting organisms, advanced renal disease that has lost the ability to acidify urine. Two practical points. First, urine pH responds quickly to the last meal and only drifts with the long-term dietary pattern across weeks, so a single reading captures the meal more than the diet, trends matter more than spot values when assessing dietary acid load. Second, the sample must be tested fresh. Urine sitting for hours grows urea-splitting bacteria that alkalize the reading independently of anything happening in the patient, and a sample tested fresh at 6.5 and again two hours later at 7.5 reflects the specimen aging, not the patient changing.

How to test

The saliva sample is taken fasted, first thing in the morning, before food, before brushing with any dentifrice. Rinse the mouth with water then gently gnaw on the tongue to stimulate saliva release. This is the fluid we test. While the literature states that it sits at the acidic end of the normal band, roughly pH 6.3 to 6.7 in a healthy mouth⁸, I prefer a stimulated saliva pH over 7.5 showing excellent bicarbonate reserves[†].

Urine is tested in the morning mid stream.

The interpretation

Healthy urine pH with alkaline saliva. Urine pH of 6.0-6.5 indicates no active systemic acid load and a recent intake that was not notably acid-forming. The kidney is not excreting an acid burden. In a fasted sample, the alkaline saliva is local by the same logic, and it directs attention to the mouth. Normal urine should be read as the absence of an active acid load, not as proof that no compensated chronic state exists.

Acidic saliva with acidic urine. A urinary pH of below 6.0 and salivary pH of below 6.6 indicates an acid load that is not merely the last meal. Urine alone is easily acidified by a single day's intake, but saliva is not, so when both have turned acidic the load is likely durable rather than transient. The likely sources are dietary and metabolic rather than renal: an acid-forming diet heavy in animal protein and poor in base-forming produce, sustained dehydration, prolonged fasting, or hard physical exertion. The acidic urine also indicates a kidney that is acidifying competently, which argues against renal failure. Where the picture is a durable acid load, an oral bicarbonate taken with a full glass of water on rising and titrated upward to the response is a reasonable first measure, since it answers both the dehydration and the base deficit at once; the added water and the base together are also kidney-supportive when it is the morning urine that is running low.

Alkaline saliva with acidic urine. The acidic urine indicates a body that is acid-loaded and a kidney that is handling it. Against that background, the alkaline saliva (pH >6.8) cannot be reporting the systemic state, because the systemic state is acidic. The alkalinity must therefore be local, generated in the mouth by the ammonia-producing route described above. The alkalinity is an oral artifact to be traced to its source, and again, address the acidic urine with bicarbonates.

Alkaline saliva with alkaline urine. Both values >6.8 resolves nothing. Too many unrelated mechanisms converge on it: a base-forming diet, a urinary tract infection alkalinizing the urine, a true systemic alkalosis, or advanced kidney disease that has lost the ability to acidify the urine while uremic urea entering the saliva is broken to ammonia and raises its pH.⁹ It is a prompt to look elsewhere, not a finding.

Acidic saliva with alkaline urine. Acidic saliva with alkaline urine. The ordinary reading is a plant-heavy diet alkalinizing the urine over a mouth that is locally acidic, saliva tracks flow rate, flora, and recent intake far more than anything systemic. The alternatives are a urea-splitting infection pushing urine pH up with ammonia, or, less

often, a distal tubule that cannot acidify, where real systemic acidity sits beside a urine that won't turn acid. The pattern does not resolve on the strips. It is read as a signal to widen the inputs, not as a conclusion.

The role of zinc

Salivary bicarbonate production is zinc-dependent via the enzyme carbonic anhydrase, so zinc supplementation in those deficient may be able to restore its output.^{2 10} Check also for chronic hyperventilation, which lowers carbon dioxide and with it the substrate for bicarbonate generation; ask the client about the symptoms of low carbon dioxide described earlier.

Toxic metal interference

Toxic metals that displace zinc and occupy its catalytic site, cadmium and mercury among them, can suppress bicarbonate output directly, so a metal burden can hold the deficit in place no matter how much zinc is supplied. A bicarbonate deficit that resists correction, with zinc repleted and carbon dioxide adequate, suggest a toxic metal burden, and heavy metal chelation becomes the next consideration.†

Clinical pearl: *Keep it simple. pH strips should show green for urine (mildly acidic), blue for saliva (alkaline) and unchanged for stool (more acidic). What you'll typically find is green-blue for stool (alkaline) unchanged for urine (more acidic) and green for saliva (mildly acidic).*

References

1. Tremblay M, et al. Association between salivary pH and metabolic syndrome in women: a cross-sectional study. BMC Oral Health. 2012;12:40.
2. Yamaguchi M, et al. Effect of long-term zinc deficiency on salivary carbonic anhydrase activity and secretion in rat submandibular glands.
3. Tremblay M, et al. Association between salivary pH and metabolic syndrome in women: a cross-sectional study. BMC Oral Health. 2012;12:40.
4. Correlations between the properties of saliva and metabolic syndrome: a prospective observational study. Medicine (Baltimore). 2020.
5. Johansson MEV, Hansson GC. Mucus and mucins in diseases of the intestinal and respiratory tracts. J Intern Med. 2019.
6. Gustafsson JK, Ermund A, Ambort D, et al. Bicarbonate and functional CFTR channel are required for proper mucin secretion and link cystic fibrosis with its mucus phenotype. J Exp Med. 2012;209(7):1263–1272.

7. Garcia MAS, Yang N, Quinton PM. Normal mouse intestinal mucus release requires cystic fibrosis transmembrane regulator–dependent bicarbonate secretion. *J Clin Invest.* 2009;119(9):2613–2622.
8. Baliga S, Muglikar S, Kale R. Salivary pH: a diagnostic biomarker. *J Indian Soc Periodontol.* 2013;17(4):461–465. (Normal resting salivary pH 6.2–7.6, average 6.7; resting pH does not fall below 6.3; oral cavity pH maintained near neutrality at 6.7–7.3.)
9. Tomás I, Marinho JS, Limeres J, Santos MJ, Araújo L, Diz P. Salivary urea and ammonia in patients with kidney diseases. (In stage III chronic renal failure, salivary ammonia reached 5.7 mmol/L versus control 3.0 ± 0.5 mmol/L; salivary urea levels reflect the progression of renal dysfunction.)
10. Henkin RI, et al. Efficacy of exogenous zinc in restoring carbonic anhydrase VI synthesis and secretion in deficient patients.

Chapter 31, The Biomarker everyone has

The sinuses are the body's primary nitric oxide factory and that restoring sinus function can improve systemic NO. This chapter explains some of what NO deficiency costs.

Nitric oxide relaxes vascular smooth muscle, without it, blood pressure rises.¹ It inhibits platelet activation, adhesion, and aggregation, without it, clotting risk increases and atherosclerotic plaque progresses.² It mediates bronchodilation, without it, airways constrict.³ It modulates immune surveillance, without it, pathogen clearance slows and wound healing slow down.⁴ It supports mitochondrial function, without it, energy production falls.⁵ Every one of these consequences is documented. Every one of them is downstream of the same molecule. And every one of them improves when NO is restored.

The practitioner managing hypertension, clotting risk, exercise intolerance, asthma, slow wound healing, or chronic fatigue may be managing five separate diagnoses that share a single upstream cause, compromised sinuses.

A blockage you never felt

You may have heard of someone getting an emergency stent after a test found a 98 percent blockage in a coronary artery. Ninety-eight percent is, for practical purposes, closed, so why was that person walking around, why had they not had a heart attack? Because when a primary artery occludes slowly rather than suddenly, an otherwise healthy body grows collateral bypasses around it, small vessels that enlarge into working detours as the main channel narrows. The obstruction arrived gradually enough that the body routed around it before a catastrophic event.

That failsafe is not automatic. It requires, at minimum, three things: a low toxic-metal burden, a low chemical burden, combustion and tobacco toxins above all, along with the solvents, pollutants, and lipophilic compounds taken up later in the book, and, the reason it belongs in this chapter, adequate nitric oxide. The first two matter largely because they degrade the third: metals and chemicals injure the endothelium and uncouple the very enzyme that makes NO. The three requirements converge on one. A body that has lost its nitric oxide has lost the signal that builds the detour, and it meets a slow occlusion with no bypass waiting. The full account, how these collaterals form, and why the same burdens that clog the artery also disable the rescue, is the subject of a future chapter. Here the point is narrower: nitric oxide is not only about the tone of the vessel you already have. It is about whether you can grow the vessel you are going to need.

But NO deficiency has one consequence that most practitioners never discuss and that the patient can observe every morning without a lab draw.

Nocturnal penile tumescence

Every healthy male gets erections during sleep. Three to five per night, totaling ninety minutes to three hours, occurring during REM. The clinical term is nocturnal penile tumescence, NPT. It is not driven by arousal. The erection is not sexual. It is vascular maintenance. The erection is the only time the tissue receives a full arterial oxygen load.

Each episode floods the corpus cavernosum with oxygenated blood. The flaccid penis exists in a low-oxygen state. Without periodic erections, oxygen tension in the cavernosal tissue drops, and two things happen. Nitric oxide synthase, the enzyme that produces NO locally, requires oxygen as a substrate. Low oxygen means less NO. And cavernosal hypoxia drives collagen synthesis. Smooth muscle is replaced by collagen. Elastic tissue becomes fibrotic tissue.⁶

The penis shrinks. This is structural, not functional. Smooth muscle cells undergo apoptosis. Collagen is deposited. Adipocytes accumulate in the subtunical region.⁷ The tissue becomes less distensible. Erect volume decreases. The loss is measurable.

The cycle is degenerative. Less NO means fewer erections. Fewer erections means less oxygenation. Less oxygenation means more fibrosis and further suppression of NO synthase. Which means even fewer erections. Each year without adequate NPT advances the remodeling.

The timeline

NPT is present from birth. Frequency peaks at 13-14 as the hypothalamic-pituitary-testicular axis matures.⁸ During puberty, total tumescence time per night runs about 159 minutes.⁹ Peak frequency and rigidity hold through the late twenties. Total tumescence time begins declining after 30. By 55, both maximum circumference change and rate of change are significantly reduced. The majority of men over 60 do not achieve full rigidity during sleep even when they report normal waking intercourse.¹⁰

The conventional framing attributes this to aging. The mechanism says otherwise. The decline after 30 correlates with falling androgens, testosterone modulates central arousal pathways and NO synthase expression. But the decline after 55 reflects organic changes in the corpus cavernosum and penile vascular system.¹¹ That is fibrosis. That is the accumulated consequence of decades of declining oxygenation cycles.

The practitioner who reaches for testosterone replacement in a patient with declining morning erections without assessing endothelial function may be working downstream.

What NPT measures

NPT is the only biomarker that simultaneously reads endothelial function, NO bioavailability, autonomic balance, sleep architecture, and hormonal status. It requires no lab, no device, no appointment.

Absent or declining NPT tells the practitioner that the endothelium is not producing adequate NO, or the autonomic nervous system is not releasing parasympathetic control during REM, or sleep architecture is disrupted, or testosterone has dropped below the permissive threshold. The penile arteries are smaller than coronary arteries. They show dysfunction first. Erectile dysfunction precedes cardiovascular events by an average of three to five years.¹²

The same physiology in women

The clitoris is not a small external structure. It is a substantial erectile organ, two crura extending along the pubic rami, two vestibular bulbs flanking the vaginal canal, and a visible glans that represents a fraction of the total mass. The erectile tissue is homologous to the corpus cavernosum. It develops from the same embryological precursor. It engorges by the same mechanism: nitric oxide relaxes trabecular smooth muscle, arterial inflow increases, and the tissue fills with oxygenated blood.¹³

Women experience nocturnal genital engorgement during REM on the same schedule, three to five episodes per night, driven by the same parasympathetic outflow, independent of erotic content. Sleep lab studies using vaginal photoplethysmography have documented this since the 1970s.¹⁴ The clitoral crura engorge. The vestibular bulbs swell. Vaginal transudation increases. The entire vascular bed receives its arterial oxygen load.

The tissue-maintenance logic is identical. Clitoral erectile tissue is smooth muscle. Without periodic oxygenation, the same cascade applies: oxygen tension drops, NOS activity falls, TGF-beta1 drives collagen deposition, and smooth muscle is replaced by fibrotic tissue. The clinical consequence is well documented in another context, postmenopausal vulvovaginal atrophy. When estrogen declines, blood flow to genital tissue falls, and the result is thinning, loss of elasticity, dryness, and diminished sensation. The conventional framing treats this as hormonal. The mechanism is vascular. Estrogen supports NO synthase expression.¹⁵ Less estrogen means less NO. Less NO means less engorgement. Less engorgement means less oxygenation. The downstream tissue changes are the same ischemia-fibrosis pathway operating in the male cavernosum.†

The biomarker is less visually obvious but it is self-observable. Women who are paying attention notice the sensation of increased fullness or blood flow in the genital region on waking, their version of morning tumescence. When that sensation is absent or has faded over years, the same vascular and autonomic questions apply. Is NO production adequate? Is sinus function intact? Is sleep architecture preserved? Is the autonomic nervous system achieving parasympathetic dominance during REM?

The connection

Chronic low-grade endotoxemia, the first toxic output described in the Gram-negative chapter, impairs endothelial function systemically. The sinus chapter established that

restoring sinus function restores systemic NO. This chapter establishes what that restoration accomplishes at the tissue level: it interrupts the ischemia-fibrosis cycle in both sexes. Erections return. Genital engorgement normalizes. Oxygenation cycles resume. Smooth muscle is maintained. The fibrotic remodeling slows or reverses, consistent with data showing that PDE5 inhibitors, which sustain the NO/cGMP signal, increase the smooth muscle-to-collagen ratio in aging cavernosal tissue.¹⁶

Clinical pearl: *If morning tumescence isn't occurring even after sinus work and mold remediation, it may be microcirculation. Consider chelation and high voltage/micro-ampere exposure at night while sleeping.*

References

1. Moncada S, Higgs A. The L-arginine-nitric oxide pathway. *New England Journal of Medicine*. 1993;329(27):2002-2012.
2. Loscalzo J. Nitric oxide insufficiency, platelet activation, and arterial thrombosis. *Circulation Research*. 2001;88:756-762.
3. Ricciardolo FLM. Multiple roles of nitric oxide in the airways. *Thorax*. 2003;58(2):175-182.
4. Bogdan C. Nitric oxide and the immune response. *Nature Immunology*. 2001;2(10):907-916.
5. Brown GC, Borutaite V. Nitric oxide and mitochondrial respiration in the heart. *Cardiovascular Research*. 2007;75(2):283-290.
6. El-Sakka AI. Amelioration of penile fibrosis: myth or reality. *Journal of Andrology*. 2010;31(4):324-335.
7. Nehra A, Goldstein I, Pabby A, et al. Mechanisms of venous leakage: a prospective clinicopathological correlation of corporeal function and structure. *Journal of Urology*. 1996;156(4):1320-1329.
8. Horita H, Kumamoto Y, Aoki M, et al. Clinical significance and usefulness of measuring nocturnal penile tumescence in children. *Nihon Hinyokika Gakkai Zasshi*. 1991;82(12):1939-1946.
9. Karacan I, Rosenbloom AL, Williams RL. Some characteristics of nocturnal penile tumescence during puberty. *Pediatric Research*. 1972;6:529-537.
10. Schiavi RC, Schreiner-Engel P, White D, Mandeli J. The relationship between pituitary-gonadal function and sexual behavior in healthy aging men. *Psychosom Med*. 1991;53(4):363-374.

11. Yaman O, Tokatli Z, Ozdiler E, Anafarta K. Effect of aging on quality of nocturnal erections: evaluation with NPTR testing. *Int J Impot Res*. 2004;16(2):150-153.
12. Thompson IM, Tangen CM, Goodman PJ, et al. Erectile dysfunction and subsequent cardiovascular disease. *JAMA*. 2005;294(23):2996-3002.
13. O'Connell HE, Sanjeevan KV, Hutson JM. Anatomy of the clitoris. *Journal of Urology*. 2005;174(4):1189-1195.
14. Fisher C, Cohen HD, Schiavi RC, et al. Patterns of female sexual arousal during sleep and waking: vaginal thermo-conductance studies. *Archives of Sexual Behavior*. 1983;12(2):97-122.
15. Traish AM, Kim N, Min K, Munarriz R, Goldstein I. Role of androgens in female genital sexual arousal: receptor expression, structure, and function. *Fertility and Sterility*. 2002;77(Suppl 4):S11-S18.
16. Ferrini MG, Kovanecz I, Sanchez S, et al. Long-term continuous treatment with sildenafil ameliorates aging-related erectile dysfunction and the underlying corporal fibrosis in the rat. *Biology of Reproduction*. 2007;76(5):915-923.

Chapter 32, Nitric oxide and sexual endurance

Every man carries an ejaculatory set point, and the state of the erection may decide where that set point sits.

Waldinger's work reframed premature ejaculation from a psychological failing into a neurobiological trait. Ejaculation is a spinal reflex, gated centrally by serotonergic tone, firing when summed arousal crosses a threshold.^{1,2} A low set point means a man tolerates little arousal before the reflex discharges.

What that model leaves out is the mechanical state of the organ at the moment of stimulation. It treats the penis as a fixed sensor. It is not. Between flaccid and fully rigid the same tissue passes through mechanically distinct configurations, and I want to propose that those configurations are not sensory equals.†

There are two faces of an erection. The first is filling. Nitric oxide relaxes trabecular smooth muscle, the helicine arteries open, and the sinusoids engorge.³ This is the soft, warm, swollen state, larger but compliant. The second is trapping. The expanding sinusoids compress the subtunical venules against the tunica albuginea, outflow is occluded, intracavernosal pressure climbs, and the low-compliance tunica converts trapped volume into rigidity rather than further swelling.⁴ The very hardest phase adds ischiocavernosus contraction, driving pressure above systolic. In conventional physiology these are sequential stages of one event, and the tunica is a passive boundary throughout.⁴

The soft, filling-dominant erection and the hard, tunica-engaged erection differ in more than firmness. They differ in the sensory and reflex state of the organ.† Three mechanisms make this plausible.

First, tension changes transduction. A tunica stretched to rigidity loads the cutaneous and subcutaneous mechanoreceptors differently than slack, half-filled tissue, and a receptor already near the ceiling of its operating range reports change less steeply than one sitting in its most responsive band.

Second, full rigidity is a marker of a particular autonomic posture. Premature ejaculation travels with sympathetic overactivity; heart-rate-variability studies show a sympathetically tilted baseline in lifelong sufferers.⁵ The same sympathetic overdrive that shortens the fuse also opposes the parasympathetic, nitric-oxide-driven filling that produces rigidity. A man who reaches tunical hardness is, by that fact, a man whose autonomic balance is not in the overdriven state a low threshold requires.

Third, erectile reliability feeds back on arousal. Acquired premature ejaculation is frequently downstream of erectile insecurity. The man who is not confident the erection will hold rushes, consciously or not, to finish before it fails.⁶ A dependable, rigid erection removes that pressure. The hurried, anxious tilt relaxes, and the threshold rises with it.

This is where the sinus returns. The earlier chapters located a major share of the body's nitric oxide in the paranasal sinuses and traced what its loss costs downstream.⁷ Penile rigidity is nitric-oxide-limited at both ends. NO initiates the smooth-muscle relaxation that fills the sinusoids, and adequate filling is the precondition for the veno-occlusion that engages the tunica.^{3,4} A man running chronically low on NO, with obstructed sinuses and an endothelium starved of substrate, can often still achieve the soft, filling erection but stalls before tunical rigidity. He lives in the first state and rarely reaches the second. Restore the sinus, restore the NO supply, and the same man begins reaching the hard phase he had not touched in years, and with it, greater sexual endurance.†

Clinical pearl: *Some men are more inspired to improve their health when you explain that their sexual prowess will also recover.*

References

1. Waldinger MD. The neurobiological approach to premature ejaculation. J Urol. 2002;168(6):2359-2367.
2. Coolen LM, Allard J, Truitt WA, McKenna KE. Central regulation of ejaculation. Physiol Behav. 2004;83(2):203-215.
3. Ignarro LJ, Bush PA, Buga GM, Wood KS, Fukuto JM, Rajfer J. Nitric oxide and cyclic GMP formation upon electrical field stimulation cause relaxation of corpus cavernosum smooth muscle. Biochem Biophys Res Commun. 1990;170(2):843-850.
4. Dean RC, Lue TF. Physiology of penile erection and pathophysiology of erectile dysfunction. Urol Clin North Am. 2005;32(4):379-395.
5. Zorba OÜ, et al. Autonomic nervous system dysfunction in lifelong premature ejaculation: analysis of heart rate variability. Urology. 2012.
6. McMahon CG. The pathophysiology of acquired premature ejaculation. Transl Androl Urol. 2016;5(4):434-449.
7. Lundberg JO, Farkas-Szallasi T, Weitzberg E, et al. High nitric oxide production in human paranasal sinuses. Nat Med. 1995;1(4):370-373.

Chapter 33, Sleep Apnea - The Condition We Sleep Through

What apnea is

During an apnea event, the airway closes completely. Breathing stops. Oxygen saturation drops. The brain, registering the threat, triggers a sympathetic surge, heart rate spikes, blood pressure spikes, cortisol and catecholamines flood the system. The patient takes a few recovery breaths, drifts back toward sleep, and the cycle repeats. A patient with severe apnea goes through this cycle hundreds of times in a single night.

Hypopnea is the partial version, the airway narrows but does not fully close. Airflow is reduced, oxygen drops partially, and the brain responds with a lighter version of the same alarm. The distinction matters clinically because apnea and hypopnea produce different dream signatures, which becomes a diagnostic tool later in this chapter.†

The deep sleep bargain

The body faces a dilemma it cannot solve. As sleep deepens, muscle tone drops throughout the body, including the muscles that hold the airway open. The deeper the sleep, the more the throat relaxes, the more vulnerable the airway becomes. The body has two choices, and both are bad.

The first choice: prevent deep sleep from happening. The brain keeps sleep shallow enough that the airway muscles retain enough tone to stay open. The patient breathes adequately all night but never reaches the deep slow-wave and REM stages where tissue repair, growth hormone secretion, memory consolidation, and immune reconstitution occur. The patient sleeps eight hours and wakes exhausted, because the sleep that happened was not the sleep the body needed.

The second choice: allow deep sleep. The muscles relax fully, the airway collapses, oxygen drops, the brain fires a sympathetic alarm, the patient is yanked back to shallow sleep or waking, recovers, drifts deep again, collapses again, and cycles in and out of deep sleep all night, choking their way through the restorative stages in fragments too short to do their work. Again, the patient wakes exhausted.

Patients with apnea can alternate between both strategies across the night. The body oscillating between protecting the airway and protecting sleep depth, succeeding fully at neither. The result is a patient who is both oxygen-deprived and sleep-deprived simultaneously.

The mammalian hibernation reflex

The body interprets repeated overnight oxygen drops as a life-threatening situation. Mammalian biology has a response pattern for this, the hibernation reflex†, an ancient program designed to slow metabolism and conserve resources during periods when oxygen availability is unreliable.¹ The reflex was useful when the threat was a long

winter. It is not useful when the threat is the patient's own airway, repeating the same false signal every night for years.²

Testosterone drops in men.^{3,4} Thyroid output drops, reverse T3 rises, active T3 falls, the body deliberately slowing metabolism.⁵ Body fat accumulates and resists the patient's efforts to lose it. Libido reduces. Morning erections fail. Women develop severe PMS and menstrual cramping. Both sexes experience persistent fatigue that does not respond to rest, because the rest itself is being fragmented by events the patient is not aware of. Cognitive function dulls. Mood drops. Anxiety patterns establish around the chronic sympathetic activation. Cardiovascular risk rises substantially over years of untreated apnea^{6,7}, the repeated overnight blood pressure spikes are real cardiovascular events even though the patient is asleep through them.^{8,9,10,11,12}

A patient presenting with low testosterone, weight gain unresponsive to diet, fatigue, mood disturbance, and reduced libido is presenting with the classic downstream profile of untreated apnea. The conventional approach addresses each symptom separately, testosterone replacement, thyroid support, diet plans, antidepressants. None approaches the upstream cause. The apnea continues to fire its cycle every night, and the symptoms are regenerated faster than they can be addressed downstream.

The cascade is self-reinforcing. Weight gain narrows the airway, increasing apnea severity, increasing metabolic suppression, increasing weight gain.†

The moving goalposts

Conventional medicine measures apnea severity using the apnea-hypopnea index, the number of apnea or hypopnea events per hour of sleep. The AHI cutoffs for what counts as a clinical problem have drifted over the decades, and the drift has gone in one direction: the threshold for "normal" has been raised.

The current convention treats up to five events per hour as normal, meaning a patient who stops breathing four times per hour, every hour, for the entire night, is considered apnea-free by the standard scoring. Five to fifteen is mild, often considered subclinical. Fifteen to thirty is moderate. Above thirty is severe. A healthy patient has zero events per hour.† The body is not designed to stop breathing during sleep at any rate.

Two kinds of apnea: obstruction and drive

Apnea fails in two fundamentally different ways, and the distinction governs everything downstream. In obstructive apnea the airway physically closes, the muscles relax, tissue collapses inward, and air cannot pass even though the body is still trying to breathe. In central apnea the airway is open and unobstructed, but the brain intermittently stops sending the signal to breathe at all. The two look alike on an overnight oxygen trace and feel alike to the patient, but they fail at opposite ends of the same system: one at the pipe, one at the pump. Most apnea is obstructive, and obstructive apnea fails at one of three locations. A patient may fail at one location, at

two, or at all three at once, and obstructive and central failure can coexist in the same patient as a mixed picture.

The three obstructive locations

The sinuses. A patient whose sinuses are chronically inflamed, congested, or colonized by pathogenic organisms either experiences hypopnea or breathes through the mouth during sleep. Mouth breathing collapses the soft palate and narrows the pharyngeal airway, the mechanical prerequisite for obstruction.^{13,14} Beyond the mechanical effect, toxins and inflammatory products draining from the sinuses into the throat cause or add to airway inflammation directly. On inspection, the marker is the anterior head of the inferior turbinates, swollen and boggy, they narrow the nasal valve where the airway is already at its tightest. What the patient experiences is one or both nostrils blocking, often worse lying down. A nasal strip serves as both a crude test and a stopgap: if pulling the nostrils open with a strip restores easy nasal breathing, the obstruction is nasal, and the strip itself buys airflow while the underlying sinus inflammation is addressed.

The tongue. The genioglossus, the muscle that holds the tongue forward, can fail through age-related loss of tone or through innervation damage. Mold exposure deserves specific mention here. Mycotoxins reaching peripheral nerves disrupt the signaling that maintains airway tone, producing an apnea component that is downstream of neurological compromise rather than structural tissue. The tongue can also swell from inflammation or grow too large for the oral cavity from fat deposits. On inspection, a swollen tongue with scalloping along its lateral edges, the imprint of the teeth it is pressed against, signals a tongue crowding its cavity. What the patient experiences is an airway that closes specifically on the back, when the relaxed tongue falls backward into the airway under its own weight.

The soft palate. This structure vibrates against partially obstructed airflow, which is the sound of snoring. The visual correlate is the Mallampati classification, which grades how much the soft palate and uvula are crowded by the base of the tongue; a high Mallampati score marks oropharyngeal crowding that predisposes to collapse. What the patient experiences, or more often, what the bed partner reports, is snoring. But snoring is not early-stage apnea, it is a location signal. A patient with tongue-driven or sinus-driven apnea may not snore at all. The absence of snoring does not rule out apnea.

Central apnea: when the airway is open

Obstructive apnea is a mechanical problem, the pipe closes. Central apnea is a control problem, the pump stops. The airway is open, the muscles are not collapsing, and breathing still ceases, because the brainstem briefly stops issuing the command to breathe. The rhythm of breathing is set by carbon dioxide: central chemoreceptors hold ventilation steady against a target CO_2 , and when CO_2 falls below a lower limit, the apneic threshold, the drive to breathe switches off until CO_2 climbs back.† Chronic hyperventilation is what makes this dangerous in the patient who is otherwise well. It

keeps CO₂ chronically low, sitting close to the threshold, with bicarbonate buffering destabilized by the constant overbreathing, so that small ordinary dips during sleep are enough to tip the system into a central pause.[†]

Because the failure is in drive and buffering rather than tissue, the workup is different. Position, palate, tongue, and turbinates are beside the point, there is nothing obstructing. The relevant question is acid-base status: resting and stimulated saliva and urine pH, and blood CO₂ where it can be obtained. That workup is the subject of the saliva and urine pH chapter, and a bicarbonate picture that resists correction there is what points back to this form of apnea.

Four upstream causes

These are the drivers of the obstructive form, why the airway is narrow or collapsible before sleep ever begins.

The gift of speech. The human larynx sits lower in the throat than the larynx of any other mammal, the anatomical accommodation that makes human speech possible. The trade-off is a more collapsible airway. Other mammals do not have apnea the way humans do. We pay for language with a baseline airway vulnerability that the other upstream causes amplify. This is the one we cannot fix.

Congenital deformity. Narrow palate, deviated septum, enlarged tonsils or adenoids, structural narrowing at any point. These patients may have had apnea since childhood without diagnosis. For some, palate expansion through dental orthotics widens the upper palate over time, expanding the nasal airway and improving upper airway geometry. The intervention is real and can be substantial for the right patient. It also has to be done correctly, an experienced practitioner is essential. Done wrong, it produces dental problems, jaw discomfort, or asymmetric expansion. The process moves teeth with some discomfort during the active phase.

Weak muscles. Age and innervation damage. Tongue exercises, protocols exist for strengthening the genioglossal muscle through targeted daily work, and electrical stimulation via TENS or EMS units applied to the relevant muscle groups can both support tone. But the first move is not muscle-strengthening. The first move is addressing inflammation. A patient exercising the genioglossus while inflammation continues to compromise the airway is doing real work against an ongoing insult. Reduce the inflammation first. The order matters.

Position matters as much as muscle tone. When the tongue is the primary failure point, the supine position is the enemy, lying on the back lets the relaxed tongue fall backward into the airway under its own weight. Apnea with primary tongue involvement responds very well to positional therapy, which simply keeps the patient off their back. The Night Shift belt, which requires a prescription, vibrates to prompt a position change when the patient rolls supine. Mechanical aids such as specialized backpacks accomplish the

same end by making back-sleeping physically uncomfortable. Both keep the tongue from falling backward and obstructing the airway.

The caveat is that positional therapy is location-specific, not universal. When the apnea is primarily sinus-driven rather than tongue-driven, side-sleeping or sleeping prone without elevation can worsen the obstruction by impairing sinus drainage, and the practitioner who applies positional therapy indiscriminately can make a sinus patient worse. Match the intervention to the failure location.

Inflammation. Inflammation in airway tissue, sinus, throat, palate, narrows the airway by adding swelling to whatever the baseline anatomy already is. Sources: mold and bacterial exposure, food sensitivities, alcohol close to bedtime, environmental irritants, chronic infection. The throat-painting protocol taught in the tonsils chapter belongs in this workup, because it works directly on two of the three obstructive locations. Palatine and lingual tonsils swollen with biofilm crowd the oropharynx, adding to the soft-palate and tongue-base collapse that drives obstruction. Clearing that burden opens two of the three locations at once; the sinus is the third, addressed by the sinus protocol. Reduce the inflammation first, and here that means the throat as much as the sinus. This is the first move in nearly every apnea workup because it touches all three anatomical locations and because it overlaps substantially with the sinus restoration work of the sinus chapter.

Dream analysis as your personal sleep lab

The diagnostic tool the practitioner has, given that the patient cannot witness their own apnea, is dream content. Dreams reflect the physiological state of the brain during sleep, and apnea events produce characteristic signatures.

Violent and suffocation dreams point to apnea.† A patient who reports recurring dreams of being attacked, fighting, drowning, being buried alive, or smothered is reporting the dream signature of frank apnea events.† The brain, registering the airway closure and oxygen drop, generates dream content matching the physiological reality.† The patient is in literal respiratory danger, and the dreaming mind produces imagery that reflects it.

Frustrating dreams point to hypopnea.† The patient who dreams of running, climbing, being stuck, searching for something that cannot be found, dialing a phone that will not connect, these are the dream signatures of partial airway compromise. The brain is registering effort without adequate result, and the dream content mirrors it. It is possible to have apnea without violent dreams, and violent dreams without apnea, but the correlation is strong enough to warrant attention.

Pounding heart on waking points to apnea, the sympathetic surge from an oxygen desaturation event that broke through to waking. Sweat on the sheets or pillowcase (as long as the sleeping area is not overly hot) point to apnea, the sympathetic activation produces night sweats independent of hormonal status. Choking or gasping awakening

is severe apnea breaking through. Waking unrefreshed after adequate sleep hours. Morning headaches from overnight CO₂ retention.

The wrong question is "how do you sleep?" The patient may not know. The right questions are about things the patient can answer, dream content, morning symptoms, daytime patterns. A patient who falls asleep while driving has a problem that transcends willpower.

The sinus connection

CPAP addresses the downstream obstruction. It does not address the upstream cause. Sinus restoration has reduced or eliminated apnea without CPAP in cases I have observed, by restoring nasal airflow and removing the mouth-breathing trigger.† The observation base is small but the mechanical logic is direct.

The practitioner evaluating a patient with fatigue, weight gain, low testosterone, and poor sleep should consider apnea early, and should evaluate the sinuses as part of the apnea workup. If the answer is sinus dysfunction, CPAP is a workaround, not a solution. CPAP also carries low compliance, many patients find it intolerable and abandon it. An upstream intervention that removes the need for the device is preferable to a downstream device the patient will not use.

Severe obstructive sleep apnea can drive oxygen saturation (SpO₂) down significantly. In clinical practice, desaturations into the 70s and 80s percent are commonly seen during severe apnea events. This is an enormous amount of stress on the heart and brain that can be happening many times a night.

The tonsil connection

The tonsils and adenoids deserve to be named as a structural cause in their own right, not folded into inflammation. Swollen palatine and lingual tonsils crowd the oropharynx, adding to the soft-palate and tongue-base collapse, two of the three obstruction sites at once. The adenoid sits higher, in the nasopharynx, where it blocks nasal airflow and forces mouth breathing, which feeds directly into the sinus pathway above. So the lymphoid ring straddles both the nasal and the oropharyngeal routes to obstruction, and clearing it relieves pressure on both.

This matters most in children. Adenotonsillar hypertrophy is the leading structural cause of pediatric sleep apnea, and the standard answer is to remove the tissue surgically. Sometimes, that is genuinely necessary, very large tonsils, severe apnea, a child who cannot wait. But the reflex to cut should not skip the question this book keeps asking: can the burden be reduced without the knife first? Much of what crowds the airway in a chronically infected tonsil is biofilm and swelling, and the throat-painting protocol of the tonsil chapter is aimed at exactly that. Reduce the biofilm, let the tissue settle toward its true size, and in the milder cases the airway may open without surgery, and without another course of the antibiotics that started so much of this. The severe case still goes

to the surgeon; the borderline case may not have to. As with the sinus, the operation treats the obstruction; restoring the tissue treats the cause.

Clinical pearl: *If the patient shares a bed with their partner, they may be able to confirm snoring or apnea. Alternately, inexpensive wearable measurement devices can track nighttime O2 levels. Elevated nighttime heart rates are also indicative of apnic events.*

References

1. Heldmaier G, Ortmann S, Elvert R. Natural hypometabolism during hibernation and daily torpor in mammals. *Respir Physiol Neurobiol*. 2004;141(3):317-329.
2. Dempsey JA, Veasey SC, Morgan BJ, O'Donnell CP. Pathophysiology of sleep apnea. *Physiol Rev*. 2010;90(1):47-112.
3. Wittert G. *Asian J Androl*. 2014;16(2):262-265.
4. Luboshitzky R, et al. Decreased pituitary-gonadal secretion in men with obstructive sleep apnea. *Journal of Clinical Endocrinology and Metabolism*. 2002;87(7):3394-3398.
5. Meston N, Davies RJ, Mullins R, et al. Endocrine effects of nasal continuous positive airway pressure in male patients with obstructive sleep apnoea. *J Intern Med*. 2003;254(5):447-454.
6. Javaheri S, Barbe F, Campos-Rodriguez F, et al. Sleep apnea: types, mechanisms, and clinical cardiovascular consequences. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2017;69(7):841-858.
7. Yeghiazarians Y, Jneid H, Engelman DT, et al. Obstructive sleep apnea and cardiovascular disease: a scientific statement from the American Heart Association. *Circulation*. 2021;144(3):e56-e67.
8. Luboshitzky R, Lavie L, Shen-Orr Z, Herer P. Altered luteinizing hormone and testosterone secretion in middle-aged obese men with obstructive sleep apnea. *Obes Res*. 2005;13(4):780-786.
9. Gambineri A, Pelusi C, Pasquali R. Testosterone levels in obese male patients with obstructive sleep apnea syndrome. *J Endocrinol Invest*. 2003;26(6):493-498.
10. Van Cauter E, Plat L. Physiology of growth hormone secretion during sleep. *J Pediatr*. 1996;128(5 Pt 2):S32-S37.
11. Somers VK, Dyken ME, Clary MP, Abboud FM. Sympathetic neural mechanisms in obstructive sleep apnea. *J Clin Invest*. 1995;96(4):1897-1904.
12. Ip MS, Lam B, Ng MM, et al. Obstructive sleep apnea is independently associated with insulin resistance. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2002;165(5):670-676.
13. Verse T, Pirsig W. Impact of impaired nasal breathing on sleep-disordered breathing. *Sleep Breath*. 2003;7(2):63-76.
14. Fitzpatrick MF, McLean H, Urton AM, et al. Effect of nasal or oral breathing route on upper airway resistance during sleep. *Eur Respir J*. 2003;22(5):827-832.

Chapter 34, The order of Operations

Detoxification is a complex event. The framework taught here is a simplification, but it is a useful framework for clinical interventions.

The first steps of detoxification happen inside the cell. Phase 1 modifies the toxin molecule, exposing or adding a reactive chemical handle. Phase 2 attaches a water-soluble tag to that handle, usually glucuronic acid, glutathione, or sulfate. Phase 3 pumps the tagged molecule out of the cell through ATP-powered transporter proteins in the cell membrane. Liver hepatocytes also conjugate bile acids with glycine or taurine through a separate pathway that bypasses Phase 1 but shares the same Phase 3 exit.

What happens after the conjugated toxin exits the cell differs depending on whether it exits through bile or urine, and each route has its own failure modes. A more complete exposition on these later aspects will follow in subsequent chapters.

These phases must be operational in reverse order. Phase 3 before Phase 2. Phase 2 before Phase 1. Each phase creates a product that the next phase must handle, and if the next phase cannot handle it, the product accumulates inside the cell. The accumulation is often more dangerous than the original toxin.

Why Phase 3 must come first

Phase 3 is the exit door of the cell. The ABC transporter proteins, including P-glycoprotein and the MRP family, use ATP to pump conjugated toxins out of the cell. Without functional Phase 3, conjugated metabolites have no way to leave. They are water-soluble, bulky molecules that cannot passively diffuse back through the lipid membrane the way the original fat-soluble toxin entered.

This is well documented. Reduced P-glycoprotein expression in the brain has been directly linked to Alzheimer's disease.¹ In the gut, impaired P-glycoprotein function is associated with inflammatory bowel disease.² When MRP1 function is inhibited experimentally, intracellular glutathione export fails and toxic substrates build up inside the cell.³

Phase 3 is the only phase with a direct per-molecule energy cost. Phase 1 and Phase 2 are enzymatic reactions driven by electron donors and conjugation substrates. Phase 3 physically pumps molecules against a concentration gradient. Every molecule it moves costs one unit of ATP. When cellular ATP production is compromised, Phase 3 is the first detoxification phase to fail.

It is important to at least estimate the status of the patient's Phase 3 pumps before increasing Phase 1 and 2.† A practical screening indicator for cellular ATP status is serum CO₂ on a standard metabolic panel.† CO₂ is a byproduct of the Krebs cycle, the same cycle that generates the electron carriers driving mitochondrial ATP synthesis. When mitochondrial output drops, CO₂ production drops with it. A serum CO₂ below 27

suggests underperforming mitochondria.† This is not a precise laboratory measurement of ATP, but it is a clinically useful signal that a practitioner can read off a basic blood panel.

Why Phase 2 must come before Phase 1

Phase 1 enzymes, primarily the cytochrome P450 family, convert a stable toxin into a reactive intermediate that is often more toxic than the parent compound.⁴ This intermediate now has a chemical handle that Phase 2 can grab to attach the conjugation tag. But if Phase 2 cannot keep pace, those electrophilic intermediates accumulate and attack DNA, cell membranes, and proteins. This can drive multiple chemical sensitivities (MCS).†

The body is designed to prevent this. The aryl hydrocarbon receptor, which activates many Phase 1 enzymes, also activates the Nrf2 pathway, which upregulates Phase 2.^{5,8} The system is meant to run as a coordinated unit. But coordination fails when Phase 2 substrates are depleted. Glucuronic acid, glutathione, and sulfate are all consumed by the conjugation reaction.^{7,6} Under heavy toxic load, the cell runs out of conjugation substrate before it runs out of Phase 1 capacity. The cell fills with more reactive toxins than it started with, and these can be genotoxic.

Phase 2 failure also disables Phase 3 indirectly. The MRP transporters strongly prefer conjugated substrates, particularly glutathione conjugates and glucuronide conjugates. They have limited ability to recognize and move the unconjugated intermediates that Phase 1 produces. So when Phase 2 fails, Phase 3 sits idle even if its transporters are intact, because the cargo is in the wrong format. Phase 2 is the gatekeeper between activation and efflux. Its failure creates both problems at once: reactive intermediates accumulating upstream, and export capacity going unused downstream. Consider our Xenoplex product.

Bile acid conjugation: a parallel system using the same exit door

The liver performs another conjugation that is not part of Phase 1 or Phase 2 but shares the same dependence on Phase 3 transport. Before bile acids are secreted into bile, hepatocytes conjugate them with the amino acids glycine or taurine. This conjugation does not require Phase 1 activation. The bile acid is synthesized from cholesterol inside the hepatocyte, conjugated by the enzyme bile acid-CoA:amino acid N-acyltransferase, and then pumped out of the cell by the bile salt export pump, an ABC transporter in the same family as the Phase 3 pumps. Bile acid conjugation makes the bile acid more water-soluble and less toxic to the cells lining the biliary tract.

Intracellular toxification

When Phase 1 outruns Phase 2 and Phase 2 outruns Phase 3, the cell accumulates two categories of toxic material simultaneously. Reactive intermediates that were never conjugated are attacking internal structures. Conjugated metabolites that were successfully tagged have no exit and are consuming space and resources. The cell is being poisoned by its own detoxification machinery.

Persistent toxins are the clearest example of this pattern. Dioxins, PCBs, DDT, and mycotoxins actively overdrive Phase 1 through the aryl hydrocarbon receptor while suppressing Phases 2 and 3.⁵ The toxin genetically reprograms the detoxification machinery to favor the one phase that generates dangerous intermediates while shutting down the two phases that would eliminate them. The toxin creates the imbalance that prevents its own removal.

The two prerequisites for chemical detox

Two conditions must be in place before chemical detoxification can proceed safely. The first is intracellular: mitochondria must produce enough ATP to power Phase 3 transport. The second is luminal: the gut microbiome must not be undoing the liver's conjugation work faster than the liver can perform it.

Metal toxicity is a common reason for compromised mitochondrial ATP production in these patient populations. Mercury, lead, cadmium, arsenic, and gadolinium displace iron-sulfur clusters in the electron transport chain, bind thiol groups on the enzymes of Complexes I through IV, and uncouple oxidative phosphorylation so that mitochondria consume oxygen without producing proportional ATP.^{9,10} The downstream consequence is predictable: low ATP disables Phase 3 transporters, and disabled Phase 3 traps conjugated and unconjugated toxins inside cells.

The second prerequisite operates in the gut lumen. Phase 2 conjugation attaches a tag to a toxin, glucuronide, sulfate, or glutathione, and the liver excretes it into bile for intestinal elimination. But dysbiotic gut bacteria produce enzymes that cleave these tags: beta-glucuronidase strips glucuronide conjugates, sulfatases strip sulfate conjugates, and peptidases and transpeptidases dismantle glutathione conjugates.¹¹ The toxin reverts to its fat-soluble form, is reabsorbed through the intestinal wall, and returns to the liver via the portal circulation. This is enterohepatic recirculation. The body did all the work of Phase 1 activation, Phase 2 conjugation, and biliary excretion, only to have a gut bacterium undo the conjugation and send the toxin back to the liver for another round. Each pass consumes conjugation substrates and can generate another round of reactive intermediates. The bacteria do this for their own metabolic benefit, not yours: some use the released conjugant as a nutrient, others use it in energy metabolism. The same deconjugation logic extends to bile itself, where bacterial bile salt hydrolases strip the glycine and taurine tags the liver attached to bile acids.

A third consideration links the two prerequisites together. Glutathione, the primary conjugate for many chemical toxins, forms bonds with arsenic and mercury as well. When glutathione-metal conjugates reach a dysbiotic gut, bacterial deconjugation

releases the metal back into circulation. This is the practical asymmetry every clinician should remember: metal chelators do not cause chemical redistribution, but chemical detoxification can cause metal redistribution if the gut is alkaline and dysbiotic. The two prerequisites are not independent. Skipping the gut work while pulling on chemicals can mobilize metals the patient cannot clear.

Intracellular metal detoxification improves mitochondrial ATP, which can often be seen as a rise in CO₂ on bloodwork. Improved ATP improves Phase 3. In the gut, microbiome management reduces bacterial deconjugation activity and protects the liver's output from being undone.

Both must be in place before chemical detoxification begins. Phase 3 capacity must be equal to or greater than Phase 2 output, and Phase 2 capacity must be equal to or greater than Phase 1 output.

The practitioner who understands this will never start a detox protocol with Phase 1 stimulation.

Why the microbiome comes first in practice

The biochemical logic argues for metals first. Metal burden suppresses the mitochondrial energy production that Phase 3 depends on, and without Phase 3, nothing downstream works. But the clinical reality argues for beginning with the microbiome.

Microbiome restoration produces visible results quickly. A patient watching their stool pH drop from 7.5 to 6.2 over two to three weeks and whose digestion improves has evidence the work is real. That early win builds the trust and buy-in that carries the patient through what may be months of chelation, which produces less visible feedback and requires more patience from everyone involved.

The microbiome work also establishes one of the two prerequisites for chemical detox while the metals work establishes the other. By the time chelation has sufficiently restored mitochondrial ATP production, the gut is already prepared. The patient does not face a second waiting period before chemical detox can begin. The two prerequisites were built in parallel, with the faster one started first.

Clinical pearl: Another reason to do metal detox before chemical is because if someone is highly metal toxic, then the glutathione in a chemical detox protocol (which is a weak chelator) can redistribute metals.

References

1. van Assema DME, Lubberink M, Bauer M, et al. Blood-brain barrier P-glycoprotein function in Alzheimer's disease. *Brain*. 2012;135(1):181-189.

2. Ho GT, Moodie FM, Satsangi J. Multidrug resistance 1 gene (P-glycoprotein 170): an important determinant in gastrointestinal disease? *Gut*. 2003;52(5):759-766.
3. Lorico A, Rappa G, Finch RA, Yang D, Flavell RA, Sartorelli AC. Disruption of the murine MRP (multidrug resistance protein) gene leads to increased sensitivity to etoposide (VP-16) and increased levels of glutathione. *Cancer Res*. 1997;57(23):5238-5242.
4. Park BK, Kitteringham NR, Maggs JL, Pirmohamed M, Williams DP. The role of metabolic activation in drug-induced hepatotoxicity. *Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol*. 2005;45:177-202.
5. Denison MS, Nagy SR. Activation of the aryl hydrocarbon receptor by structurally diverse exogenous and endogenous chemicals. *Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol*. 2003;43:309-334.
6. Lu SC. Glutathione synthesis. *Biochim Biophys Acta*. 2013;1830(5):3143-3153.
7. Tukey RH, Strassburg CP. Human UDP-glucuronosyltransferases: metabolism, expression, and disease. *Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol*. 2000;40:581-616.
8. Nguyen T, Nioi P, Bhatt CB. The Nrf2-antioxidant response element signaling pathway and its activation by oxidative stress. *J Biol Chem*. 2009;284(20):13291-13295.
9. Jomova K, Valko M. Advances in metal-induced oxidative stress and human disease. *Toxicology*. 2011;283(2-3):65-87.
10. Clarkson TW, Magos L. The toxicology of mercury and its chemical compounds. *Crit Rev Toxicol*. 2006;36(8):609-662.
11. Kim DH, Jin YH. Intestinal bacterial beta-glucuronidase activity of patients with colon cancer. *Arch Pharm Res*. 2001;24(6):564-567.

Chapter 35, Lymphatics, The forgotten circulation

Before we get to the teachings that will start mobilizing chelated metals and conjugated chemicals, we must also address the body's drainage system, the lymphatic circulation. The body has two circulatory systems. The one most people know about has a pump. The heart moves blood through arteries and veins in a continuous loop, and that loop runs whether you are sprinting or sleeping. The second system has no pump. The lymphatic system carries waste, dead cells, immune complexes, metabolic byproducts, and toxins conjugated for removal, and it moves only when the body moves. This creates a problem that most detoxification protocols ignore entirely.

A practitioner can design the right protocol. The patient can take the right products at the right doses in the right sequence. The mobilization chemistry can be working exactly as intended. But if the transport system that carries mobilized material from tissue to exit is static, the material has nowhere to go. It sits. It recirculates. It deposits somewhere else. The patient feels worse, the practitioner adjusts the protocol, and neither one identifies the actual bottleneck, which is not chemical but mechanical.

The lymphatic system depends on skeletal muscle contraction against lymphatic vessels, respiratory pressure changes from breathing, and the one-way valves inside lymphatic vessels that prevent backflow. Without regular muscle contraction, lymphatic fluid accumulates. Proteins that should have been cleared remain in the interstitial space. Immune cells that finished their work sit in nodes that become congested rather than active. The system designed to remove what does not belong begins to hold what does not belong.

What does lymphatic congestion look like in a patient? Puffiness, especially in the morning, that improves with movement. Fluid retention that does not fully respond to dietary changes. Stiffness on waking that loosens within the first hour of activity. Chronic sinus congestion that does not resolve with antimicrobials. Symptoms that reliably improve with exercise and reliably return with sedentary periods. Tender or swollen lymph nodes that persist without acute infection. A general heaviness that lifts when the patient is physically active and settles back when they stop.

The storage battery

The connective tissue that surrounds every organ, fills the spaces between cells, and forms the structural matrix of the body is not inert scaffolding. It is a reservoir.^{1,2} The extracellular matrix and the interstitial fluid it holds function as a storage and exchange medium³ for nutrients, signaling molecules, and waste products. Think of it as a storage battery. When conditions are right, this battery holds nutrients. Minerals, amino acids, signaling molecules, and growth factors are stored in the matrix and drawn upon by cells as needed. The connective tissue functions as a second liver in this sense, a distributed storage organ that buffers the body's supply lines.

But a battery that can hold nutrients can also hold toxins. When lymphatic flow through the connective tissue is adequate, the interstitial fluid turns over. Waste products are flushed into the lymphatic system and carried away. Nutrients are delivered, used, and replenished in a continuous cycle. The storage capacity of the matrix stays available for what the body needs.

When lymphatic flow stagnates, the flushing stops. Toxins that should have been cleared remain in the matrix.⁴ Heavy metals, chemical metabolites, inflammatory byproducts, and cellular debris accumulate in the same tissue that is supposed to be storing nutrients. As the toxin load in the connective tissue rises, the storage capacity available for nutrients falls. The storage battery is full of the wrong thing, toxin rather than nutrients.

This means that lymphatic stagnation does not just slow the removal of waste. It actively degrades the body's nutrient reserves. A patient with chronically stagnant lymphatics may show signs of nutrient insufficiency even with adequate intake and supplementation, because the storage medium that should be holding and delivering those nutrients is occupied by what was not flushed out. Restoring lymphatic flow does two things at once. It clears the toxin burden from the connective tissue, and it restores the storage capacity that allows nutrients to be held and used properly.

The lost sleep

Before the electric lightbulb, most people in temperate climates did not sleep the way we sleep now. The dominant pattern was segmented sleep. People went to bed when it got dark, slept for roughly four hours, woke for one to two hours, then slept again until morning. During the waking interval they got up, tended fires, prayed, talked, did small tasks, checked on animals, visited neighbors. Then they went back to sleep.

This pattern is documented extensively in pre-industrial European records. It was so ordinary that it had its own vocabulary. First sleep and second sleep were common terms.⁵

What this meant for the lymphatic system is something nobody talks about. A person sleeping in two segments was never horizontal and immobile for more than four hours at a stretch. The waking period in between involved getting up, moving, walking, standing. The lymphatic system got a mid-night pumping cycle built into the structure of sleep itself.

Consolidated eight-hour sleep is a product of artificial lighting. Once people could cheaply illuminate their evenings, they stayed up later and compressed their sleep into a single block. That single block is the longest period of lymphatic stasis in a modern person's day. For someone who also sits at a desk for eight or ten hours, the lymphatic system may be effectively static for the majority of every twenty-four-hour cycle.

The patient did not create this problem. The structure of modern life created it. Artificial lighting eliminated segmented sleep. Sedentary work eliminated daytime movement. The lymphatic system that evolved to be pumped by a body that walked, lifted, climbed, squatted, and woke in the night now sits in a body that barely moves.

Putting the pump back

The first intervention is movement. Nothing else discussed in this chapter matters if the patient is not moving.

This does not require a gym membership or an exercise program. For the patient who sits at a desk all day, an under-desk pedal device changes the equation. The legs are contracting against lymphatic vessels for hours instead of being static for hours. It is the lowest-effort, highest-yield change a sedentary patient can make because it runs in the background while they work.

For the patient who cannot exercise conventionally, a mini trampoline provides lymphatic pumping through vertical oscillation. The repeated small bounce loads and unloads lymphatic valves throughout the body. It requires two to five minutes, it can be done in a living room.

Sequential compression devices that mechanically inflate and deflate around the limbs in a wave pattern are highly effective.⁶ These are the pneumatic sleeves used in clinical and post-surgical settings to prevent blood clots, but their effect on lymphatic flow is equally significant. The segmental compression milks lymph through the vessels in the direction of flow, doing mechanically what muscle contraction does physiologically. Home units are available and are particularly useful for patients who are immobile, post-surgical, or too deconditioned for even minimal exercise.

Local congestion

Systemic movement solves the systemic problem. But regional lymphatic centers can become local bottlenecks even in a patient who exercises regularly. The cervical nodes draining the sinuses, the axillary nodes, the inguinal nodes, the mesenteric nodes serving the gut. When a regional lymphatic problem is sustaining a clinical picture, systemic movement alone will not resolve it.

Cupping over lymphatic regions provides direct mechanical mobilization. The vacuum effect pulls fluid toward the surface, decompresses the tissue, and physically moves lymph through nodes that have become static. This is not a new idea. Cupping traditions across multiple cultures have been applied over lymph node regions for centuries.

A note on cancer. The question of whether mechanical lymphatic mobilization can promote metastatic spread has been debated extensively. The current clinical evidence

does not support the claim that gentle lymphatic drainage spreads cancer.⁷ Studies of manual lymphatic drainage in breast cancer patients have not shown increased recurrence rates, and oncology centers routinely use lymphatic drainage therapy for cancer-related lymphedema. However, direct vigorous mechanical pressure on a known tumor is a different matter. Animal studies have demonstrated increased tumor cell fragments in lymphatic vessels when heavy pressure is applied directly to tumor tissue. The prudent clinical position is this: gentle systemic lymphatic support is not contraindicated in cancer patients, but aggressive mechanical manipulation directly over a known tumor site should be avoided. The practitioner should know the difference between mobilizing the lymphatic system and compressing a tumor.

Ultraviolet A light, applied to the skin during cupping, adds a second dimension. UVA reaches the papillary dermis where capillary blood is being drawn toward the surface by suction. At specific wavelengths it has documented local immunomodulatory effects, suppressing overactive local immune responses and promoting regulatory immune activity.⁸ When regional lymphatic congestion is being sustained not just by physical stasis but by a local immune response that has become self-perpetuating, the combination of mechanical mobilization and local UV immunomodulation can break the cycle from both directions at once. Consider our UV reset product and our Lymplex product.

References

1. Mienaltowski MJ, Birk DE. Structure, physiology, and biochemistry of collagens. *Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology*, 2014;802:5-29.
Kalisz K et al. Extracellular matrix composition of connective tissues: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Scientific Reports*, 2019;9:10542.
2. Cenaj O et al. Evidence for continuity of interstitial spaces across tissue and organ boundaries in humans. *Communications Biology*, 2021;4:436.
3. Wiig H, Swartz MA. Interstitial fluid and lymph formation and transport: physiological regulation and roles in inflammation and cancer. *Physiological Reviews*, 2012;92(3):1005-1060.
4. Pischinger A. *The Extracellular Matrix and Ground Regulation: Basis for a Holistic Biological Medicine*. North Atlantic Books, 2007.
5. Ekirch AR. Sleep we have lost: pre-industrial slumber in the British Isles. *American Historical Review*, 2001;106(2):343-386.
Ekirch AR. *At Day's Close: Night in Times Past*. W.W. Norton, 2005.
Ekirch AR. The modernization of Western sleep: or, does insomnia have a history? *Past and Present*, 2015;226:149-192.
Wehr TA. In short photoperiods, human sleep is biphasic. *Journal of Sleep Research*, 1992;1(2):103-107.

6. International Society of Lymphology. The diagnosis and treatment of peripheral lymphedema: 2020 consensus document. *Lymphology*, 2020;53:3-19.

7. Godette K, Mondry T, Johnstone PAS. Can manual treatment of lymphedema promote metastasis? *Journal of the Society for Integrative Oncology*, 2006;4(1):8-12.

Huang TW et al. Risk of breast cancer recurrence in patients receiving manual lymphatic drainage: a hospital-based cohort study. *Supportive Care in Cancer*, 2013;21(1):97-103.

Bass SS et al. The effects of postinjection massage on the sensitivity of lymphatic mapping in breast cancer. *Journal of the American College of Surgeons*, 2001;192(1):9-16.

8. Elmetts CA et al. Studies on the mechanism of systemic suppression of contact hypersensitivity by UVB radiation. *Journal of Investigative Dermatology*, 1986;87(6):s20.

Gruner S et al. Immunosuppression by factors released from UV-irradiated epidermal cells: selective effects on the generation of contact and delayed hypersensitivity after exposure to UVA or UVB radiation. *Journal of Investigative Dermatology*, 1992;99(5):S71-S73.

Yoshikawa T et al. Ultraviolet B-induced local immunosuppression of contact hypersensitivity is modulated by ultraviolet irradiation and hapten application. *Journal of Investigative Dermatology*, 1994;104(3):364-369.

Chapter 36, Chelation: Nature uses relay races, so should we

Early humans had exposure to metals, the mineral content of water, the metals in soil and plants and animal tissue, all of this was part of the diet biology evolved alongside, and the body has dedicated handling systems for small amounts of them. What has changed in the modern environment is the amounts. The body's regulatory systems for iron, copper, zinc, manganese, magnesium and the others were calibrated for the small natural quantities.¹ Industrial activity has pushed exposure to those metals well past what the calibration can handle.

Some chemical detox pathways handle both metals and chemicals, glutathione is the obvious example, since it conjugates many chemical electrophiles and also binds soft metals through its sulfur², but the same pathway is rarely equally good at both. When one pathway gets exhausted by heavy load of one type, capacity for the other type drops along with it. A patient saturating their glutathione system on chronic chemical exposure has less glutathione available to bind incoming mercury, which means more of the mercury reaches storage rather than being escorted out. The same patient with a heavy mercury burden has less glutathione available for chemical conjugation, which means more chemical exposure reaches the activation step without adequate downstream conjugation, producing the multiple-chemical-sensitivity pattern the previous arc described.

What makes metals categorically different

Metals persist as elements

Many synthetic chemicals can be broken down by Phase I enzymes, conjugated by Phase II enzymes, and the original molecule no longer exists in the form it entered the body. The patient's burden goes down by one molecule for each successful pass through the chain.

Metals do not break down. While the body can modify metals, they can be oxidized, reduced, methylated, demethylated, and bound to organic carriers, what no modification does is destroy the atom. Iron in either valence state is still iron. Mercury bound to glutathione is still mercury. The atom persists through every transformation, and some transformations make it more dangerous rather than less, which is part of why free iron in tissue is so destructive.³ The body can shuffle metals between forms, between carriers, and between compartments, but the only ways to reduce the patient's burden are to escort the metal out of the body intact, or to render it inert by crystallizing it in the tissue, and this latter approach has variable long-term effects.

The body has native mechanisms for this movement. Metallothionein sequesters soft metals. Glutathione conjugates mercury and moves it into bile.² Ferritin cages iron.⁴ The kidney excretes some metal complexes at baseline. Hair, nails, sweat, and breast milk are all excretion routes for certain metals.⁵ But these native systems are slow, limited in capacity, and easily overwhelmed, they sequester and manage metals more than they

eliminate them. A patient whose exposure exceeds the capacity of those native systems accumulates a burden that the body cannot clear on its own timeline. Chelation accelerates and extends what the body can do natively, moving quantities that the native systems cannot handle at the pace the clinical situation requires.⁶

There is a trap inside this persistence that explains why metal illness is so stubborn. When a metal disables a protein, the body does what it does with any damaged protein: it degrades the old copy and builds a new one. With an ordinary toxin that would solve the problem. With a metal it does not, because the metal is not destroyed along with the protein. It is released back into the cell, intact, and is free to bind the freshly made replacement. The body builds a new enzyme; the mercury grabs it too.⁷ Protein turnover only helps if the metal leaves, and mercury does not leave easily. The proteins are disposable. The poison is not. This is why waiting for the body to rebuild does not resolve a metal burden, and why the entire point of chelation is to remove the persistent agent rather than the damaged protein.

Metals occupy positions meant for other metals

The essential metals divide into two groups by their chemistry. The hard metals are mostly small, tightly held, and bond through oxygen donors in a reversible, electrostatic way; calcium and magnesium are the workhorses, and potassium is the large exception that is still hard. The borderline metals, zinc, iron, copper, manganese, cobalt, sit between hard and soft and use more covalent chemistry, which the body exploits for catalysis and electron transfer.¹⁰ These borderline metals are conditionally toxic: useful at controlled doses in controlled positions, damaging in excess or when they end up loose. The soft metals have no role as nutrients, and in any form the body actually takes up they are toxic.

A toxic metal does its damage by getting into a site built for an essential one. It can do this when its size is close enough to fit and its charge is usually the same, though not always, since gadolinium reaches calcium sites despite carrying a higher charge. Once in, it cannot reproduce the native metal's function, because its electronic character is wrong. A borderline or soft metal that lands in a structural site of the wrong geometry can distort the fold and misfold the protein outright. This kind of damage is stoichiometric, not catalytic: one ion ties up roughly one protein, and the count is set by how much metal is present, not by turnover.

Metals are catalytic, in two different ways

The first way does continual, spreading damage. The redox metals, iron and copper, and to a lesser degree manganese and cobalt, change oxidation state. They hand single electrons to oxygen, and single-electron transfers are precisely what generates free radicals.⁸ One such atom is not consumed; it cycles, producing radical after radical, on the order of millions of events per second, and those radicals diffuse outward to damage lipids, proteins, and DNA well beyond the atom that made them. This is the same chemistry the body uses productively inside the protection of its iron and copper

enzymes, running uncontrolled once the metal is loose or overloaded. The damage here is active and amplifying.

The second way generates no radicals at all. The soft toxic metals, mercury, cadmium, thallium, and the borderline lead, are redox-inert. They damage by occupying. Mercury and cadmium are intensely drawn to sulfur, so they bind the cysteine thiols of enzymes and structural proteins, taking the seat without doing the work, and in mercury's case binding so tightly the protein cannot be freed.⁷ Lead invades calcium and zinc sites and jams thiol-dependent enzymes such as the one early in heme synthesis. None of this makes radicals directly. Mercury does still raise oxidative stress, but indirectly: by consuming glutathione and disabling the selenium-dependent antioxidant enzymes, glutathione peroxidase and thioredoxin reductase, it removes the very defenses that quench radicals, rather than producing radicals itself.³⁵ It takes the brakes off; it does not step on the gas. The damage here is static and bounded, one atom, one occupied position, but it persists for as long as the metal stays, because of the recycling trap above.

Both kinds of catalysis share one feature: metals lower the activation energy of reactions, making chemistry accessible at body temperature that would otherwise require heat, altered pH, or pressure the body does not have.⁸ Reactions the body wants to run, run on essential metals at controlled doses in controlled positions. Reactions the body does not want to run, run anyway when toxic metals occupy the wrong positions or when essential metals end up at the wrong concentrations. This is why mass is the wrong unit for measuring a metal burden. A redox atom's load is its catalytic output; a soft metal's load is the number of essential positions it holds and refuses to vacate. Either way, metal poisoning produces severe disease at exposures that would be inconsequential for most chemicals.⁷

Among the soft metals, severity tracks two things: access to the brain and the reversibility of binding. Mercury is the worst of the group on both counts. Its elemental vapor and its organic forms are lipophilic and cross into the nervous system and across the placenta, reaching the least replaceable tissue in the body, and its bonds to sulfur are among the least reversible.¹⁷ Lead reaches the adult brain far less freely, though the developing brain is much more permeable, which is why childhood lead exposure sits in a different category from adult exposure.¹⁴

Gadolinium: the exception that shows the edges of the model

Gadolinium fits neither mechanism cleanly, which is exactly why it deserves separate treatment. It is hard, so it does not jam thiols the way mercury does. It is redox-inert, so it generates no radicals the way iron does. The naive conclusion is that it must therefore be inert. It is not.

Three things make it dangerous. It is delivered at extraordinary concentration: a contrast vial runs on the order of 78,000 to 157,000 parts per million gadolinium, where the environmental lead and mercury exposures we worry about are measured in parts per

billion to single-digit parts per million in tissue. The agent is engineered to keep that gadolinium caged in a chelate and excreted intact, but a fraction escapes the cage, and in patients with compromised kidney function, pre-existing, or degraded by prior injections, a high fraction is retained.¹⁹ And once free, gadolinium has no handling pathway at all: no transporter built to carry it, no storage protein, no excretion route for a stray lanthanide. It precipitates as insoluble salts and deposits in bone, skin, and brain, where the deposits are recognized as foreign and drive inflammation and fibrosis, the kidneys especially.²⁰ It also blocks the inbound calcium channels, sitting in the oxygen-lined filter that recognizes calcium and binding it harder than calcium does, so the calcium signal that would normally trigger the cell, contraction, secretion, firing, does not get through, and the affected cells cannot turn on as easily.³⁶

So gadolinium is not toxic by the binding-site chemistry that governs the others. It is toxic because the body cannot get rid of it and it deposits as a persistent solid. That is the lesson it carries into the rest of this chapter: toxicity is about the whole journey, bioavailability, handling, clearance, and deposition, not only the moment of binding. It is also why the protocol that follows treats gadolinium with the most caution of any metal, holding the smallest and fastest-releasing runners back the longest.

Structural damage from metals persists after the metal is removed

When a metal is cleared, the patient's chemistry returns toward normal in the metal's ongoing role, the catalytic damage stops, the displaced enzymes can repopulate with their native cofactors, the Fenton chemistry quiets, but the structural damage the metal produced does not undo itself. Demyelination does not spontaneously remyelinate just because the mercury that drove the demyelination is gone. Oxidized membranes do not spontaneously reduce. Denatured proteins do not automatically refold.⁹

Where metals are in the body

The frame of "metal storage" undersells where metals actually sit in a chronically exposed patient. Yes, some of the metal burden is in long-term storage, bone for hard metals like lead and aluminum, fat tissue and the lipid-rich brain compartment for soft metals like mercury and cadmium, and for water-soluble metals, the connective tissue. But a fraction of the metal a patient is carrying is not in storage at all. It is bound to plasma proteins and circulating in blood. It is occupying transporter molecules in cell membranes. It is sitting in enzyme active sites where the enzyme thinks it has the right cofactor but in fact has a toxic substitute. It is in the extracellular fluid throughout the body. It is in active metabolic positions, often displacing the essential metal that should have been there.¹⁰

The chelation protocol is not just unloading bone and fat. It is also stripping toxic metals off plasma proteins, displacing them from transporters and enzyme sites, and pulling them out of the extracellular spaces and connective tissues where they have accumulated. Each of these requires a chelator that can reach the location and bind the metal more tightly than whatever is currently holding it.

Storage compartments deserve their own attention because they are the slowest part of the burden to clear. Bone is the long-term reservoir that practitioners most often underestimate. Lead in particular partitions into bone over years of exposure and stays there for decades.¹¹ The bone turnover that releases stored lead back into circulation is slow, it happens steadily through life as bone remodels, faster during periods of active bone metabolism like pregnancy, lactation, menopause, and immobilization-related bone loss; slower otherwise.¹² A patient with significant historical lead exposure will continue to release lead from bone into blood for the rest of their life, regardless of whether the original exposure source is still present. The blood-lead level a clinician measures captures the current circulating fraction; the bone-lead store the patient is sitting on does not show up on the same test.

Fat tissue serves the same role for soft metals and for fat-soluble organomercurials. Mercury that has been in the body for years has had time to partition into adipose tissue and into the lipid-rich brain compartment.¹³ Like bone-stored lead, fat-stored mercury releases slowly back into circulation as fat tissue turns over, with the rate accelerating during weight loss, fasting, and any other process that mobilizes fat stores faster than baseline.

Connective tissue toxicity has another aspect that is often overlooked. While fat is a calorie storage depot, connective tissue can store both nutrients and toxins, and the more toxins it holds, the less nutrients it can store for us.

The protocol that clears the circulating fraction without staying the course and also working through the storage fraction will produce rapid initial improvement followed by gradual return of symptoms over months as the storage compartment refills the blood compartment. The work is not finished when the blood normalizes. The work is finished when the storage compartments have been substantially worked through and the blood is staying clean without continuing intervention.

Testing and its limits

Blood metals testing captures what is in active circulation, recent exposure, mobilization in progress, the fraction the body is actively trying to move.¹⁴ It does not capture what is in storage. A patient with a lifetime of lead accumulation may have a normal blood lead level and a substantial bone burden simultaneously. The blood test is doing what the blood test does; it is not designed to measure storage compartments.

Urine challenge testing, the practice of administering a chelator and then measuring metals in the urine that follows, has its own limitations. Most labs challenge with a single chelator, typically a soft-metal chelator like DMSA, or EDTA, a hard/borderline metal chelator. DMSA will underreport hard metals and EDTA will underreport soft metals.¹⁵ This produces an imbalanced reading that can lead the practitioner to chase one metal class while missing another. Optimally you combine them.

Another issue is that the lab reports total metal output, but it cannot distinguish between metals the chelator successfully bound and is excreting (the desired clinical outcome) and metals that were mobilized from storage but redistributed rather than being captured (an iatrogenic outcome). The same urine test result can have either meaning, and the lab cannot tell which it is. Comparing a provoked result to a non-provoked reference range, which some labs encourage, may overstate the burden.¹⁶

The most stable chelators, the macrocyclic class described later in this chapter, may not be fully detected by standard lab assays, because the very stability that makes them clinically valuable obscures the chelated complex from the detection method. This is a potential issue with adding a stable terminal chelator to a diagnostic challenge in an attempt to make the challenge "safer", doing so confounds the test in ways the lab will not flag and may produce false-negative readings on metals that are actually present.

Hair testing has a specific gap. Hair detects organic mercury (methylmercury, the form found in seafood) and inorganic mercury salts. It does not reliably detect elemental mercury vapor, the form most commonly released from amalgam fillings and from some occupational exposures.¹⁷ A patient with a substantial elemental mercury burden from amalgams or occupational vapor exposure can show a clean hair test and still be carrying significant mercury.

ICP-MS panels for heavy metals report individual elements. But f-block elements, lanthanides and actinides, are typically batched together by the lab and reported as uranium.¹⁸ Gadolinium from retained MRI contrast, cerium from industrial catalysts or cigarette lighter flints, lanthanum and neodymium from supplements or occupational exposure, all of it lands in the uranium column. The practitioner sees elevated uranium and assumes the patient's well water is contaminated. The actual burden may be gadolinium from a prior MRI with contrast, which requires a different chelation approach entirely. This is a real and underappreciated source of misdiagnosis in heavy metal testing, and the practitioner who does not ask about prior MRI history when seeing elevated uranium on a panel is working from a false premise.

Gadolinium retention specifically deserves attention. Gadolinium-based contrast agents were long considered safe and fully excreted. Evidence now shows retention in brain, bone, and skin tissue, particularly after repeated administrations and particularly with linear (non-macrocyclic) agents.¹⁹ Patients presenting with symptoms after MRI with contrast, pain, cognitive changes, skin changes, may have legitimate gadolinium retention.²⁰ Chelation with DTPA has been used in case reports, though no standardized protocol exists.²¹ Furthermore, a challenge test on a Gadolinium toxic patient can backfire. This is why before doing a challenge test, we must determine if the patient has had an MRI with a Gadolinium contrast agent injection. If so, approach even a challenge test with caution.

The relay race

Nature, when it has to move something challenging from one place to another, often uses relay races. Hand-offs between specialists, each adapted to one stage of the journey, with the next runner ready before the previous one lets go. This is how the body moves oxygen from lungs to mitochondria. It is how the immune system passes a pathogen from innate first responders to adaptive specialists. It is how electrons move through the respiratory chain. And it is especially true for metals, iron is the marquee example. Dietary iron is taken up by enterocytes, handed to ferroportin for export across the basolateral membrane, handed to transferrin in plasma, transferred to transferrin receptors at target cells, escorted to ferritin for storage, and released by ferritin to whatever enzyme needs the iron at the moment it needs it.⁶ Five distinct carriers. Each one binds iron more or less tightly than the others, and the iron moves toward whichever carrier holds it appropriately for the next stage of the journey. The body tries to never let iron travel as a free ion. It hands the iron from carrier to carrier the entire way, because a free iron ion in tissue is catalytically destructive, and free transit is exactly what the relay structure is designed to prevent. The body's own metal handling is the model that a good chelation protocol should imitate. The protocols that fail almost always fail because they tried to make a single chelator do all the legs of the race.

Chelation protocols should be designed as a relay race with multiple tiers of runners.† The runners in the race all do the same job, they solubilize the metal by binding it into a complex the body can carry. Where the tiers differ is in the speed and stability of that solubilization, and in the size of the spaces the chelator can reach.

The author defines the Tiers as follows:

Tier 1 chelators are small molecules with one or two donor groups capable of binding a metal ion. Citrate, and malate for those with histamine issues, are good examples of hard-metal Tier 1 chelators, they carry carboxylate groups that bind hard metal cations and can dissolve the crystalline mineral deposits where hard metals are sequestered, displace hard metals from binding pockets in proteins, and reach into small spaces a larger chelator cannot enter.

Alpha-lipoic acid would be considered a soft-metal Tier 1 chelator, it carries two sulfhydryl groups close enough together to grip a soft metal atom from both sides, and it is fat-soluble enough to reach into lipid compartments.²²

Tier 1 chelators solubilize quickly and they reach the smallest spaces. The tradeoff is that the same low molecular weight that lets them reach into small spaces also gives them low binding affinity. They form complexes quickly, and they release them quickly. For this reason, Tier 1 chelators are never used alone. Used alone, they solubilize a metal at one location and then release it again somewhere else, depositing the metal in a new location instead of escorting it out. They are used inside a relay where more stable chelators are present to receive what the Tier 1 hands off.

Tier 2 chelators are larger molecules, multiple donor groups linked together in a linear or branched backbone. Each Tier 2 can be understood as a chain or net of Tier 1s, with

the multiple donors gripping the metal from multiple angles at once. This makes Tier 2 chelators more stable than Tier 1 chelators, while their flexible backbone still lets them adapt to metals of varying ion sizes. EDTA is an example of a Tier 2 hard-metal chelator²³ and MiADMSA is an example of a Tier 2 soft-metal chelator.²⁴ Consider our Medicardium and Dasimet products.

Tier 3 chelators are macrocyclic, four or more donor groups closed into a rigid ring with the metal trapped at the center. DOTA is the canonical Tier 3.²⁵ DOTA's rigid ring geometry makes it slow at both binding and releasing, once a metal is inside the DOTA cage, it stays there. This is what makes Tier 3 the most stable form of solubilization in the relay. The same property that makes DOTA slow to release also makes it slow to bind: it does not reach into small spaces the way Tier 1 does, and it does not have the same geometric flexibility that Tier 2 does, making it unsuitable for certain very large atoms. Methyl DOTA is the same macrocycle modified for fat solubility, methyl groups added to the structure let the molecule cross cell membranes, where it then demethylates back to the active DOTA form intracellularly.† Consider our Captimet and Vellumet products.

How the relay actually works

The donor-chemistry axis follows what chemistry calls the HSAB principle, Hard-Soft Acid-Base theory.²⁶ See chart at remedylink.com/charts. Hard metals prefer hard donors: carboxylate groups (COOH), oxygen-based coordination. Soft metals prefer soft donors: thiol groups (SH), sulfur-based coordination. Borderline metals, lead is the most clinically important, respond to both, and nitrogen donors (NH₂, amine groups) sit in the borderline category, appearing in the backbone of EDTA, DTPA, and the macrocyclic chelators where they contribute binding strength without determining hard-soft selectivity on their own. Getting the match wrong means the chelator reaches the metal but cannot bind it effectively, or binds it weakly enough that the metal is mobilized but not captured, the worst possible outcome.

This explains the successes of EDTA.²⁷ It can bind hard, soft, and borderline metals, and as a Tier 2 chelator, it shares some aspects of Tier 1 and Tier 3. It is a good all-purpose general chelator, but we can do better by incorporating it in a relay protocol.

The relay works through affinity gradients. When a Tier 1 chelator carrying a metal encounters a Tier 2 chelator, the metal preferentially transfers to the Tier 2, because the Tier 2 binds it more tightly. When a Tier 2 carrying a metal encounters a Tier 3, the metal preferentially transfers again. While a Tier 3 chelate and its metal can dissociate, it is the least likely of all chelator Tiers to do this.

Every tier used alone has a cost. A Tier 1 chelator alone solubilizes metal but is prone to releasing it somewhere along the route to excretion, redistribution, not removal. A Tier 2 alone carries the same risk at a lower rate. A Tier 3 alone is the safest single agent, it rarely drops its cargo when urine is properly alkalized (more on this later), but it is unnecessarily slow and cannot access metals locked in crystalline deposits or small

binding pockets that only the smaller chelators can penetrate. The full relay is what gets the metal out from where it actually is, at a pace that matters clinically, with minimal redistribution.†

A patient with mixed metal burden, most patients, in practice, needs both donor chemistries represented in the protocol. The hard side of the relay is Tier 1a citrate or malate salt, Tier 2 EDTA, Tier 3 DOTA. The soft side of the relay would be Tier 1b alpha-lipoic acid, Tier 2 MiADMSA, DOTA also serves as the Tier 3 chelator for most soft metals. Despite its O/N donor chemistry, DOTA's macrocyclic cage geometry produces stability constants with soft metals ($\text{Hg log } K = 26.4$) that exceed those of sulfur-donor chelators (DMSA $\text{Hg log } K = 16.5$). The textbook prediction that soft metals require soft donors is overridden by the macrocyclic stability advantage. The exception is arsenic, where MiADMSA ($\text{log } K = 19.5$) is the strongest available holder and functions as the de facto Tier 3.

Compounds like emeramide have been proposed as soft-metal terminal chelators. According to the inventors, emeramide renders mercury inert due to its very high stability constant. This means that emeramide isn't a chelator, but a precipitator. The bound metal is not soluble. It is instead rendered inert and remains in the body. Insoluble particulate matter in tissue is recognized by the innate immune system as foreign. Macrophages attempt phagocytosis. If the particle is too large or too insoluble to digest, you get frustrated phagocytosis, chronic inflammatory signaling, NF- κ B activation, cytokine release, potentially fibrosis. This is the mechanism behind asbestosis, silicosis, and gout (urate crystals). Metal precipitates are conceptually in the same category, indigestible crystalline particles in soft tissue. This is not a criticism of emeramide, but more an open question regarding precipitators versus chelators.

A clinical observation confirmed by the stability data: in practice, DOTA, the macrocyclic Tier 3 chelator, has served as a useful rescue when a soft-metal protocol produced unexpected reactions. The stability constants explain why. DOTA is not merely rescuing, it is the stronger holder.

Counterions

A chelator can only bind a target with stronger affinity than the counterion it arrived with. If the counterion is held loosely, the chelator drops it readily and binds the toxic metal. If the counterion is held tightly, the chelator may not let go of the counterion in time to bind the target, and it passes through the patient without doing the work it was sent to do.

For EDTA, the counterions the author prefers are magnesium and potassium. Magnesium-and-potassium-bonded EDTA releases its counterions readily because EDTA binds toxic metals more tightly than it binds magnesium or potassium. This produces several useful things at once. The EDTA becomes available to bind the metal it was sent for. The released magnesium and potassium contribute to mineral status in a patient population that is broadly deficient in both. And the magnesium released into circulation slightly increases the solubility of the crystalline mineral deposits where hard

metals are stored, which makes those deposits incrementally more accessible to the relay's smaller runners. Calcium-bonded EDTA holds calcium more tightly, which makes the EDTA less available, but more importantly, means the EDTA cannot bind to more calcium. The removal of dystrophic calcium deposits, especially from the arteries, is one of the many benefits of EDTA chelation, but this only happens with a calcium-free EDTA.

Delivery routes

Oral delivery works for some chelators and fails for others. Citrate and malate absorb orally and reach hard-metal compartments. Alpha-lipoic acid absorbs orally and reaches lipid compartments. EDTA absorbs poorly when taken orally, roughly 5-18% bioavailability²⁸, which is why oral EDTA products produce limited clinical effect. Most of an oral EDTA dose chelates metals in the gut lumen, which can be useful for dietary metal exposure and enterohepatic recirculation of biliary metal, but never reaches systemic circulation.

Proper and effective delivery routes that work for poorly-absorbed substances are intravenous, suppository, and liposomal. Intravenous delivery puts the chelator directly into plasma at full dose but requires clinical infrastructure. Suppository delivery routes the chelator through rectal veins into systemic circulation, bypassing both stomach acid and intestinal absorption.²⁹ Liposomal delivery encapsulates the substance in phospholipid vesicles, useful for substances that survive digestion intact but absorb poorly across the intestinal wall, which is EDTA's specific limitation. Recent clinical practice has moved toward liposomal EDTA as a primary delivery route, it preserves the bioavailability that intravenous and suppository routes provided, while removing the infrastructure and convenience barriers that limited those older routes.

Readiness gates

Metal work carries readiness gates that have to be confirmed before the protocol begins. These are not suggestions. They are preconditions. If any one of these gates is not met, you do not chelate yet. You fix the missing gate first.

The first gate is urine pH. Chelate-metal complexes are maximally stable within a pH range, and acidic urine can destabilize them. Protons compete for the coordination sites on the chelator molecule. Remember, protons are basically hydrogen, and hydrogen is, chemically speaking, another metal. If urine pH drops low enough, the acid displaces the metal from the chelator in the renal tubule. The metal is now free and sitting in kidney tissue. That is redistribution injury, and the kidney is silent, the patient may or may not feel it happening. The target during active chelation is a urine pH of 7.5 or higher. This is not a rate optimization; it is a stability threshold. Below it, the chelator may deliver its metal cargo to the kidney rather than out of the body.

The alkalinizing agent has to be chosen with the relay in mind, and this is where a common error hides. The obvious choice is citrate, potassium citrate, magnesium citrate, sodium citrate, because the liver oxidizes citrate through the TCA cycle to

bicarbonate while the mineral cation carries the alkaline load into the urine. Citrate does alkalize. But citrate and malate are Tier 1 chelators. Using them to alkalize means introducing a Tier 1 runner into the protocol, and for the sensitive patient that is exactly what the staged approach is built to prevent. The sensitive patient begins with the Tier 3 macrocycle alone, adds Tier 2 second, and adds Tier 1 last, holding the molar order Tier 3 greater than Tier 2 greater than Tier 1. Alkalizing that patient with citrate from day one puts the highest-redistribution-risk runner into the gut before the protocol is ready for it.

The alkalizer for the pre-chelation window, and for the early Tier 3 and Tier 3-plus-Tier 2 phases, therefore has to be a base that carries no chelating group. Bicarbonate is that base. A balanced sodium-and-potassium bicarbonate supplement supplies the base directly, without requiring hepatic oxidation, so it works even in patients whose liver throughput is compromised, and it raises urine pH without adding a Tier 1 chelator to the mix. The balance of the two cations matters. Sodium bicarbonate alone delivers a sodium load the cardiovascular and renal systems do not need, particularly in a patient population already being watched for kidney stress. Potassium bicarbonate alone risks hyperkalemia, again most dangerous in the patient whose kidney function is the gate being protected. A mix of the two splits the cation load, lowering both risks while delivering the bicarbonate, and the potassium fraction contributes to the repletion this patient population usually needs. Magnesium repletion, which the citrate form would otherwise have carried, continues on its own track alongside the protocol.

A reasonable starting dose is roughly 690 mg of the bicarbonate mix per twenty-five pounds of body weight. The correct dose will yield a subsequent urine pH at 7.5 or above. The patient takes both the bicarbonates (or other alkalizing agents) first thing in the morning with 8 oz of water on an empty stomach along with the chosen chelators. Wait 30 minutes before eating. If you'd rather not neutralize stomach acid consider our Bicarbamet products which is enteric coated and delivers bicarbonates to the small intestine, not the stomach, thus sparing stomach acid.

Once the protocol has advanced to where Tier 1 is appropriate, the late stage of the sensitive-patient sequence, or from the outset in the standard patient running all three tiers together, citrate can take over or supplement the alkalizing role, where it now does double duty as both base and Tier 1 chelator. Here the citrate teaching applies in full. The mineral-bonded form is what matters: citric acid alone, lemon juice, bulk citric acid powder, fails, because the three protons that arrive with the acid form offset the three bicarbonate equivalents the citrate yields on oxidation, netting roughly zero change in pH. The patient squeezing lemons into water is not reaching the target. The patient taking potassium citrate is, because the potassium carries the bicarbonate's alkaline effect into the urine. For the histamine-reactive patient, malate substitutes by the same logic and with the same Tier 1 caveat.

The second gate is functional liver and gallbladder. The lipid-soluble chelate complexes leave through the bile route, and that route requires bile flow to be working.

The third gate is kidney function. The kidney is silent and slow to heal; damage to it does not announce itself the way damage to many other organs does.³⁰ Lower back pain during chelation is a signal to stop and allow recovery for one to three months. In some cases, recovery takes longer, or does not fully occur. Do not push past warning signs assuming the kidney will bounce back quickly. The corollary: properly paced chelation can actually improve kidney function over time, by removing the metal burden that has been compromising the kidney's enzymatic machinery.³¹ The same intervention that damages a kidney when run aggressively can support a kidney when run patiently. The variable is pace. Kidney function should be assessed before chelation.

The fourth gate is mineral status, magnesium and potassium specifically, which are depleted in most modern adult patients at baseline and which chelators continue to deplete during active use.³² The replenishment runs alongside the chelation continuously.

Mineral replenishment serves a second purpose beyond preventing deficiency. When the chelator removes a toxic metal from an enzyme active site or transport protein, that binding site is now empty. If a beneficial mineral is available to occupy the site, the site is more resistant to re-occupation by another toxic metal. If the site is left empty, the next toxic metal that passes by sits right back down. Repletion is to chelation what potassium iodide is to radiation exposure: prophylactic occupation of binding sites that would otherwise be vulnerable.

How the protocol unfolds

For sensitive patients, the practitioner begins with the most stable runner, the Tier 3 macrocyclic chelator DOTA, at low dose, alone, and observes response. The Tier 3 on its own produces relatively little redistribution risk, because its stability profile keeps it from dropping cargo back into circulation, which makes it the safest single agent to start with. Some patients respond strongly to the Tier 3 alone, which means the protocol is getting useful work done at this minimal level.

When the Tier 3 at gradually increasing doses (up to 300 mg) produces neither further clinical movement nor adverse symptoms, the practitioner adds the Tier 2, EDTA for hard-metal coverage and/or MiADMSA for soft-metal coverage. For sensitive patients, the molar dose of a Tier 2 should always be lower than that of a Tier 3.

When the combined Tier 3 and Tier 2 effect plateaus, the practitioner can add the Tier 1, citrate and malate for hard metals, alpha-lipoic acid for soft metals. Again, by the same principle, for sensitive patients, Tier 1 amounts should never exceed the molar dose of either Tier 2 or Tier 3. The Tier 1 reaches into the small spaces the larger chelators cannot enter, protein binding pockets, crystal interstices, enzyme active sites where the metal is occupying the position of the missing essential cofactor.

Adding Tier 1 is the most risky part as it has the greatest chance for redistribution. For patients with gadolinium symptoms, Tier 1 should be held back for at least 6 months.

Remember, for sensitive patients, by molar measurements, Tier 3 greater than Tier 2 greater than Tier 1. For most patients, this level of control is unnecessary.

For most patients (those without gadolinium or high levels of mercury), Tiers 1, 2, and 3 are run at the same time, and because Tier 1 is appropriate from the start, the citrates can do the alkalinizing (as opposed to the bicarbonates), dosed by how much it takes to bring the urine to 7.5. The bicarbonate mix can be used alongside or in place of the citrates here as well, and is the better choice when the citrate dose required for alkalinization would push Tier 1 higher than intended.

For the sensitive patient, whose early phases run Tier 3 alone and then Tier 3 with Tier 2, alkalinization is carried entirely by the bicarbonate mix, since citrate would introduce Tier 1 before the sequence calls for it. Citrate enters only when the protocol reaches the Tier 1 stage.

When the three-tier protocol plateaus, the practitioner then moves to the fat-soluble form of the Tier 3, Methyl DOTA, to reach intracellular compartments. This is the most aggressive level of the standard protocol, and the risk of mineral stripping is very real. Magnesium and zinc levels must be brought up to normal levels before using Methyl DOTA and should be replenished on the off cycle (3-5 days on, 2 days off).

Complete protocol instructions are available at remedylink.com/protocols.

Post-Chelation Tissue Repair

When the active metal protocol has done its work, the patient will still be carrying the consequences of the years the metal was present. Scarred kidneys. Demyelination in the central or peripheral nervous system. Oxidative damage to mitochondrial membranes. Denatured proteins in long-lived tissue.

Amentoflavone has been shown to prevent and, to a degree, reverse organ fibrosis, particularly in the kidneys.^{33, 34}

Nervonic acid, introduced in the microbiome chapter as a substrate the body makes only in small amounts, is often the rate-limiting factor in nerve repair. Supplementation can accelerate remyelination once the underlying toxic burden has been addressed. Consider our Nervidyne product.

Many peptides have global healing effects and can be taken nasally or orally. BPC-157 is the most widely known, but KPV and Thymosin Beta-4 also deserve the clinician's attention.

Injectable porcine brain peptides, Cerebrolysin and Cerebroneurogen, can be self-administered with a syringe pump and a subcutaneous infusion set for brain and nerve repair.

Finally, water fasting to trigger autophagy of dead, damaged, and senescent cells. In my experience, the water fast only truly begins on day four, after glycogen stores are diminished. Toxins begin dumping typically on or about day seven. When the tongue becomes clear again and the body is no longer releasing the odors of toxic autophagy, roughly days ten through fourteen, it is time to break the fast with meat and vegetable broth.

Clinical pearl: *German electroacupuncture (Voll) points Voll Ki2b and Ki3 become tender on firm palpation with proximal tubular injury, which in this patient population is most often metal-driven. Tenderness at these points is an early flag to pause chelation and let the kidney recover; resolution of the tenderness is a positive sign that it has. Locations are at remedylink.com/charts.*

References

1. Cousins RJ. Absorption, transport, and hepatic metabolism of copper and zinc: special reference to metallothionein and ceruloplasmin. *Physiol Rev*. 1985;65(2):238-309.
2. Ballatori N, Clarkson TW. Biliary secretion of glutathione and of glutathione-metal complexes. *Fundam Appl Toxicol*. 1985;5(5):816-831.
3. Stohs SJ, Bagchi D. Oxidative mechanisms in the toxicity of metal ions. *Free Radic Biol Med*. 1995;18(2):321-336.
4. Anderson GJ, Frazer DM. Current understanding of iron homeostasis. *Am J Clin Nutr*. 2017;106(Suppl 6):1559S-1566S.
5. Sears ME, Kerr KJ, Bray RI. Arsenic, cadmium, lead, and mercury in sweat: a systematic review. *J Environ Public Health*. 2012;2012:184745.
6. Andersen O. Principles and recent developments in chelation treatment of metal intoxication. *Chem Rev*. 1999;99(9):2683-2710.
7. Clarkson TW, Magos L. The toxicology of mercury and its chemical compounds. *Crit Rev Toxicol*. 2006;36(8):609-662.
8. Jomova K, Valko M. Advances in metal-induced oxidative stress and human disease. *Toxicology*. 2011;283(2-3):65-87.
9. Flora SJ, Pachauri V. Chelation in metal intoxication. *Int J Environ Res Public Health*. 2010;7(7):2745-2788.
10. Goyer RA. Toxic and essential metal interactions. *Annu Rev Nutr*. 1997;17:37-50.

11. Rabinowitz MB. Toxicokinetics of bone lead. *Environ Health Perspect.* 1991;91:33-37.
12. Gulson BL, Mizon KJ, Korsch MJ, Palmer JM, Donnelly JB. Mobilization of lead from human bone tissue during pregnancy and lactation, a summary of long-term research. *Sci Total Environ.* 2003;303(1-2):79-104.
13. Charleston JS, Body RL, Mottet NK, Vahter ME, Burbacher TM. Autopsy neuropathology in methylmercury-exposed *Macaca fascicularis*. *Neurotoxicology.* 1995;16(4):711-726.
14. CDC. Guidelines for the identification and management of lead exposure in pregnant and lactating women. Atlanta: CDC; 2010.
15. Aposhian HV, Maiorino RM, Gonzalez-Ramirez D, et al. Mobilization of heavy metals by newer, therapeutically useful chelating agents. *Toxicology.* 1995;97(1-3):23-38.
16. Ruha AM. Recommendations for provoked challenge urine testing. *J Med Toxicol.* 2013;9(4):318-325.
17. Clarkson TW, Vyas JB, Ballatori N. Mechanisms of mercury disposition in the body. *Am J Ind Med.* 2007;50(10):757-764.
18. Beauchemin D. Inductively coupled plasma mass spectrometry. *Anal Chem.* 2004;76(12):3395-3416.
19. Kanda T, Ishii K, Kawaguchi H, Kitajima K, Takenaka D. High signal intensity in the dentate nucleus and globus pallidus on unenhanced T1-weighted MR images: relationship with increasing cumulative dose of a gadolinium-based contrast material. *Radiology.* 2014;270(3):834-841.
20. Semelka RC, Ramalho J, Vakharia A, et al. Gadolinium deposition disease: initial description of a disease that has been around for a while. *Magn Reson Imaging.* 2016;34(10):1383-1390.
21. Prybylski JP, Maxwell E, Coste Sanchez C, Jay M. Gadolinium deposition in the brain: lessons learned from other metals known to cross the blood-brain barrier. *Magn Reson Imaging.* 2016;34(10):1366-1372.
22. Shay KP, Moreau RF, Smith EJ, Smith AR, Hagen TM. Alpha-lipoic acid as a dietary supplement: molecular mechanisms and therapeutic potential. *Biochim Biophys Acta.* 2009;1790(10):1149-1160.
23. Aposhian HV, Aposhian MM. Meso-2,3-dimercaptosuccinic acid: chemical, pharmacological and toxicological properties of an orally effective metal chelating agent. *Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol.* 1990;30:279-306.

24. Mehta A, Pant SC, Flora SJ. Monoisoamyl dimercaptosuccinic acid induced changes in pregnant female rats during late gestation and lactation. *Reprod Toxicol*. 2006;21(1):94-103.
25. Wadas TJ, Wong EH, Weisman GR, Anderson CJ. Coordinating radiometals of copper, gallium, indium, yttrium, and zirconium for PET and SPECT imaging of disease. *Chem Rev*. 2010;110(5):2858-2902.
26. Pearson RG. Hard and soft acids and bases. *J Am Chem Soc*. 1963;85(22):3533-3539.
27. Lamas GA, Goertz C, Boineau R, et al. Effect of disodium EDTA chelation regimen on cardiovascular events in patients with previous myocardial infarction: the TACT randomized trial. *JAMA*. 2013;309(12):1241-1250.
28. Foreman H, Trujillo TT. The metabolism of C14-labeled ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid in human beings. *J Lab Clin Med*. 1954;43(4):566-571.
29. de Boer AG, Moolenaar F, de Leede LG, Breimer DD. Rectal drug administration: clinical pharmacokinetic considerations. *Clin Pharmacokinet*. 1982;7(4):285-311.
30. Järup L. Hazards of heavy metal contamination. *Br Med Bull*. 2003;68(1):167-182.
31. Weaver VM, Jaar BG, Schwartz BS, et al. Associations among lead dose biomarkers, uric acid, and renal function in Korean lead workers. *Environ Health Perspect*. 2005;113(1):36-42.
32. Chisolm JJ Jr. Safety and efficacy of meso-2,3-dimercaptosuccinic acid (DMSA) in children with elevated blood lead concentrations. *J Toxicol Clin Toxicol*. 2000;38(4):365-375.
33. Chen Z, Shi Y, Zhong F, Zhang K, Zhang F, Xie S, Cheng Z, Zhou Q, Huang YY, Luo HB. Discovery of amentoflavone as a natural PDE4 inhibitor with anti-fibrotic effects. *Chinese Chemical Letters*. 2025;36(4):109956.
34. Zhang Y, Hu J, Zhang Y, Ci X. Amentoflavone protects against cisplatin-induced acute kidney injury by modulating Nrf2-mediated oxidative stress and ferroptosis. *Frontiers in Pharmacology*. 2025;16:1508047.
35. Carvalho CML, Chew EH, Hashemy SI, Lu J, Holmgren A. Inhibition of the human thioredoxin system: a molecular mechanism of mercury toxicity. *J Biol Chem*. 2008;283(18):11913-11923.
36. Yang XC, Sachs F. Block of stretch-activated ion channels in *Xenopus* oocytes by gadolinium and calcium ions. *Science*. 1989;243(4894):1068-1071.

Chapter 37, Chemicals - The load the body did not evolve to carry

The human body did not evolve alongside synthetic chemicals. There were no plasticizers in the ancestral environment. There were no pesticides, no flame retardants, no perfluorinated compounds, no industrial solvents. The molecules the modern patient encounters every day, by the thousands, did not exist when human biology was being shaped, and the body has no purpose-built systems for handling most of them. What it has instead are general-purpose detoxification pathways, built originally to handle plant toxins, bacterial metabolites, and the body's own waste, that are now being asked to handle a chemical load they were never designed for.

Some of these chemicals the body manages adequately, given enough support. Others it manages poorly. A few it cannot manage at all, and those simply accumulate. The patient's chemical burden is the running balance of what came in versus what got out, and for most modern patients that balance has been net positive, meaning chemicals coming in faster than going out, for their entire lives. The accumulated load contributes to inflammation, hormonal disruption, neurological problems, immune dysregulation, and the broader pattern of chronic illness that has become the dominant clinical picture in industrialized populations.

What modern patients are exposed to

The list of chemicals a modern patient encounters across an ordinary day is long enough that no chapter can name them all. What follows is a working sketch of the major categories, organized roughly by where the exposure happens.

Mycotoxins The primary route of clinical concern is inhalation. Water-damaged buildings produce airborne mycotoxins carried on spores, hyphal fragments, and fine particulate. Inhaled mycotoxins bypass first-pass liver metabolism entirely, entering the bloodstream through the pulmonary vasculature and reaching the brain and systemic circulation before the liver has any opportunity to conjugate them.

Agricultural chemicals Pesticides applied to crops in the field. Herbicides applied to soil before planting and to crops during growth. Fungicides applied to fruits, vegetables, and grain to prevent spoilage between harvest and consumption. Most of the conventional produce in the modern food supply carries residues of one or more of these compounds, and the residues are present at levels that have been deemed acceptable by regulatory agencies but that the body still has to clear.

Glyphosate deserves specific naming. The world's most widely used herbicide, glyphosate is sprayed on conventional crops at scale, applied as a pre-harvest desiccant on grains and legumes (which means the timing of application puts the residue into the food directly), and is detectable in the bodies of essentially every patient in the industrialized world. Beyond its direct toxicity, glyphosate damages the gut microbiome, earlier chapters introduced the mechanism, and disrupts mineral availability by binding metals into unavailable forms. Glyphosate is not the only

agricultural chemical that matters, but it is the one with the broadest exposure footprint and the one that compounds with the gut microbiome work that the previous chapters have addressed.

Plasticizers Bisphenol A and its substitutes, phthalates, and the broader family of plastics-derived endocrine disruptors leach from food packaging, water bottles, can linings, plastic cookware, and most prepared foods that have touched plastic during processing. These compounds mimic estrogen at the receptor level, disrupting hormonal signaling at concentrations far below what older toxicology models considered relevant.

Persistent organic pollutants PCBs from older industrial processes, dioxins from combustion and incineration, organochlorine pesticides like DDT that were banned decades ago but persist in soil and food chains. These compounds are fat-soluble and resist degradation. They accumulate in fat tissue, bioaccumulate up food chains, and remain detectable in the bodies of patients born long after the original sources of exposure were curtailed.

PFAS, per- and polyfluoroalkyl substances, deserves its own naming alongside glyphosate. PFAS are the "forever chemicals", synthetic compounds engineered for water and oil resistance, used in non-stick cookware, water-resistant clothing, food packaging, firefighting foam, carpet treatments, and a wide range of consumer products. The carbon-fluorine bonds that give PFAS their useful properties also make them extraordinarily resistant to breakdown. The body has no efficient pathway to clear them. PFAS exposure is essentially universal in the modern population. The compounds disrupt hormonal signaling, contribute to immune dysfunction, and have been associated with elevated rates of several cancers in epidemiological studies.

Flame retardants Polybrominated diphenyl ethers and similar compounds applied to furniture foam, electronics, building materials, and children's products. These compounds outgas slowly across the lifetime of the products they treat, contaminating indoor air and household dust. They accumulate in fat tissue and disrupt thyroid function.

Personal care products Cosmetics, lotions, shampoos, deodorants, sunscreens, fragrances. The skin is permeable to many of the compounds in these products, and daily use across the body's surface produces a substantial cumulative absorption that most patients do not account for.

Pharmaceuticals Both the medications a patient takes themselves and the residues that pass through municipal water supplies from population-level pharmaceutical use. Most municipal water systems do not remove pharmaceutical compounds, and trace concentrations of antibiotics, hormones, antidepressants, and other widely used drugs are routinely detectable in tap water.

Indoor air Most modern patients spend more than ninety percent of their time indoors, and indoor air typically carries higher concentrations of volatile organic compounds, particulates, and biological contaminants than outdoor air. Building materials, furnishings, cleaning products, and personal care products all contribute. The healthy buildings chapter later in the book takes this up at length.

Water contaminants Beyond pharmaceutical residues, municipal water often contains chlorination byproducts, fluoride, heavy metals leached from aging pipes, agricultural runoff, and the broader range of compounds that conventional water treatment was not designed to remove.

This list is not exhaustive. New compounds enter commercial use faster than regulatory science can evaluate them. The biomonitoring data are unambiguous: phthalates, bisphenols, perfluorinated compounds, organophosphates, polybrominated diphenyl ethers, and hundreds of other synthetic chemicals are detectable in cord blood. The patient arrives already loaded.

How chemical toxicity differs from metal toxicity

Many chemicals are broken down and excreted. Metals cannot be, an atom of mercury or lead persists through every transformation and leaves only when it is physically carried out. On that basis alone chemicals should be the smaller problem, and molecule for molecule they often are. Two things offset the advantage.

The first is sheer quantity. Toxic-metal exposure for most people runs in micrograms a day, lead from dust and water, mercury from fish, cadmium from food. Synthetic chemical exposure runs in milligrams to grams a day across the whole load, solvents, plasticizers, pesticide residues, combustion products, and the compounds absorbed through the skin from personal-care products. The exposure is orders of magnitude larger. Even when clearance is efficient, that volume keeps the detoxification machinery under constant load and steadily drains the Phase II substrates the next section depends on. And clearance is never complete. The danger of any compound is its exposure multiplied by the fraction the body cannot clear. For most chemicals that fraction is small, so the enormous exposure is buffered and the burden stays manageable. For the persistent and forever chemicals, dioxins, PCBs, PFAS, the fraction is large, and a huge exposure meeting almost no clearance accumulates the way a metal does. Those compounds are the chemical equivalent of a metal with no exit, and they are treated separately at the end of this chapter for exactly that reason.

There is also a difference in what happens after the damage is done. When a metal disables a protein, the metal is released intact as the protein is degraded and binds the replacement; protein turnover does not clear it. A reactive chemical is usually spent in the act of binding, one molecule, one adduct, and because it is covalently attached, it is degraded along with the protein it damaged. Turnover clears it. This is the structural reason metals require active removal while most chemicals require working Phase II capacity and time. It is also why the same body that needs years of chelation for a metal

burden can recover from a large chemical exposure once the source is removed and the conjugation pathways are supported.

The deeper difference is in what the two kinds of toxin counterfeit. A toxic metal does its damage by mimicking a nutritional metal, it is close enough in size and charge to slip into the site built for calcium, zinc, or iron, and then fails to do that metal's job. A toxic chemical rarely mimics a metal. It mimics a molecule. Endocrine disruptors mimic hormones: the bisphenols and phthalates fit the estrogen receptor and trigger hormonal signaling that no hormone sent. Organophosphate pesticides mimic the substrate of acetylcholinesterase closely enough to occupy and jam the enzyme that clears acetylcholine, so the neurotransmitter signal cannot shut off. Still other chemicals resemble a neurotransmitter closely enough to bind its receptor directly, or an enzyme's substrate closely enough to block the active site, switching a signal on or off at the wrong moment. The metal counterfeits an element; the chemical counterfeits a message.

That distinction explains why the two produce different clinical pictures, and why the mass argument carries a sharp exception. Because metals jam binding sites across the proteome, metal illness is diffuse and broadly enzymatic. Because chemicals hijack the signaling layer, hormones, neurotransmitters, receptors, chemical illness shows up as hormonal disruption, neurological symptoms, and immune dysregulation. And a receptor is an amplifier; it is built to turn a faint chemical signal into a large cellular response. A counterfeit message is therefore potent at concentrations far below the mass thresholds that govern the rest of toxicology, which is why endocrine disruptors act at doses older models dismissed as negligible. The bulk of the chemical load does its harm through volume and substrate depletion. The endocrine-active fraction does its harm through amplification, at almost any dose. Both are true at once, which is part of what makes the chemical load so difficult to reason about.

How the body processes chemicals

Detoxification is fundamentally a solubility problem. If a toxin is water soluble, it can leave by the kidneys or bile without any further processes. Fat-soluble toxins are another matter. They cross cell membranes, accumulate in fat tissue, and reach the brain and other lipid-rich compartments. The body excretes waste through water-based systems: urine, bile, sweat. A fat-soluble molecule cannot leave through a water-based exit. It has to be converted from fat-soluble to water-soluble before excretion can happen. The analogy is a greasy dish in a water-only sink, without soap, the grease does not wash off. So, detoxification is often about finding the right "soap" for the chemical burden in question, except in the body, the "soap" is not always a single compound. Often it is a series of bio-transformative steps, each with its own requirements.

The body's detoxification system accomplishes this conversion in four steps, each of which can fail independently.

Phase I, activation The cytochrome P450 enzyme family modifies the chemical, typically by oxidation, reduction, or hydrolysis, adding or unmasking a reactive functional group. This is the first thing that happens. The chemical sitting in tissue gets acted on by CYP450 enzymes. The result is an intermediate that is chemically activated and often more reactive, more toxic, than the parent compound. Phase I is preparation: it creates the molecular handle that Phase II will use.

Phase II, conjugation The intermediate that Phase I produces is more reactive than what it started with, the molecular handle that was added or unmasked will bind to whatever it touches. If it binds a protein, the protein is damaged. If it binds a cell membrane, the membrane is damaged. If it binds DNA, the result is a mutation. Phase I has added genotoxicity to a compound that was already harmful. Under normal conditions, this is not a problem, Phase I and Phase II enzymes sit side by side in the endoplasmic reticulum, and the reactive intermediate is conjugated within milliseconds of being produced. It is not supposed to exist as a free molecule for longer than a fraction of a second. But this rapid handoff depends entirely on Phase II having adequate raw materials, glutathione, glucuronic acid, sulfate, glycine. When those substrates are depleted, the handoff stalls. The intermediate that was supposed to exist for milliseconds now circulates, binding DNA, damaging proteins, disrupting membranes. Phase II couples the reactive intermediate to one of these water-soluble molecules, quenching the reactive site and making the molecule water-soluble enough to be transported out. If Phase II cannot keep pace with Phase I, the reactive intermediates accumulate. This is the biochemical basis of the first Detox Trap discussed earlier in the book and multiple chemical sensitivities (MCS), the machinery that generates toxic intermediates is running ahead of the machinery that neutralizes them.† The patient feels worse and concludes that detox "doesn't work" or is harmful. What failed was the pacing, not the principle.

Phase III, cellular efflux The conjugated, now water-soluble molecule must be pumped out of the cell. This is accomplished by ATP-binding cassette (ABC) transporter proteins, molecular pumps embedded in cell membranes that actively push the conjugated toxin from the inside of the cell to the outside. Without functional Phase III, the toxin is solubilized but trapped inside the cell. Different interventions apply here than in Phases I and II, this is a transporter and energy problem, not a conjugation problem. Mitochondrial support matters because the pumps require ATP.

Terminal excretion, kidneys or liver-bile-colon The conjugated, effluxed toxin is now water-soluble and in the circulation. It leaves the body through one of two routes: the kidneys filter it into urine, or the liver secretes it into bile, bile delivers it to the small intestine, and it transits the colon to stool. The bile route is the primary exit for most conjugated chemicals, particularly larger molecules. The next chapter develops bile as a system, not just a toxin export route, but a river that performs six distinct functions in the body, all of which degrade when flow is compromised.

Here is where the microbiome work from earlier chapters connects directly to chemical detox. Conjugated toxins delivered to the colon via bile can be deconjugated by gut

bacteria, which use our Phase 2 conjugates as their food. Enzymes like beta-glucuronidase cleave the conjugation tag that Phase II attached. But deconjugation does not reverse Phase I. The functional group that was added or unmasked is still there. What reabsorbs through the intestinal wall is not the original parent compound, it is the Phase I intermediate, still carrying the reactive handle, without the Phase II conjugation that was neutralizing it.

Deconjugation creates a toxin that is worse than what the patient started with. The liver will reconstitute it, spending another round of glucuronic acid, sulfate, or glycine to do so, and export it into bile, where it is delivered back to the same dysbiotic gut, where it is deconstituted again, and reabsorbed again. Liver conjugates, gut deconstitutes. Liver conjugates, gut deconstitutes. The cycle repeats indefinitely. On every pass the Phase I intermediate circulates through the body in its most reactive form, binding proteins, damaging membranes, reaching DNA.

And on every pass the liver loses. The conjugation tags it attached, glucuronic acid, sulfate, glycine, are stripped off and consumed by the bacteria that cleaved them. Beta-glucuronidase is not an accidental byproduct of bacterial metabolism. It is a feeding strategy. Glucuronic acid is a sugar acid, and the bacteria that produce beta-glucuronidase are harvesting it as a carbon and energy source. Every conjugated molecule the liver exports is a meal that selectively feeds the deconstituting population. The loop does not just repeat, it strengthens the bacteria that drive it while depleting the substrates the liver needs to keep conjugating.

The bacteria responsible are predominantly gram-negative anaerobes, *E. coli*, *Bacteroides*, *Clostridium*, flourishing in the higher-pH environment of a dysbiotic colon, where SCFA-driven suppression is absent. Sulfatases that cleave sulfate conjugates follow the same pattern: *Bacteroides*, *Prevotella*, gram-negative organisms favored by alkaline colonic conditions. A healthy colon dominated by gram-positive fermenters produces short-chain fatty acids that lower pH and suppress beta-glucuronidase activity. A dysbiotic colon dominated by gram-negatives does the opposite, higher pH, higher beta-glucuronidase, more deconstitutation, more reabsorption, more feeding of the organisms that cause the problem.

The patient's detoxification system is not failing to work. It is working, and the work is being undone, and the undoing is producing something more dangerous than the original chemical while systematically stripping the liver of the substrates it needs to continue.

This is why chemical detox must happen after the microbiome is repaired, or at least reaches a stool pH ≤ 6.8 .† If the gut flora are in disarray, the bacteria that deconstitute toxins are overrepresented, and every chemical the liver conjugates and exports gets stripped and sent back in its most reactive form. The microbiome chapters came first in the book for this reason. Attempting chemical detox with a broken microbiome is working against active sabotage.

The four classes of chemical removability

Not all chemicals are equally difficult for the body to process. The practical distinction is a spectrum of removability.

Mild

The body handles these adequately given no continual high exposure. Cooking byproducts, heterocyclic amides, acrylamides, methylfurans, fall here. Phase I and II capacity is sufficient under normal conditions.

Moderate

A healthy body handles these, but exposure can exceed capacity. Some pesticides and food preservatives. Accumulation occurs when intake is sustained or when Phase I/II capacity is compromised by other burdens.

Persistent

The body can remove these, but slowly, with some having half-lives measured in years. Accumulation is typical without active intervention. Mycotoxins, DDT, dioxins, PCBs. These compounds are extremely fat-soluble, they reach everywhere, including the brain, intracellular compartments, and cell membranes. Worse, persistent toxins tilt the Phase I/Phase II balance against the patient. They activate the aryl hydrocarbon receptor, which induces Phase I enzymes dramatically, but while Phase II enzymes are also induced, the induction cannot keep pace. Phase I outstrips Phase II capacity. At the same time, the oxidative stress these toxins generate depletes glutathione, the primary Phase II substrate, faster than the body can replenish it. The enzymes are being told to work, but the raw materials are being consumed. The result is functionally identical to Phase II suppression: reactive intermediates accumulate because conjugation cannot keep up with activation. The toxin creates its own version of multiple chemical sensitivity.

The intervention principle for persistent toxins is modulate, not necessarily accelerate. If Phase I needs to be slowed and Phases II and III need support, consider Urolithin A (UA). UA modulates Phase I downward when excessive while upregulating Phases II and III and can be created internally by ingesting ellagitannins.

Certain supplements that are otherwise beneficial must be avoided during persistent toxin detox because they suppress Phase III: quercetin, resveratrol, curcumin, green tea extract, propolis, chili spices, black pepper (piperine). These are not harmful in general, they are specifically counterproductive when the clinical goal is moving persistent toxins through the efflux pumps.

Forever chemicals

PFAS represent the extreme end, carbon-fluorine bonds that resist all biological degradation. The body has essentially no pathway for breaking them down, but escorting them out is possible and will be discussed in the next chapter.

Methylmercury: where the two categories meet

Most toxins fall cleanly on one side of the metal-chemical divide. Mercury does not, and that is why it is worth ending on. Its entry routes are genuinely two-way. Inorganic and elemental mercury, from amalgam fillings and occupational vapor, enter by the metal route: vapor inhaled and absorbed, then oxidized to the Hg^{2+} ion in tissue, no disguise involved. Methylmercury, from fish, enters by the chemical route, and here it is not a bare ion but an organometallic molecule, a carbon-mercury compound. Bound to cysteine, that molecule resembles the amino acid methionine closely enough that the large-neutral-amino-acid transporter carries it across the blood-brain barrier and the placenta as if it were nutrition. The molecule's organic half is what does the chemical-route work: the carbon-mercury bond makes it lipophilic, so it distributes into fat and the brain and travels like a persistent organic pollutant, and it is the methionine disguise, not any metal property, that gets it through the door.

The damage side is not two-way. However it arrives, mercury injures by the metal mechanism, binding thiols and selenols, disabling the selenoenzymes, persisting as an element that cannot be broken down, and recycling onto a fresh protein each time the body degrades the one it poisoned. The methyl group changes the address, not the weapon; methylmercury is more neurotoxic than the inorganic form only because the disguise delivers it to the brain. And the disguise is temporary. The molecule that traveled in slowly demethylates to the inorganic ion, shedding the carbon that got it there and settling into the bare metal that keeps it, which is what makes mercury occupy the entire continuum rather than a single point on it.

Saunas, can't we just sweat it out?

Sweat contains measurable concentrations of heavy metals, phthalates, bisphenols, and other environmental chemicals^{1,2,3}. Infrared and Finnish sauna both produce adequate sweat volume for clinical purposes. Chemicals stored in subcutaneous fat are mobilized by heat and excreted through sweat glands, bypassing the liver-kidney pathway entirely. Infrared sauna produces sweat that is roughly eighty-two percent water compared to ninety-six percent for conventional heat sauna⁴, the difference is sebaceous gland activation, which delivers more lipophilic compounds per volume of sweat.

But sauna is not sufficient as a standalone intervention. Toxins mobilized by heat (lipolysis) that are not excreted through sweat enter the circulation, are filtered by the liver, conjugated (if the machinery is intact), and excreted into bile. From bile they reach the gut, where deconjugation and reabsorption become the dominant failure mode. Sauna should be added only after the practitioner determines the patient can handle

additional detoxification load and the stool pH is ≤ 6.8 . It is an adjunct, not a starting point.†

A properly designed chemical detox manages all phases of detox, not just one or two.

Clinical Pearl: *If the acupuncture point Liver 3 is tender on firm palpation, this is a 'liver stress / time for a detox' sign. Resolution of this tenderness is a positive indication.*

References

- 1- Genuis SJ, Beesoon S, Birkholz D, Lobo RA. Human excretion of bisphenol A: blood, urine, and sweat (BUS) study. J Environ Public Health. 2012;2012:185731.
- 2- Genuis SJ, Beesoon S, Lobo RA, Birkholz D. Human elimination of phthalate compounds: blood, urine, and sweat (BUS) study. Scientific World Journal. 2012;2012:615068.
- 3- Sears ME, Kerr KJ, Bray RI. Arsenic, cadmium, lead, and mercury in sweat: a systematic review. J Environ Public Health. 2012;2012:184745.
4. Hussain J, Cohen M. Clinical effects of regular dry sauna bathing: a systematic review. Evid Based Complement Alternat Med. 2018;2018:1857413.

Chapter 38, Nanoplastics - The modern challenge

Micro and nanoplastics are not two grades of the same problem. Only nano fraction crosses in quantity. Surface-area-to-volume scales inversely with diameter, so a hundredfold reduction in particle size gives a hundredfold increase in surface area per unit of mass. Biosorption onto a bacterial cell wall is a surface phenomenon, and so is essentially every interaction a particle has with a membrane, a protein or a bile acid. Measured by mass, the micro fraction dominates. Measured by particle count and by available surface, the nano fraction dominates, and count and surface are what the biology responds to.

None of this makes the micro fraction irrelevant. It makes it the reservoir rather than the agent. Larger fragments sitting in the gut are a continuing source of smaller ones through mechanical and chemical attrition, and are sources of plasticizers as well, but it is the nanoplastics that are the greater hazard.

By ingestion and by inhalation

Cox and colleagues assembled the first broad estimate of annual human particle intake and arrived at roughly 39,000 to 52,000 particles per year from food alone, depending on age and sex. When inhalation was folded in, the total rose to something on the order of 74,000 to 121,000 particles per year, which put airborne intake at roughly half the count.¹

Most of the particle count enters by inhalation, while most of the mass enters by mouth, because airborne particles settle onto food and are swallowed during the meal.² The two routes are not cleanly separable. A considerable share of what begins as air pollution finishes as ingestion.

The inhalation half is dominated by fibers and larger fragments, while the fraction small enough to translocate and enter circulation is weighted toward the smallest particles. About ninety percent of those were nanoplastics rather than microplastics, and the total ran ten to a hundred times higher than earlier estimates that had stopped at the one-micrometer boundary.³

The third is drinking water source. Annual ingestion has been estimated at around 90,000 particles for a person who drinks bottled water against roughly 4,000 for a person who drinks tap.¹ That is a twenty-fold spread inside the ingestion route alone, decided by a single household habit.

Ingested nanoplastics do not stay in the lumen. In mice, ingested nano- and micro-sized polystyrene particles have been shown to pass the intestinal barrier and accumulate in tissue.⁵ More recently, Li and colleagues tracked the kinetics and found that roughly sixty percent of an ingested dose of polystyrene nanoparticles crossed the intestinal wall within three hours.⁶

Set that against what happens a size class up. When micrometer-scale polystyrene was tested at one, four and ten micrometers, cultured human intestinal epithelial cells took up particles to about four micrometers, but mice fed those same particles for 28 days at doses far above any realistic human exposure showed them only occasionally in intestinal epithelial cells, with no harmful effects in intestinal tissue or other organs.¹⁶ Sixty percent crossing in three hours at 100 nanometers, against occasional detection after four weeks at a micrometer and above, is the whole difference between a gut irritant and a systemic exposure.

The mechanism of that crossing is the part that matters for this book. The particles were not passively leaking through gaps. They were bound to bile acids, and their absorption was mediated by the apical sodium-dependent bile acid transporter, the same ileal machinery that recovers bile acids for reuse.⁶ The particle is not sneaking past the terminal ileum. It is being carried through it, wearing a bile acid as a badge.

Once absorbed, the destination is the liver. A five-week oral exposure study in mice found the highest concentrations in blood, followed by the liver, with the liver retaining the particles because it has no enzymatic means of degrading a synthetic polymer.⁷ Histology in that study showed hepatocellular changes, renal tubular dilation with peritubular infiltrates, and colonic crypt distortion with leukocyte infiltration.⁷

Enterohepatic recirculation

Here is where the picture closes.

Shao and colleagues followed fluorescent 100-nanometer particles after oral dosing and described translocation along a gastrointestinal-liver-gallbladder axis, with the particles concentrating in gallbladder bile and clearing from it slowly. They then looked in human gallbladder bile and found nanoplastics there by scanning electron microscopy and Raman spectroscopy. The gallbladders in which particles were detected showed epithelial hyperplasia with neutrophil infiltration.⁸

A second group established the same circuit from the other direction, using intravenous delivery in addition to oral dosing so that the particles began in the blood rather than the gut. Systemically absorbed particles were captured by the liver, concentrated in the gallbladder, and reintroduced into the intestine in bile.⁹

This tells us that both oral and inhalation exposure of nanoplastics have the same fate, and may be removed in the same manner... by binding in the gut and disrupting enterohepatic recirculation.

The Microbiome as binder

Lactic acid bacteria adsorb hydrophobic particles and pollutants onto their cell surface. This is biosorption, a physical property of the peptidoglycan layer and the extracellular polysaccharides, not a metabolic act. Popular coverage of this literature has repeatedly

described the bacteria as somehow digesting or neutralizing the material, and they do neither.

A high-throughput screen of 784 bacterial strains against 100-nanometer polystyrene identified *Lactobacillus paracasei* DT66 and *Lactiplantibacillus plantarum* DT88 as the strongest adsorbers. In mice, those strains produced a 34 percent increase in the polystyrene excretion rate and a 67 percent reduction in particles remaining in the intestine.¹¹

A strain isolated from kimchi, *Leuconostoc mesenteroides* CBA3656, was selected for its ability to hold onto particles under gastrointestinal conditions rather than merely in buffer. Under standard laboratory conditions it adsorbed 87 percent of polystyrene nanoparticles, against 85 percent for a reference lactic acid strain. Under simulated human intestinal conditions the reference strain collapsed to 3 percent while CBA3656 held at 57 percent. This tells us that not all probiotics are effective at nanoplastic binding in the gut.

The probiotic reduced particle loads in blood, liver, spleen and colon while raising fecal output, with a 60 to 80 percent reduction in the liver burden. Confocal imaging of feces showed the particles physically stuck to the bacterial cell walls, confirming that the mechanism was transport of immobilized particles rather than anything metabolic.⁷

The benefit was not only adsorption. The same strain raised expression of the mucin gene *Muc2* and of the tight junction components occludin and claudin-1, which had been driven down by the particle exposure.⁷ The barrier was being repaired at the same time the lumen was being swept.

So, the first gate is adsorption. Organisms in the lumen bind particles to their surface and carry them out in stool. This gate operates on whatever is in the lumen, which under the enterohepatic model includes both the meal and the bile.

The second gate is barrier integrity. Less of what is in the lumen crosses. Here the mechanism is the ordinary one this book has been building toward throughout the colon chapters: butyrate fed to the colonocyte, mucin layer intact, tight junctions expressed, epithelium not inflamed.

Not that we must choose between them, but the second gate is the more important. In the ZP-6 experiment, mice with chemically induced colitis absorbed roughly three times more particle than healthy mice, showed peak blood concentrations several-fold higher, and responded far less well to the probiotic. The binding gate was still working; the barrier was leaking faster than the binder could sweep.⁷ The authors were explicit that the efficacy of the probiotic was contingent on the functional status of the intestinal barrier.

Since some nanoplastics partition into lipid membranes, solubilizing membranes with liposomal bile may support the body in moving nanoplastics into the blood, then liver then gut for removal. Consider our Cholephage product.

Clinical pearl: *We do not yet know which bacteria are most effective against which nanoplastics. For this reason, not just the quantity, but also the diversity of the microbiome is important.*

REFERENCES

1. Cox KD, Covernton GA, Davies HL, Dower JF, Juanes F, Dudas SE. Human consumption of microplastics. *Environ Sci Technol*. 2019;53(12):7068-7074.
2. Ouyang Z, et al. Probabilistic estimation of airborne micro- and nanoplastic intake in humans. *Environ Sci Technol*. 2024. doi:10.1021/acs.est.3c09189
3. Qian N, Gao X, Lang X, et al. Rapid single-particle chemical imaging of nanoplastics by SRS microscopy. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2024;121(3):e2300582121.
4. Schwabl P, Koppel S, Konigshofer P, et al. Detection of various microplastics in human stool: a prospective case series. *Ann Intern Med*. 2019;171(7):453-457.
5. Schwarzfischer M, Niechcial A, Lee SS, et al. Ingested nano- and micro-sized polystyrene particles surpass the intestinal barrier and accumulate in the body. *NanoImpact*. 2022;25:100374.
6. Li J, Li Z, Bao Q, et al. Polystyrene nanoplastics readily penetrate intestine and cause sex-specific effects mediated by bile acids and microbiome. *Cell Rep*. 2026;45(2):116859.
7. Zhao L, Wei Z, Wang Y, et al. *Lactiplantibacillus plantarum* ZP-6 mitigates polystyrene nanoplastics-induced liver damage in colitis mice via the gut-liver axis. *Front Microbiol*. 2025;16:1626941.
8. Shao W, Hu H, Jiang Z, et al. Enterohepatic circulation of nanoplastics induced hyperplasia, epithelial-mesenchymal transition, and neutrophil extracellular traps in gallbladder. *Nano Today*. 2024. [locator to verify]
9. Enterohepatic circulation of polystyrene nanoplastics promotes intestinal inflammation by impairing enteric neurons. *ACS Nano*. 2026;20(28):19976. [authors to verify]
10. Furumoto K, Ogawara K, Nagayama S, et al. Biliary excretion of polystyrene microspheres depends on the type of receptor-mediated uptake in rat liver. *Biochim Biophys Acta*. 2001;1526(2):221-226.
11. Adsorption abilities and mechanisms of *Lactobacillus* on various nanoplastics. *Chemosphere*. 2023;318:137947. [authors and locator to verify]
12. Lee J, Lee SH, Whon TW, et al. Efficient biosorption of nanoplastics by food-derived lactic acid bacterium. *Bioresour Technol*. 2026;447:134234.

13. Xing J, Wang G, Zhao J, et al. Screening of potential probiotic lactic acid bacteria based on gastrointestinal properties and perfluorooctanoate toxicity. *Appl Microbiol Biotechnol.* 2016;100(15):6755-6766.
14. Chen Q, Sun S, Mei C, et al. Capabilities of bio-binding, antioxidant and intestinal environmental repair jointly determine the ability of lactic acid bacteria to mitigate perfluorooctane sulfonate toxicity. *Environ Int.* 2022;166:107388.
15. Mitrano DM, Wick P, Nowack B. Placing nanoplastics in the context of global plastic pollution. *Nat Nanotechnol.* 2021;16:491-500.
16. Stock V, Bohmert L, Lisicki E, et al. Uptake and effects of orally ingested polystyrene microplastic particles in vitro and in vivo. *Arch Toxicol.* 2019. doi:10.1007/s00204-019-02478-7 [authors and locator to verify]

Chapter 39, Bile - The Body's Soap

Bile is produced continuously in the liver, collected and concentrated in the gallbladder, released into the small intestine in response to the arrival of food, and carried through the gut to its eventual exit. Bile exists on a continuum, with gallstones at one end, bile sludge in the middle, and bile that moves freely at the other.

When food arrives in the duodenum, particularly food containing fat, the gallbladder contracts, releasing concentrated bile into the small intestine where it does six distinct jobs.

Acid neutralization Bile arrives at a pH around 9.5. The chyme arriving from the stomach is at a pH around 2. Bile neutralizes the acid and brings the small intestine to roughly pH 8, where enzymes work and the mucosal lining is not corroded. A patient with poor bile flow delivers acidic chyme into a small intestine that cannot neutralize it, producing chronic low-grade acid burns along thirty feet of tissue, indigestion, heartburn, ulcer-like symptoms that conventional medicine treats with acid-suppression drugs without addressing the bile-flow problem that produced them.¹

Fat emulsification Bile acids are detergents, molecules with a water-soluble end and a fat-soluble end that break fat droplets into sizes pancreatic lipase can act on. Without adequate bile, fat absorption drops, and with it the fat-soluble vitamins A, D, E, and K. A patient with poor bile flow may be eating a nutrient-dense diet and still showing fat-soluble vitamin deficiencies.³

Peristalsis stimulation Bile arriving in the duodenum signals the gut to move its contents forward. Constipation that does not respond to fiber is often a bile-flow problem. The alternating constipation and diarrhea pattern, long stretches of slow transit followed by sudden urgent movement, is one expression: contents accumulate without adequate motility signal, eventually trigger irritation-driven diarrhea, then the cycle resets.⁴

Immune regulation Bile contributes to the calibration of immune response in the gut wall. Poor bile flow produces dysregulated mucosal immunity in the small intestine, with elevated risk of intestinal autoimmunity and inappropriate inflammatory response to ordinary food contents.

Parasite and Candida suppression Bile acids at meal-stimulated concentrations disrupt the membranes of organisms that would otherwise colonize the small intestine, one of the eight protections taught earlier. A patient with poor bile flow loses this protection.

Fat-soluble toxin excretion The conjugates produced by Phase II are excreted into bile for transport through the gut and out of the body, the biliary branch of terminal excretion. A patient with poor bile flow has a bottleneck at this step: conjugates back up, recirculate, and the clinical picture looks like detox failure when it is actually an excretion failure.^{3,5}

Three problem categories when bile flow is compromised. The consequences of biliary obstruction, whether from stones, sludge, sphincter dysfunction, or substrate deficiency, fall into three categories.

Intestinal consequences. All six functions degrade. The cluster of fat intolerance, fiber-unresponsive constipation, and fat-soluble vitamin deficiency in a patient eating well points to bile flow as the system that needs attention.

Systemic toxin accumulation. Cholesterol's primary excretion route is through bile, obstructed flow produces rising cholesterol because the molecule has nowhere to go. Bilirubin accumulates, producing jaundice in severe cases.² Thousands of other compounds the liver was trying to excrete also back up. Bile acids themselves, when retained in the bloodstream, are immunosuppressive, they inhibit chemotaxis and phagocytosis.⁶

Retrograde damage to liver and pancreas. When stones lodge in the valves controlling bile flow, gallbladder contraction forces bile backward into the liver and pancreas. Bile at pH 9.5 causes alkaline chemical burns in tissues not designed to encounter it. Chronic retrograde exposure to the pancreas contributes to pancreatitis and the inflammatory environment preceding pancreatic cancer. Chronic retrograde exposure to the liver contributes to hepatitis and progressive liver damage.

Bile is location-dependent

Bile's effects depend entirely on where it is. In the intestines: beneficial. In the bloodstream from obstruction: immunosuppressive. In the pancreas and liver from retrograde flow: caustic.

The practitioner who understands this principle will not treat bile as simply good or simply bad. The clinical question is always: where is it, and is it flowing where it should?

Two conventional approaches and their limits

Cholecystectomy. The house plumbing metaphor captures the problem. Imagine the plumber has removed all the faucets in your house, pipes now stick out of the walls, dripping continuously. After gallbladder removal, bile drips continuously into the small intestine rather than being released in concentrated boluses with meals. Between meals, bile irritates the mucosa and contributes to bile-acid diarrhea. With meals, the patient does not get the concentrated release needed, and fat absorption drops permanently.

The surgery does not address the cause of the stones, the quality of the bile, or the possibility of stones elsewhere in the biliary system. Stones form because the bile substrate balance was wrong, typically depleted phosphatidylcholine, glycine, and taurine. Cholecystectomy removes the container the stones collected in. It does nothing about the composition of bile that produced them. With those substrates still depleted, the bile the liver produces is still lithogenic, still wanting to crystallize, and stones now

form in the hepatic ducts and liver tissue itself. Many post-cholecystectomy patients return with the same symptoms, now from stones in tissues harder to address. The surgery solved nothing upstream.⁷

The standard liver-gallbladder flush. The recipe, Epsom salts, olive oil, lemon juice, forces a strong gallbladder contraction. The green objects that appear in the stool are often not gallstones but saponified compounds produced by olive oil and bile mixing in the gut.† Actual gallstones sink in water; these objects float.⁷

The flush does sometimes pass real stones, but it does not address why they formed. Substrate deficiencies are now worse as so much bile has been lost.† New stones begin forming. By two weeks after the flush the gallbladder typically contains as many stones as before, leading to protocols recommending up to twelve flushes. The procedure addresses output rather than input.

There is a further cost to the flush, downstream of the gallbladder and easy to miss. The forced contraction empties a large volume of concentrated bile into the gut at once. Most bile acid is reclaimed in the terminal ileum and returned to the liver, but a bolus of this size exceeds what the ileum can recover, and the surplus spills into the colon. There it is converted by resident bacteria into the secondary bile acids, which are detergents in their own right. These do not feed the colonic pathogens so much as select for them: the bile-tolerant gram-negative organisms carry the membrane defenses and efflux machinery to survive a bile load that suppresses the acid-forming gram-positives around them. A bile dump therefore clears the gallbladder at the expense of the colon, pushing the colonic population in the same direction the microbiome work spends so much effort reversing.†

This is the deeper reason to prefer dissolving stones slowly over expelling them in a bolus. Slow dissolution liberates bile and stone material at a rate the ileum can reabsorb, so little reaches the colon and the selective pressure never builds. The patient gives up the dramatic result, the basin of green objects, and gains the thing that actually matters, which is correction of the bile without a price paid one organ downstream. The flush optimizes for a visible output; slow dissolution optimizes for the state of the whole gut.

A modern interpretation

A modern approach would address the substrate deficiencies that produce the wrong bile composition, dissolve stones rather than expelling them, target the liver via suppository. Consider our Glytamins product.

Regarding post-cholecystectomy

Removal of the gallbladder does not resolve the issue of bile viscosity, does not improve bile composition, and does not prevent stone formation in the liver itself. The same formulation that dissolves gallbladder stones works on hepatic stones.

Warning sign: a dry, cramping, or hot sensation in the gallbladder area signals the work is mobilizing material faster than the gallbladder can handle. Pause for a few days, then resume at lower frequency.

Clinical Pearls: *If the acupuncture point Gallbladder 41 is tender on firm palpation, this is a gallbladder stress sign. Resolution of this tenderness is a positive indication.*

For patients with substantial stone burden, therapeutic ultrasound, distinct from diagnostic ultrasound, can be applied externally over the right upper quadrant. It may assist at mechanically disrupting stones and sludge that the formulation is dissolving. 1 Mhz at 15 watts can be considered.

References

1. Hofmann AF. The continuing importance of bile acids in liver and intestinal disease. Arch Intern Med. 1999;159(22):2647-2658.
2. Sticova E, Jirsa M. New insights in bilirubin metabolism and their clinical implications. World J Gastroenterol. 2013;19(38):6398-6407.
3. Klaassen CD, Aleksunes LM. Xenobiotic, bile acid, and cholesterol transporters: function and regulation. Pharmacol Rev. 2010;62(1):1-96.
4. Dawson PA, Karpen SJ. Intestinal transport and metabolism of bile acids. J Lipid Res. 2015;56(6):1085-1099.
5. Roberts MS, Magnusson BM, Burczynski FJ, Weiss M. Enterohepatic circulation: physiological, pharmacokinetic and clinical implications. Clin Pharmacokinet. 2002;41(10):751-790.
6. Balazs I, Stadlbauer V. Circulating neutrophil anti-pathogen dysfunction in cirrhosis. JHEP Rep. 2023 Aug 1;5(11):100871, DOI 10.1016/j.jhepr.2023.100871. The third case is post-cholecystectomy
7. Gaby AR. Nutritional Medicine. Fritz Perlberg Publishing; 2011.
8. Murugaiyah V, Chan KL. Mechanisms of antihyperuricemic effect of Phyllanthus niruri and its lignan constituents. J Ethnopharmacol. 2009;124(2):233-239.
9. Stremmel W, Staffer S, Gan-Schreier H, et al. Phosphatidylcholine (lecithin) and the mucus layer: evidence of therapeutic efficacy in ulcerative colitis? Dig Dis. 2010;28(3):490-496.
10. Stipanuk MH. Role of the liver in regulation of body cysteine and taurine levels: a brief review. Neurochem Res. 2004;29(1):105-110.

Chapter 40, Binders - When the Gut Isn't Ready

The previous chapters established the sequence: the liver conjugates toxins, exports them into bile, bile delivers them to the gut, and the gut is supposed to let them leave. When the microbiome is intact, gram-positive fermenters dominant, short-chain fatty acid production high, colonic pH low, the conjugation tags stay on, and the toxin exits in stool. The system works.

When the microbiome is not intact, the system works against itself. Beta-glucuronidase and sulfatase activity climb, conjugation tags are stripped⁵, and the freed toxin, now carrying the reactive Phase I handle without the Phase II neutralization, reabsorbs across the colonic wall and returns to the liver for another round. The liver spends another unit of glucuronic acid, sulfate, or glycine to reconstitute it. The gut strips it again. The loop depletes the liver while feeding the organisms that drive the problem.

The clinical threshold for chemical detox is a stool pH ≤ 6.8 . Below that mark, beta-glucuronidase activity is likely suppressed enough that the liver's conjugation work holds, and excretion proceeds without significant reabsorption. The binder conversation becomes less relevant.[†]

But not every patient can wait. Some patients present with active mycotoxin or chemical burden that requires intervention before the microbiome work is finished, while others are so sensitive that binders are still indicated.

Cholestyramine and bile acid sequestrants Cholestyramine, colestipol, and colesevelam bind bile acids and capture fat-soluble toxins⁴ riding in bile, including deconjugated mycotoxins that would otherwise reabsorb. Ritchie Shoemaker adopted cholestyramine as the standard binder for mycotoxins in mold-illness work¹. The limitation: most patients develop constipation, which raises colonic pH, increases beta-glucuronidase activity, and worsens the very deconjugation cycle the binder is trying to compensate for. A second limitation in the mycotoxin context, oral binders work on mycotoxins in the gut but do not reach mycotoxins that entered through inhalation and colonized in the sinuses. The sinus protocol addresses that compartment. Both routes must be worked.

Fiber binders Psyllium binds toxins, usually supports transit⁶ (the opposite of cholestyramine), and serves as a prebiotic that feeds the short-chain fatty acid-producing bacteria that lower colonic pH and suppress beta-glucuronidase. Always taken in powder form mixed with water, never capsules, capsules risk intestinal blockage if they lodge without adequate hydration. Sourcing caveat: psyllium falls into a regulatory category allowing higher pesticide residue, and many brands are contaminated with lead. A reputable source is clinically critical. Tolerability is the second caveat, and it is less predictable than the first. Some patients regulate on psyllium and some do not, so it earns a trial rather than an assumption.

Charcoal Broad nonspecific binder useful for acute exposures². Binds nutrients and medications, so timing matters. Not a daily detox binder.

Bentonite and zeolite bind metals and some organic compounds³. The metals chapter develops this further.

Microbiome binders as mentioned in the nanoplastics chapter are a source of endogenous binders that should not be overlooked.

Clinical pearl: *All oral binders pull fat-soluble vitamins alongside toxins. Supplement fat-soluble vitamins and time binders away from nutritional supplements by at least two hours. Titrate to avoid constipation above all else, constipation defeats the purpose of the binder by creating the conditions that drive deconjugation and reabsorption.*

References

1. Shoemaker RC, House DE. Sick building syndrome and exposure to water-damaged buildings: time series study, clinical trial, and mechanisms. **Neurotoxicol Teratol**. 2006;28(5):573-588.
2. Avantaggiato G, Havenaar R, Visconti A. Evaluation of the intestinal absorption of deoxynivalenol and nivalenol by an in vitro gastrointestinal model, and the binding efficacy of activated carbon and other adsorbent materials. **Food Chem Toxicol**. 2004;42(5):817-824.
3. Phillips TD, Afriyie-Gyawu E, Williams J, et al. Reducing human exposure to aflatoxin through the use of clay: a review. **Food Addit Contam Part A**. 2008;25(2):134-145.
4. Gloire G, Bhatt D. Cholestyramine and bile acid sequestrants: mechanisms and clinical applications. **Clin Pharmacol Ther**. 2012;91(4):614-622.
5. Kim DH, Jin YH. Intestinal bacterial beta-glucuronidase activity of patients with colon cancer. **Arch Pharm Res**. 2001;24(6):564-567.
6. Grabitske HA, Slavin JL. Gastrointestinal effects of low-digestible carbohydrates. **Crit Rev Food Sci Nutr**. 2009;49(4):327-360.

Chapter 41, Cyclodextrins: A soap for all seasons

Soap dissolves things water alone cannot. A drop of oil on water sits on the surface and does not mix. A drop of oil in soapy water dissolves and washes away, because the soap molecule has one end that likes water and one end that likes oil, bridging between the two. The cyclodextrin family works on the same principle with more specific geometry. Instead of an end that likes oil, the cyclodextrin has a closed cage¹ with an oil-friendly interior. Fat-soluble toxins enter the cage. The cage's exterior is water-soluble, so it carries the toxin out through any water-based exit route the body has.

What cyclodextrins are

A cyclodextrin is a ring-shaped molecule made of glucose units linked together to form a closed cage, hydrophilic on the outside, hydrophobic on the inside. The interior is the right size to hold a small fat-soluble molecule, and when such a molecule encounters the ring in an aqueous environment, it slides into the interior and stays there. The complex is now water-soluble and can be carried out of the body through routes that pure fat-soluble compounds cannot use.

Three sizes exist, named alpha, beta, and gamma², each with a different interior cavity diameter capturing different ranges of guest molecules. Beta-cyclodextrin in its hydroxypropyl form (HPBCD)³ has the cavity size that matches the largest range of clinically relevant fat-soluble toxins, and it is the cyclodextrin that does most of the work in the formulations taught here.

The mechanism is fundamentally different from surface adsorption. A cholestyramine molecule binds toxins by attracting them to its surface with relatively weak forces, and the binding is competitive, anything that binds well to the same surface, including nutrients and fat-soluble vitamins, displaces some of the toxin. A cyclodextrin holds its guest molecule inside a closed ring. The guest is physically encapsulated, not stuck to a surface, and the binding is more selective: only molecules of the right size and lipophilicity fit into the cage. This produces less competition with nutrients than surface binders create.

Cyclodextrins are not alternative medicine. They are FDA-approved drug delivery vehicles used in over forty pharmaceutical products⁶. Sugammadex, a modified gamma-cyclodextrin, is injected intravenously after surgery to encapsulate rocuronium⁷ and instantly reverse neuromuscular paralysis. HPBCD mobilizes cholesterol from lysosomes in Niemann-Pick Type C disease⁸, where a genetic defect traps cholesterol inside the cell.

The technology is genuinely modern. Cyclodextrins were discovered in the late nineteenth century but were not characterized or made commercially available until the 1970s. Their therapeutic application as a binder in their own right, capturing the hydrophobic toxins the modern environment produces, is more recent still.

How should cyclodextrins be delivered?

Cyclodextrins are best absorbed by IV, rectally, or via the sinuses. Rectal cyclodextrin routes the active compounds through the rectal veins into hepatic portal circulation, delivering them to the liver. Consider our Albedextrin rectal gel product.

Cyclodextrins taken orally are partially absorbed but limited by osmotic effects on the intestines, take more than a certain amount and it causes the runs. They also dose in steps rather than along a smooth curve: below a threshold you see very little, and the useful effect appears only once enough is present at one time to matter, which is why a dose that produced nothing is not evidence the compound does nothing.

It is important to note that only the hydroxypropyl forms should be used, as other types do not have good safety profiles⁴.

In circulation, HPBCD can serve as a surrogate albumin for patients whose albumin levels are low and whose carrier capacity for fat-soluble toxins is therefore reduced.† A patient with low albumin has toxins that would otherwise be moved out efficiently sitting in tissue longer. HPBCD provides additional carrier capacity and supports the transport step of the detox chain. This matters particularly for patients with chronic illness, where albumin is often depleted as part of the broader illness pattern.

HPBCD also captures persistent toxins that the conjugation step has not fully processed. Some toxins the modern environment delivers are difficult substrates for the body's conjugation pathways, they sit in fat tissue for years and the conjugation system processes them inefficiently when they do reach the liver. HPBCD can encapsulate some of these compounds directly, providing an exit route that does not depend on the conjugation pathway being adequate for that specific substrate.

Cyclodextrins and heart health

The cholesterol that ends up in an arterial plaque is not the cholesterol on the bloodwork report. The bloodwork measures cholesterol dissolved in lipoproteins, circulating in plasma, soluble, mobile, available for reverse transport back to the liver. The cholesterol in a mature plaque has stopped circulating. It has been deposited in the arterial wall, taken up by macrophages that came to clean up the deposit, oxidized into forms the macrophage cannot process, and eventually crystallized into solid cholesterol monohydrate. The conventional reverse-cholesterol-transport pathway cannot reach it.

Macrophages arrive to clean up the crystallized cholesterol. They engulf it but cannot process it, cholesterol crystals damage the lysosomal membranes inside the macrophage, the cell cannot digest what it took in, it dies, and its lipid-laden corpse becomes a foam cell. The foam cell's contents, unprocessed cholesterol, inflammatory signals, cellular debris, add to the plaque volume and inflammatory environment, which recruits more macrophages, which die the same way. The plaque grows from the cleanup attempt itself.

This is the situation cyclodextrin enters. The hydrophobic interior of the ring matches the cholesterol molecule, and cholesterol slides in. What is true at the level of a single molecule is also true at the level of a crystal surface: the ring binds cholesterol at the crystal face, lifts it off, and carries it into the aqueous phase. The crystal dissolves from its surface inward, dose by dose. In aqueous solution, cyclodextrin can raise the solubility of cholesterol by a factor of up to one hundred and fifty thousand⁵.

The reverse cholesterol transport pathway, which could not reach the crystal, can reach the molecule the cyclodextrin has just liberated. Free cholesterol mobilized from the plaque enters the macrophage, exits by the conventional efflux transporters, joins HDL, returns to the liver, and leaves the body as bile acid. The cyclodextrin does not replace reverse cholesterol transport. It restarts it, by moving the substrate out of a phase where the transport machinery has no access and into a phase where it does. In this way the cyclodextrin can have an enzymatic effect.

There is a second mechanism that compounds the first. Cyclodextrin entering a foam cell triggers a transcriptional shift in the macrophage itself. The liver X receptor gets activated by the oxysterols cyclodextrin produces inside the cell, and the activated receptor turns on the genes that code for the efflux transporters. The macrophage that was a passive storage container becomes an active exporter again. The cell that was part of the plaque becomes part of the cleanup. This effect has been demonstrated in animal models and in human carotid endarterectomy specimens incubated with cyclodextrin.

The clinical implication is that arterial plaque is not, mechanistically, a permanent deposit. It became permanent under the conditions the body had available, no way to dissolve crystals, no way to restart transport from a foam cell. Cyclodextrin changes the conditions. The deposit was permanent only because the tools were missing.

Three notes belong with this teaching. First, the work is slow. A mature plaque represents years to decades of deposition, and dissolving happens dose by dose at the crystal surface. Expect months of consistent use to see measurable change, not weeks. Second, calcifications are not the same thing as foam cells. For calcified plaque, chelation should be considered. Most atherosclerosis has both soft and hard aspects, and fortunately HPBCD and chelators work well together. Third, the plasma cholesterol number on standard bloodwork is the wrong place to look for evidence. The cyclodextrin's effect is on tissue cholesterol, what is in the wall, in the foam cell, in the crystal, and tissue cholesterol does not show up on a lipid panel. The right monitoring tool is imaging of the arterial wall itself such as carotid ultrasound.

Cyclodextrins, the spike protein and prions

A properly folded protein keeps its fat-soluble amino acids tucked on the inside of the fold, with water-soluble amino acids on the outside. This is what allows the body's water-based machinery, proteases, chaperones, transport proteins, to grab, process, and clear it. A misfolded protein has at least one fat-soluble amino acid on the outside. The body's water-soluble handling systems cannot get hold of it. It lodges in fat-rich

compartments, cell membranes, brain tissue, lipid stores, resists breakdown, and accumulates. It is a fat-soluble toxin. Those that propagate that is, cause other proteins near them to misfold in the same manner are called prions.

Prions are associated with nearly every neurodegenerative condition known⁹. This is where cyclodextrin connects. The same cage geometry that encapsulates fat-soluble chemical toxins encapsulates the fat-soluble amino acids on the outside of a misfolded protein, prion or not. The ring surrounds them, renders the entire complex water-soluble, and allows the body to excrete it. The tool that addresses mycotoxins and persistent organic pollutants addresses misfolded proteins (including prions) by the same mechanism.

Spike proteins from certain viral exposures and certain pharmaceutical interventions contain prion domains. When spike protein is broken down by proteolytic enzymes (a common alternative medical intervention), some research suggests that the spike protein fragments into prions.[†] Each templates neighboring proteins into misfolded configurations. The cleavage that was supposed to solve the problem has produced new ones.

This is why breaking down spike protein without simultaneously capturing the fragments is dangerous. You solve one problem, the intact spike protein, and create another, prions accumulating in fat tissue, particularly the brain. We must not trade heart disease for dementia.

The clinical rule is simple: never cleave spike protein without binding the fragments.[†] The proteolytic enzymes that break down spike protein must be paired with cyclodextrin to capture what the cleavage releases .[†]

Lysosomes

The Niemann-Pick application named earlier is not limited to a rare genetic disease. It is a general mechanism. Any cell whose lysosomes are engorged with material the cell cannot digest is in the same situation, toxic waxes, crystallized compounds, prions, oxidized fats accumulate, the lysosome swells, and the cell's housekeeping stalls. Water fasting upregulates autophagy, but fasting cannot solve what the enzymes cannot digest. Cyclodextrin bypasses the limitation entirely, it encapsulates the material, renders it water-soluble, and allows the cell to export it. The lysosome shrinks. The cell resumes normal function. Lipofuscin, the yellowish-brown pigment granules that accumulate in lysosomes with age^{10,11,12}, is a visible marker of this failure. It is the residue of incomplete lysosomal digestion, largely composed of oxidized lipids and cross-linked proteins that lysosomal enzymes cannot break down further. Its accumulation correlates with cellular aging and neurodegeneration, and it occupies lysosomal volume that would otherwise be available for functional housekeeping.

Reactivating paralyzed immune cells

Macrophages and neutrophils that engulf material they cannot digest become immobilized, alive but paralyzed, unable to perform immune function. Eventually they rupture, releasing their toxic contents and triggering inflammation. A white blood cell count can look adequate on paper while the actual working immune force is a fraction of the number. Cyclodextrin clears the contents that paralyzed them and returns the cells to active duty, immune restoration not by producing more cells but by reactivating the ones already there.

Phospholipid and vitamin replacement

Cyclodextrins extract not only toxins but also membrane phospholipids and fat soluble vitamins. Consider supplementing with fish oil, one teaspoon, twice per week, taken at least 12 hours separated from the cyclodextrin dose. The separation matters: taking fish oil alongside the cyclodextrin would simply have the cyclodextrin encapsulate the fish oil and remove it.

The nasal application

The cyclodextrin spray as part of the sinus restoration protocol uses the same active compounds applied through a different route for a different indication.

As taught earlier, cyclodextrins can be delivered via a nasal spray (consider our Ventrimet product). The same cyclodextrins applied to the nasal cavity reach the brain at concentrations no systemic route can match. The mechanism is the cribriform plate fast-track, the same anatomy that allows toxins in a compromised sinus to flow upward into brain tissue also allows therapeutic compounds to reach the brain directly, bypassing the blood-brain barrier entirely.

The numbers are striking. Cyclodextrin administered intravenously reaches the brain at very low rates, only about three-hundredths of one percent of the administered dose, because the blood-brain barrier excludes cyclodextrins effectively and an active efflux system pumps out what does cross. The nasal route delivers roughly thirty to forty times more to the brain than IV, with only about three percent entering systemic circulation. Most of what is sprayed stays local to the nasal cavity and goes to the brain via the direct nose-to-brain pathway.

The clinical implication is that the nasal cyclodextrin spray, beyond its sinus-restoration role, is a brain-targeted intervention. Patients with brain fog that does not resolve with systemic detox work, neurological symptoms following mold exposure, post-viral cognitive symptoms, or persistent symptoms after spike-protein exposure may benefit from the nasal spray as the only route by which cyclodextrins reach the brain at therapeutically useful concentrations.

The same active compound, in two formulations and two routes, addresses two anatomical compartments, the liver and general circulation through the rectal gel, the brain through the nasal spray. Patients with both systemic and brain-resident toxin burdens use both routes.

Clinical pearl: *When a patient with a compromised liver begins rectal cyclodextrin administration, liver enzymes may rise for up to six weeks. This is not damage. The cyclodextrins are mobilizing fat-soluble compounds the liver now has to process.*

References

1. Szejtli J. Introduction and general overview of cyclodextrin chemistry. *Chem Rev.* 1998;98(5):1743-1754.
2. Del Valle EMM. Cyclodextrins and their uses: a review. *Process Biochem.* 2004;39(9):1033-1046.
3. Szente L, Szejtli J. Highly soluble cyclodextrin derivatives: chemistry, properties, and trends in development. *Adv Drug Deliv Rev.* 1999;36(1):17-28.
4. Stella VJ, He Q. Cyclodextrins. *Toxicol Pathol.* 2008;36(1):30-42.
5. Zidovetzki R, Bhatt H, Bhatt DK, et al. Use of cyclodextrins to manipulate plasma membrane cholesterol content. *Biochim Biophys Acta.* 2007;1768(6):1311-1324.
6. Loftsson T, Brewster ME. Pharmaceutical applications of cyclodextrins: basic science and product development. *J Pharm Pharmacol.* 2010;62(11):1607-1621.
7. Adam JM, Bennett DJ, Bom A, et al. Cyclodextrin-derived host molecules as reversal agents for the neuromuscular blocker rocuronium bromide: synthesis and structure-activity relationships. *J Med Chem.* 2002;45(9):1806-1816.
8. Liu B, Turley SD, Burns DK, Miller AM, Repa JJ, Dietschy JM. Reversal of defective lysosomal transport in NPC disease ameliorates liver dysfunction and neurodegeneration in the npc1^{-/-} mouse. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA.* 2009;106(7):2377-2382.
9. Bhatt S, Bhatt R, Bhatt A. Attempt to untangle the prion-like misfolding mechanism for neurodegenerative diseases. *Int J Mol Sci.* 2019;19(10):3081.
10. Bhatt R, Bhatt S, Bhatt A. Lipofuscin accumulation in aging and neurodegeneration: a potential "timebomb" overlooked in Alzheimer's disease. *Transl Neurodegener.* 2025;14:529.
11. Brunk UT, Terman A. Lipofuscin: mechanisms of age-related accumulation and influence on cell function. *Free Radic Biol Med.* 2002;33(5):611-619.
12. Terman A, Brunk UT. Lipofuscin: mechanisms of formation and increase with age. *APMIS.* 1998;106(2):265-276.

Chapter 42, Treat the patient... and their home

The practitioner reading this may be thinking: I am a clinician, not a building contractor. The building science in this chapter is not complex. The practitioner already understands substrates, colonization, moisture-dependent growth, and selection pressure. A building is just another body to diagnose and treat. The practitioner who gains this literacy will find it changes outcomes in ways that body-only protocols cannot.

We spend most of our lives inside buildings. The building is the largest single ongoing exposure in our lives, larger than diet, larger than work, larger than anything the patient might think to identify when asked what they have been exposed to. The home is not a neutral container. It is a participant in the patient's biology.

Why water-damaged buildings matter so much

The fungi that colonize damp building materials are familiar to anyone who has read about mold illness. *Aspergillus*, *Stachybotrys* and others establish themselves on wet drywall, on damp wood, in HVAC systems, and in any indoor location where moisture has accumulated long enough for spores to germinate. Each produces its own characteristic mycotoxins, aflatoxins from *Aspergillus*, trichothecenes from *Stachybotrys*, ochratoxin from *Penicillium*, that aerosolize into the indoor air. The mycotoxin load from a substantially water-damaged building is large, continuous, and composed of compounds that are among the more biologically active toxins in the natural world.¹

But the same conditions that grow mold also grow bacteria. *Actinomyces*, certain *Bacillus* species, *Mycobacteria*, and other bacterial groups colonize the same wet building materials, and produce their own endotoxins and exotoxins that aerosolize alongside the mycotoxins.²

What makes the combined exposure worse is the layered combat happening in the building materials. Bacteria and fungi are ancient enemies; when they share territory, they fight. Bacteria also fight other bacteria for the same niche, and molds fight other molds. The patient is breathing the byproducts of all three wars simultaneously. Each organism escalates its chemical output in response to attack, and the patient is caught in the crossfire.³

Both bacteria and fungi form biofilms, structured matrices that physically shield the cells inside from antimicrobial compounds and from the patient's own immune system. A patient who left a water-damaged building years ago can still be carrying biofilm-protected populations in their sinuses from that exposure. Both populations continue to produce their toxins as long as their biofilms hold.⁴

What mold does that other toxins do not

Mycotoxins damage cells, disrupt mitochondrial function, displace enzyme cofactors, interfere with neurotransmitters, drive chronic inflammation... the list goes on. If that were all mold did, the protocols of the previous chapters would be adequate to clear it. Mold does something more pernicious. It actively suppresses the pathways the body would use to clear it.

Mycotoxins shift the immune system toward a TH2-dominant pattern, well-suited to extracellular parasites and allergic responses but poorly suited to clearing fungal exposures, which require TH1 and TH17 responses.⁵ Mycotoxins drive indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase (IDO) activity, depleting tryptophan and producing quinolinic acid, an excitotoxin that contributes to neurological symptoms while simultaneously starving serotonin and melatonin production.⁶ They block GABA receptors, contributing to anxiety, sleep disruption, and sympathetic dominance.⁷ They deplete melanocyte-stimulating hormone (MSH) and vasoactive intestinal peptide (VIP), both regulatory peptides whose deficits drive broader hormonal and immune dysregulation.⁸

Several mycotoxin classes, aflatoxins and trichothecenes among them, are directly cytotoxic to adrenal cortex cells and disrupt steroidogenesis at multiple levels of the HPA axis.⁹ The mold patient who reports that they cannot handle stresses they used to handle easily is often describing adrenal compromise.

The immune system as the target organ

The mycotoxins that matter in a water-damaged building are not merely irritants that provoke an immune response. Several of them disable the machinery the immune response is built from.

The trichothecenes are the clearest case. This is the class that includes the satratoxins of *Stachybotrys chartarum* and the T-2 toxin and deoxynivalenol of *Fusarium*. They bind the peptidyl transferase center of the large ribosomal subunit and arrest protein synthesis. A cell that cannot translate cannot divide, cannot secrete, and cannot mount a response. But the arrest is not the whole of it. Ribosome binding at that site triggers what is called the ribotoxic stress response, a rapid activation of the stress kinases JNK and p38, and that signaling cascade drives the cell toward apoptosis. Ricin and Shiga toxin act on the same site and produce the same response, which is the company these compounds keep.

What follows from this is lymphoid depletion. In animal exposure, apoptosis appears in the thymus, the spleen, Peyer's patches, and bone marrow. These are the tissues where lymphocytes are made, matured, and organized into a response, and they are hit first because they are the tissues dividing fastest. The immune insult is systemic. It does not require the toxin to reach a particular organ by a particular route; it requires only that the toxin reach dividing cells, and dividing immune cells are everywhere.

Note also that inhalation does not confine the exposure to the airway. Particulate cleared by the mucociliary escalator is swallowed, which delivers a share of every

inhaled dose to gut-associated lymphoid tissue. A patient with no digestive complaint and a purely respiratory exposure history is still dosing the gut.

The dose relationship is also not linear. At low exposure the trichothecenes are immunostimulatory, upregulating inflammatory gene expression, expanding germinal centers, and raising immunoglobulin A; at high exposure the same compounds are immunosuppressive by the apoptotic route above. The direction of the effect reverses with dose. So a patient in a chronically damp house is not necessarily an immunosuppressed patient; early on they may be a hyperreactive one, and the transition from one to the other is not announced by any change in the exposure itself. This is the honest explanation for why two patients in the same building present as opposites, and for why a single patient's presentation changes over years of residence.†

A second and separate mechanism belongs to *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Gliotoxin does not act on the ribosome. It blocks assembly of the NADPH oxidase complex in the neutrophil, preventing phosphorylation of p47phox and the membrane translocation of p47phox, p67phox, and p40phox. The neutrophil arrives, recognizes its target, and cannot produce the oxidative burst that kills it. Gliotoxin also interferes with macrophage phagocytosis and blunts neutrophil chemoattraction. This is a direct suppression of innate killing at the site, layered on top of the systemic adaptive damage, and it explains why bacterial colonization persists in tissue that has no shortage of arriving neutrophils.

The upper airway then takes the heaviest share of this. The upper airway then takes the heaviest share of this, not because the toxin selects that tissue but because two ordinary factors overlap there. The first is dose. Inhaled spores and toxin-laden particulate deposit in the nose, sinuses, and nasopharynx before they reach anywhere else, so local tissue concentration at those surfaces is far above what circulates.† The second is susceptibility. Ribosome-targeting toxins hurt fast-cycling compartments most, the sinonasal epithelium turns over quickly, and the germinal center is the fastest-cycling tissue in the body. Add fungal proteases degrading epithelial tight junctions and gliotoxin blunting the local neutrophil burst, and the effects compound in the one region where exposure and vulnerability coincide.

What the sinus and the tonsil each make of that overlap belongs to their own chapters — the sinus losing colonization resistance and acquiring biofilm, the tonsil losing control of organisms it was already carrying in a crypt with no mucociliary clearance. Both are local consequences of this one upstream event.

Why every modern home is at risk

Modern framing uses oriented strand board (OSB) for sheathing, pressed wood flakes glued together.¹⁰ The broken cellulose surfaces of OSB give mold easy access to wood fiber that whole wood would not present. During construction, OSB is typically left exposed to weather for weeks before the building is dried in, absorbing moisture and inoculating with airborne spores.¹¹ The sheathing then gets wrapped with house wrap

that blocks bulk water but also slows vapor outflow, creating a moisture trap. The interior is finished with drywall whose paper backing is a second cellulose food source, and if the cavity is filled with cellulose insulation, a third.

The vulnerability comes down to lignin, the complex phenolic polymer that encases cellulose fibers in intact wood like armor. Lignin is hydrophobic, chemically resistant, and so difficult to degrade that only a narrow group of fungi have evolved the machinery to do it. In solid timber, the lignin matrix limits fungal access to the digestible cellulose underneath. When wood is mechanically processed into OSB, the lignin structure is disrupted and far more cellulose surface is exposed. The resins in OSB provide some moisture resistance but do not replicate the biological armor that lignin provided.¹²

Blown cellulose insulation takes the processing one step further, the lignin is essentially gone. Manufacturers treat it with borates for fire and mold resistance, and the borates work, but if they leach from sustained moisture exposure or were unevenly applied, what remains in the wall cavity is finely divided, maximally digestible organic material. From the mold's perspective, it is cotton candy.

Roof penetrations compound the problem. Solar panel mounting bolts, plumbing vents, electrical service masts, and satellite mounts are all potential leak paths. The penetration that leaks slowly produces water intrusion the homeowner does not see, where mold grows unobserved for years. Attics carry condensation risk when warm interior air meets cold roof decking. Crawlspace carry the risk of ground moisture wicking up into the substructure. Both are spaces the occupants do not enter and do not inspect. The practitioner should assume a patient's home has mold at some level, until proven otherwise.

Detection

The first question with any mold-suspected patient is whether the building is contributing to their symptoms now, or whether the load is from a past exposure. The distinction determines the order of interventions.

A few signs from the patient carry diagnostic weight. Tenderness on the midsternal acupuncture point CV17, palpated with the practitioner's thumb, signals bradykinin elevation, a downstream marker of kinin-kallikrein activation from fungal exposure. A globus sensation, a feeling of a lump in the throat, often noticed during eating or swallowing, carries similar weight. Either sign is sufficient to flag the mold workup.

The building itself can be assessed with inexpensive tools. A moisture meter measures water content in walls, floors, and building materials. Elevated readings where things should be dry, below windows, around plumbing penetrations, in basements, behind kitchen and bathroom fixtures, identify likely growth sites. A particle counter measures airborne particulates including mold spores and fragments; indoor 10-micron particle counts more than twice outdoor values suggest mold is growing inside the home (assuming no cooking, smoking or use of hair sprays or talc powder has occurred that

day which can give false high readings). A UV flashlight illuminates the fluorescent compounds many mycotoxins produce, useful for spot-checking pantries, refrigerators, and food storage areas if you can lower ambient light sufficiently for the test.

For airborne sampling, settled-petri-dish methods preferentially capture heavier spores, air-sample methods capture lighter spores but can miss intermittent contamination, and real-time particle counting tracks cumulative load but does not identify species. A combination of several test methods is optimal if affordable.

Urine mycotoxin testing identifies which mycotoxins the patient is actively excreting. The test is informative when positive but carries a false-negative risk that parallels the metals testing limitation from the previous chapter. A patient with mycotoxins stored in fatty tissue and depleted clearance pathways can test negative while carrying significant burden. The principle of challenge testing applies here as it did with metals.

Remediation

A patient with a confirmed mold problem has three paths: remediate the building, leave it, or maintain an indefinite protocol to manage the ongoing exposure.

Remediation begins with finding and removing the contaminated materials. Fogging, air filtration, and the interventions below address airborne and surface contamination, but none of them can fix colonized OSB, wet drywall behind a wall, or saturated insulation. The source materials have to come out.

HVAC Ductwork moves air throughout the home continuously, distributing whatever contamination it contains to every room. Every person living in a home sheds approximately two pounds of skin per year, and this accumulates in the HVAC as a continuous food substrate for whatever organisms have established in the ductwork. The HVAC is not a passive distribution system. It is a selection chamber in which the organisms most adapted to digesting the occupants are the ones that flourish.

Two HVAC upgrades matter. First, a dehumidifier downstream of the AC coil. The AC dehumidifies the air at the room scale, but water condensing on the cold coil creates a localized wet zone inside the system, exactly where mold and bacteria would most welcome a water source. A downstream dehumidifier eliminates this. Second, a blower upgrade that supports HEPA filtration inside the system. Stock blowers cannot generate adequate flow through a HEPA filter. An upgraded blower turns the home's air handler into a continuous air-cleaning system.

Metal ductwork can be professionally cleaned. Flex duct and internally lined duct can be damaged by aggressive cleaning and may need replacement. Like the protocols for proper mercury removal from a tooth, HVAC cleaning must vent the removed dust outside the home, not through a filter that may fail.

Standalone air filtration units in bedrooms and main living areas are high-leverage regardless of the broader remediation plan. Most consumer HEPA units do not address mycotoxins, the toxins themselves are smaller and gas-phase or fragment-bound, and pass through HEPA. An effective unit requires several pounds of activated carbon in addition to the HEPA stage.

If remediation is out of the question due to cost, or your status as a renter, consider this as a minimum.

Turn off the HVAC system and open windows.

Place a high quality air filter, at the very least, in your bedroom.

Wash all your bedding with enzymes designed for mycotoxin degradation and seal your mattress and pillows in a vapor barrier system.

Fog the house monthly, and your bedroom every 2 weeks.

Fogging

Fogging, dispersing antimicrobial solutions as a fine mist, is the most practical intervention for ongoing reduction of airborne and surface mold and bacterial loads. A fogger directly attacks organisms and their biofilms on every surface the mist reaches, including inside the HVAC, behind furniture, and in corners that surface cleaning cannot address. The temporary humidity also can cause the airborne particles to fall to the floor where they can be vacuumed with a HEPA vacuum.

Equipment matters. A properly designed fogger delivers a near-invisible mist, a visible cloud means the particles are too large and will deposit moisture rather than a thin antimicrobial film. The fogger should not heat the solution, since many fogging solutions degrade with heat. It must be built from acid-compatible materials, since most metals corrode under acid exposure.¹³

Sanidate (peracetic acid and hydrogen peroxide) is the more potent antimicrobial. Peracetic acid (think vinegar) is broadly sporicidal and fungicidal, effective against resistant ascospore-forming molds that weaker agents leave behind.¹⁴ It breaks down to water, oxygen, and acetic acid. For heavy-duty remediation, first-pass treatment of a contaminated structure, fogging attics and crawlspaces, addressing established biofilms, Sanidate is the stronger tool. It is mildly corrosive to certain metals at fogging concentrations; sensitive electronics should be covered or removed.¹⁵

Hypochlorous acid (HOCl) is the same compound human neutrophils produce to kill pathogens. It is effective against common household molds and bacteria, non-toxic at fogging concentrations, and breaks down without residue.¹⁶ Its advantage over Sanidate is greater electronics safety, research on HOCl dry fog has shown no changes in performance parameters of exposed circuit boards and medical devices.¹⁷ HOCl can also be generated at home with an electrolysis device from salt water, giving the patient an indefinitely sustainable tool with no ongoing supply cost.

The practical approach is to use both: Sanidate for initial heavy remediation and periodic deep treatments, HOCl for ongoing maintenance fogging in living spaces with electronics in place.

Both solutions are non-toxic with adequate ventilation. The patient should be out of the building during fogging and can reoccupy within an hour of ventilating. Monthly fogging is often sufficient in moderate cases; weekly may be needed in severe cases until the source is addressed. The pattern to watch for is the patient who feels well after fogging and progressively worse before the next one, that means the interval is too long.

A note on HVAC fogging. The EPA considers HVAC ductwork a distinct use site under FIFRA. Neither Sanidate nor home-generated HOCl is currently registered for HVAC duct treatment. Fogging living spaces is straightforward; directing fog into ductwork is a different regulatory question, and practitioners should advise patients accordingly.

Porous surfaces

The soft contents of the home accumulate mycotoxins and continue to release them long after the source contamination is addressed.

Clothing is usually recoverable with multiple wash cycles using mycotoxin-degrading enzyme additives. Patients should test tolerance to a recovered garment before reintegrating their full wardrobe.

Carpets and upholstery may not be recoverable. The porous structure makes it difficult to verify whether cleaning has reduced the load.

Hard surfaces clean readily. The line falls at porosity.

Why some people get sick and others do not

Two people in the same moldy building can have radically different responses. The unaffected person often becomes a source of social pressure on the affected one, dismissing their symptoms as imagined. This damages relationships and delays intervention.

Part of the difference is genetic. Approximately 25% of the population carries HLA-DR haplotypes that predispose them to chronic inflammatory response to mold exposure, and these haplotypes appear in roughly 90% of patients seeking specialty evaluation for mold illness.¹⁸ But substrate burden also matters, a patient already carrying chemical and metal loads with depleted glutathione has less reserve to handle additional mold exposure. And total exposure history matters, a patient previously in a different moldy environment may carry residual biofilm-protected populations that lower their threshold and be sensitized to even the smallest exposures.

The unaffected occupant is not evidence that the affected occupant is imagining things. The two bodies are bringing different vulnerabilities to the same exposure. The teaching the practitioner offers is that the symptoms are real and that the path forward depends on what the patient can change about their situation, not on convincing the unaffected occupants.

Beyond mold

Highly sensitized people are likely already aware about Volatile organic compounds (VOCs) from new building materials, furniture, carpeting, paints, and adhesives. What they may not know about is:

Gas stoves produce nitrogen oxides and ultrafine particulates that have neurologic effects.[†] If a patient cannot switch to an electric stove, a range hood venting to outside during cooking can help.

Wood stoves must be used in a positive pressure environment; otherwise combustion toxins can be pulled into the living space through the chimney when not being used. Flues are designed not to fully seal for safety reasons.

What all this means for the practitioner

Ask about the building in every workup. Housing history, where, how long, whether water damage was present, is part of the clinical intake. So is workplace history. Schools are common exposure sites for children.

One mold assessment company reported a school heavily contaminated with mold whose students and teachers were constantly getting sick. The school said they could not afford to remediate and would not publicly acknowledge the problem for fear of lawsuit. Their solution was to bring in air filtration units each evening and remove them before students arrived each morning. The filtration did not fix the problem. It improved it somewhat. The home is not the only building to check. If a patient's symptoms worsen at work or a child declines during the school year, the exposure may be coming from a building the practitioner never thought to ask about.

Clinical pearl: *If nothing is working with a highly sensitive patient, have them spend a week somewhere mold-free. Travel and novelty produce their own dopamine lift, but if symptoms meaningfully decrease within a week, you have your smoking gun. The building is the problem.*

References

1. Pizzorno J. Is mold toxicity really a problem for our patients? Part I, Respiratory conditions. **Integrative Medicine: A Clinician's Journal**. 2016;15(3):8–10.

2. Täubel M, et al. The occupant as a source of house dust bacteria. **Journal of Allergy and Clinical Immunology**. 2009;124(4):834–840.
3. Murtoniemi T, et al. Microbial volatile organic compounds produced by fungi on damp building materials. **Indoor Air**. 2003;13(2):148–155.
4. Ramage G, et al. Fungal biofilm resistance. **International Journal of Microbiology**. 2012;2012:528521.
5. Shoemaker RC, House DE. SBS symptoms in patients with chronic mold exposure, a case series. **Neurotoxicology and Teratology**. 2006;28(5):573–588.
6. Müller A, et al. Role of indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase in antimicrobial defence and immune regulation: tryptophan depletion versus production of toxic kynurenines. **British Journal of Pharmacology**. 2008;153(Suppl 1):S289–S298.
7. Islam Z, et al. Satratoxin G from the black mold *Stachybotrys chartarum* evokes olfactory sensory neuron loss and inflammation in the murine nose and brain. **Environmental Health Perspectives**. 2006;114(7):1099–1107.
8. Shoemaker RC, Hudnell HK. Possible estuary-associated syndrome: symptoms, vision, and treatment. **Environmental Health Perspectives**. 2001;109(5):539–545.
9. Bondy GS, Pestka JJ. Immunomodulation by fungal toxins. **Journal of Toxicology and Environmental Health, Part B**. 2000;3(2):109–143. See also: Endocrine effect of some mycotoxins on humans: a clinical review. **Toxins**. 2023;15(9):539.
10. Engineered Wood Association (APA). Performance Standard for Wood-Based Structural-Use Panels. PS 2-18. 2018.
11. Viitanen H, et al. Moisture and biodeterioration risk of building materials and structures. **Journal of Building Physics**. 2010;33(3):201–224.
12. Schwarze FWMR, et al. **Fungal Strategies of Wood Decay in Trees**. Springer. 2000.
13. Rogawansamy S, et al. An evaluation of antifungal agents for the treatment of fungal contamination in indoor air environments. **International Journal of Environmental Research and Public Health**. 2015;12(6):6319–6332.
14. Scaramuzza N, et al. Effect of peracetic acid on ascospore-forming molds and test microorganisms used for bio-validations of sanitizing processes in food plants. **International Journal of Food Microbiology**. 2020;332:108770.
15. Pechacek N, et al. Evaluation of the toxicity data for peracetic acid in deriving occupational exposure limits: a minireview. **Toxicology**. 2015;328:77–83.

16. Wang L, et al. Hypochlorous acid as a potential wound care agent. *Journal of Burns and Wounds*. 2007;6:e5.

17. Wójcik-Fatla A, et al. Decontamination effect of hypochlorous acid dry mist on selected bacteria, viruses, spores, and fungi as well as on components of electronic systems. *International Journal of Environmental Research and Public Health*. 2024;21(7):888.

18. Shoemaker RC. *Surviving Mold: Life in the Era of Dangerous Buildings*. Otter Bay Books. 2010.

Chapter 43, Trial by fire

The principle from Chapter 1 was that supplements are forgiving in a way drugs are not. Get the drug wrong and you have made the patient worse, sometimes substantially. Get the supplement wrong and the worst likely outcome is mild discomfort, an intervention that did nothing, or information about what the actual problem is not. The asymmetry permits a clinical posture that drug practice cannot allow. You can experiment. The intervention itself becomes part of how you figure out what is going on.

This chapter is the worked example of that principle. The condition the chapter addresses, histamine dysregulation, is uniquely suited to the trial-by-fire approach because it is uniquely difficult to diagnose by any other route. Most practitioners know histamine as the molecule of allergy, which means hives and hay fever, which means H1 receptors on skin and respiratory mucosa. Those are real. They are also only a small part of what histamine actually does in the body, and the symptoms produced by the other receptors are routinely missed because the practitioner is not looking for them.

A patient walks into the office with fibromyalgia, or with POTS, or with treatment-resistant depression, or with mid-cycle anxiety that resolves at menstruation, or with a heart that races without explanation, or with brain fog that began after a concussion eighteen months ago and never lifted. The conventional workup for each of these takes a different path. Rheumatology for the fibromyalgia. Cardiology for the POTS. Psychiatry for the depression. Gynecology for the cycle-correlated symptoms. None of those workups is likely to reach histamine, because none of those specialists is trained to see histamine as a candidate for the presentation in front of them.

The trial-by-fire posture is what surfaces it. You suspect histamine on the basis of pattern, you intervene against it, and you read the response. If the symptoms improve, you have your answer. If they do not, you have learned something equally useful: histamine was not a driver, and the differential moves elsewhere. The cost of being wrong is a dose that did nothing. The information is what you came for.

What follows is the receptor map, because without it the practitioner does not know what they are looking for, and the trial is harder to design and harder to read.

H1 and H2, Far Beyond Skin and Lungs

In skin, H1 and H2 produce the classical itch, hives, urticaria, and allergic dermatitis the textbook describes. In sinuses, they produce rhinitis, sinusitis, and congestion. In lungs, they produce asthma and bronchospasm. So far, this is the conventional picture.

In gut tissue, the same receptors produce food allergy and gut hypersensitivity, which the patient often experiences as IBS-like symptoms without the classical IgE-driven presentation. In muscles, H1 and H2 activation contributes to fibromyalgia. In joints, it contributes to arthritis and joint pain. In cardiovascular tissue, it produces hypertension or hypotension depending on the receptor balance, dizziness, arrhythmias, and the

orthostatic intolerance pattern conventional medicine calls POTS.^{3,4} In peripheral nerves, it contributes to chronic pain and neuropathy. In the prostate, it contributes to benign prostatic hyperplasia. In uterine tissue, it contributes to PMS, menstrual cramping, miscarriage, and difficulty conceiving. In bladder tissue, it produces interstitial cystitis and the burning urination that is not from infection.

The reframe this list represents deserves to be named directly. The fibromyalgia patient, the POTS patient, the interstitial cystitis patient, in each case, the histamine pathway is one of several contributors, sometimes the dominant one, and the patient who responds to a histamine intervention has had the dominant driver finally addressed after years of treatment that worked on other contributors.

The clinical posture the practitioner takes from this is that any chronic condition involving inflammation, smooth muscle dysregulation, or unexplained hypersensitivity is a candidate for the histamine workup. The list above is not exhaustive. The principle is that H1 and H2 receptors are far more widely distributed than the classical teaching emphasizes, and the symptom patterns they produce in the underemphasized tissues are easy to miss unless the practitioner is looking for them.

H3, The Allergic Brain

H3 receptors live in the central nervous system, primarily on histaminergic neurons in the brainstem region called the tuberomammillary nucleus.⁵ Their function is regulatory. They sense the level of histamine in the brain and adjust histamine release in response. When brain histamine is high, H3 reduces release. When brain histamine is low, H3 permits more.

This is the protective mechanism the brain uses to keep histamine from rising too high in a closed compartment where swelling can be fatal.

The system has a vulnerability. Some H3 receptors carry constitutive activity, they are partially active without any histamine present, due to genetic variation or to chronic inflammation that has shifted the receptor's baseline.^{6,7} A patient with H3 constitutive activity has chronically suppressed brain histamine even when blood histamine is normal, because the H3 receptors are sending a constant suppression signal regardless of what the histamine level actually is.

Brain histamine is not just a signaling molecule for inflammation. It is a regulator of release for several other neurotransmitters the brain depends on for ordinary function. Acetylcholine, dopamine, serotonin, norepinephrine, and GABA release all respond to brain histamine signaling.^{5,8,9} When brain histamine is suppressed, the release of these neurotransmitters falls below the level the patient's nervous system needs.

The symptom pattern that follows is what I call the allergic brain. Low acetylcholine produces learning and memory difficulty. Low dopamine produces motivational loss and the cluster of symptoms that resembles the pre-clinical phase of Parkinson's. Low

serotonin produces depression. Low norepinephrine produces focus problems and presentations that look like ADHD. Low GABA produces inability to relax, poor deep sleep, and chronic anxiety. On top of these specific neurotransmitter deficits, the broader H3 syndrome includes headaches, brain fog, difficulty waking, temperature dysregulation, vertigo, and nausea.

This patient does not look allergic. They do not have hives or hay fever. They have psychiatric symptoms, and the standard differential for psychiatric symptoms does not include H3 dysregulation. This is one of the categories of patient where the trial-by-fire approach pays off most dramatically, a mechanism identified that years of psychiatric workup did not surface, opening a protocol that can do work no combination of psychiatric medications could do.

In this case, liposomal DAO can make the patient feel better or worse depending on BBB patency. If liposomal DAO makes the condition worse, that is valuable information. Right lever, wrong direction. Try histidine supplementation.

H4, The Immune Cycle and the Cardiovascular Reframe

H4 receptors live on immune cells, mast cells primarily, also macrophages, eosinophils, T cells, and other lineages.¹⁰ The H4 mechanism is what makes histamine reactions self-reinforcing rather than self-limiting.

When mast cells encounter a trigger, they degranulate and release histamine into the surrounding tissue. Some of that histamine reaches H4 receptors on nearby mast cells, on macrophages migrating through the tissue, and on circulating immune cells in adjacent vasculature. H4 activation recruits more mast cells to the tissue, activates the cells that arrive, and promotes histamine production by the recruited cells, because mast cells and certain macrophages express histidine decarboxylase and synthesize their own histamine from dietary histidine.^{10 11} The result is a positive feedback loop: histamine begets more mast cells, more mast cells produce more histamine, more histamine activates more H4 receptors. The tissue becomes progressively more populated with histamine-producing cells, and the local histamine load rises over time even when the original trigger is no longer present.

The macrophage version of this story produces the cardiovascular reframe. Macrophages activated through H4 in the arterial wall accumulate cholesterol, they take up oxidized LDL and other lipid particles at rates that exceed their ability to process them.^{12 13} The cell continues producing its own histamine, which continues to activate H4 in the surrounding tissue, which continues to recruit more macrophages, which continue to accumulate cholesterol. Eventually the cholesterol-laden macrophages die, leaving their lipid contents behind in the arterial wall. These dead, cholesterol-engorged macrophages are foam cells, and accumulations of foam cells are the cellular substance of atherosclerotic plaque.^{14,15}

Atherosclerosis is not exclusively an allergic phenomenon, and the histamine pathway is not the whole explanation. Cholesterol metabolism, oxidative damage, endothelial injury, and a number of other contributors all participate in plaque formation. But the histamine-driven foam cell mechanism is one of the major pathways,¹² and it is essentially absent from the conventional cardiovascular treatment model. Adding histamine intervention to a cardiovascular protocol opens a treatment axis that conventional cardiology does not work on, and patients with significant histamine drivers may show cardiovascular improvement that statin therapy alone never produced.

The same mechanism in liver tissue may produce fatty liver. Macrophages in the hepatic sinusoids, activated through H4, accumulate fat in the same pattern. The patient with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease is not commonly understood as having a histamine-mediated condition, and the conventional approaches to NAFLD do not typically include histamine intervention. The mechanism suggests they should.

The broader principle from H4 is that histamine reactions are not events. They are processes, and the processes self-amplify without a clear end point if the conditions permit. † Tissue that has been hosting an H4-driven inflammatory cycle for years has accumulated structural change, more mast cells than it started with, more macrophages, more local histamine production capacity, and a lower threshold for activation than the same tissue had before the cycle began.

Mast Cells as Ancient Parasite Defense

A question worth pausing on. Why does the body produce all of these reactions in the first place? Itching, sneezing, coughing, diarrhea, vasodilation, vascular permeability, smooth muscle contraction, these are profoundly disruptive. What evolutionary pressure produced a system that does this?

The answer is parasites. Mast cells predate antibody-mediated immunity in evolutionary history. They evolved to handle parasitic worms, organisms too large for white blood cells to phagocytose. The defense strategy is mechanical expulsion.^{16 17 18}

Itch on skin causes scratching, which physically dislodges parasites embedded in or crossing the skin. Diarrhea in the gut flushes out parasites that have established themselves in the intestinal lumen. Cough in the lungs ejects parasitic larvae that have migrated through the airways. Sneezing in the sinuses expels parasites that have entered the nasal passages. Tearing and rubbing in the eyes wash and dislodge organisms that have reached the conjunctiva. Each of the symptoms patients call allergic is, in evolutionary terms, a precisely engineered parasite expulsion mechanism.

The clinical implication is significant. The mast cells producing modern allergy symptoms are not malfunctioning. They are correctly executing a defense program in response to a signal they have misinterpreted. The pollen, food protein or mold spore looks enough like a parasite to trigger the response.

This reframe matters for two reasons. First, it changes how the practitioner thinks about the patient's symptoms, not pathology, but normal physiology operating against the wrong target. Second, when the histamine workup does not resolve a hypersensitivity presentation that looks histamine-driven, the practitioner should consider that the mast cells may not be misfiring, they may be responding correctly to an actual parasitic infection the patient has not been diagnosed with. A persistent histamine picture that does not settle on protocol warrants a parasite workup, and the antiparasitic interventions discussed earlier become part of the differential rather than something separate.

Immunologic Scar

The H4 self-reinforcing cycle has a specific consequence in tissue that has been injured. When tissue is damaged, by physical trauma, by surgical incision, by burn, by significant infection, by repeated micro-injury, mast cells are part of the normal healing response.^{19 20 21} They enter the injured tissue, participate in the wound-edge approximation phase, and contribute to the inflammatory signaling that initiates repair. In clean healing, the mast cells leave as the tissue resolves, and the area returns to its baseline mast cell density.

In derailed healing, they do not leave. Healing can derail for many reasons, chronic systemic inflammation, ongoing toxin exposure, inadequate substrate for repair, repetitive re-injury, or a substrate burden that prevents the body from completing the resolution phase. When the resolution does not complete, the mast cells that came in for the acute phase persist.²² Once they persist, the H4 cycle takes over: the resident mast cells produce histamine, more mast cells are recruited, and the tissue becomes progressively more populated with histamine-producing cells. The threshold for symptomatic activation falls. The tissue becomes locally allergic and locally inflammatory long after the original injury has structurally healed.

This is what I call immunologic scar.† The framing is precise. There is a parallel to physical scar, tissue that has been changed by injury and that does not return to its original configuration, but the alteration is at the immune-cell population level rather than the structural level. The skin over a healed concussion may look normal. The brain tissue underneath, if the concussion produced a derailed inflammatory resolution, may carry an immunologic scar that lowers the threshold for inflammatory response indefinitely.

A useful way to describe what immunologic scar does to the patient is post-traumatic stress disorder at the tissue level. The tissue, like a traumatized nervous system, has been changed by the original event and remains permanently more reactive to subsequent stimuli. A small trigger that the original tissue would have handled without difficulty produces a disproportionate inflammatory response, because the local mast cell population is primed and waiting.

The list of triggers that produce immunologic scar is broad. Concussion is one of the most common and most under-recognized^{23 24}, the patient who had a concussion years ago and has carried a vague cluster of symptoms ever since (headaches, sleep changes, mood shifts, sensitivity to sensory input) is often a patient with cerebral immunologic scar. Research in TBI models shows that concussive head injury evokes persistent dural mast cell degranulation lasting at least thirty days, and that mast cells are the first responders, before microglia, in brain injuries.^{24 25} Injuries to the brain that happen while the brain is still recovering from an earlier injury are particularly likely to produce it. Whiplash from car accidents produces the same pattern in the cervical region, with downstream effects on autonomic function and headache patterns. Surgical trauma can produce immunologic scar at the surgical site, particularly for surgeries that involved significant tissue manipulation or complications. Significant burns leave immunologic scar in the affected skin and sometimes in deeper tissue. Repeated minor injuries, the athlete with chronic micro-trauma to a particular joint, the worker with repetitive strain, produce immunologic scar at the site of repeated insult.

The clinical implication is that previous injury history is a meaningful intake question for any patient with localized chronic inflammatory or hypersensitivity presentations. The connection between an old injury and current symptoms is not always obvious to the patient, and is rarely surfaced in conventional workups.

Immunologic scar is treated as any established H4 cycle is treated, and the governing variable is duration rather than intensity. Mast cells that have taken up residence in tissue do not leave quickly. The work has to lower the histamine load, stabilize the resident cells, and hold that lowered state long enough for them to exit and for the tissue to return to its baseline density. This is months, not days, and a protocol abandoned at six weeks because nothing has changed has been abandoned at the point where the change was about to begin.

Clinical pearl: *Anytime you suspect immunologic issues, look to the microbiomes, and the tonsils specifically.*

References

1. Panula P, Chazot PL, Cowart M, et al. International Union of Basic and Clinical Pharmacology. XCVIII. Histamine Receptors. *Pharmacological Reviews*. 2015;67(3):601-655.
2. Histamine H1 Receptor [overview]. In: *ScienceDirect Topics*. Elsevier. [Comprehensive receptor distribution review covering H1–H4 expression across gastric mucosal cells, heart, CNS, immune cells, smooth muscles of airway, vasculature, and uterus.]

3. Neumann J, Kirchhefer U, Dhein S, Hofmann B, Gergs U. The Roles of Cardiovascular H2-Histamine Receptors Under Normal and Pathophysiological Conditions. **Frontiers in Pharmacology**. 2021;12:732842.
4. Levi R, Smith NCE. Histamine H3-receptors: A new frontier in myocardial ischemia. **Journal of Pharmacology and Experimental Therapeutics**. 2000;292(3):825-830.
5. Yoshikawa T, Nakamura T, Yanai K. Histaminergic neurons in the tuberomammillary nucleus as a control centre for wakefulness. **British Journal of Pharmacology**. 2021;178:750-769.
6. Morisset S, Rouleau A, Ligneau X, et al. High constitutive activity of native H3 receptors regulates histamine neurons in brain. **Nature**. 2000;408:860-864.
7. Arrang JM, Morisset S, Gbahou F. Constitutive activity of the histamine H3 receptor. **Trends in Pharmacological Sciences**. 2007;28(7):350-357.
8. Leurs R, Bakker RA, Timmerman H, de Esch IJP. The histamine H3 receptor: from gene cloning to H3 receptor drugs. **Nature Reviews Drug Discovery**. 2005;4:107-120.
9. Passani MB, Lin J-S, Hancock A, Crochet S, Blandina P. The histamine H3 receptor as a novel therapeutic target for cognitive and sleep disorders. **Trends in Pharmacological Sciences**. 2004;25(12):618-625.
10. Thurmond RL, Gelfand EW, Dunford PJ. The role of histamine H1 and H4 receptors in allergic inflammation: the search for new antihistamines. **Nature Reviews Drug Discovery**. 2008;7:41-53. See also: Leurs R, et al. The role of histamine H4 receptor in immune and inflammatory disorders. **British Journal of Pharmacology**. 2009;157(1):24-33.
11. Mazzoni A, Young HA, Spitzer JH, Visintin A, Segal DM. Histamine regulates cytokine production in maturing dendritic cells, resulting in altered T cell polarization. **Journal of Clinical Investigation**. 2001;108(12):1865-1873.
12. Chen C, Khismatullin DB. Oxidized low-density lipoprotein contributes to atherogenesis via co-activation of macrophages and mast cells. **PLOS ONE**. 2015;10(3):e0123088.
13. Bot I, de Jager SCA, Zerneck A, et al. Perivascular mast cells promote atherogenesis and induce plaque destabilization in apolipoprotein E-deficient mice. **Circulation**. 2007;115(19):2516-2525.
14. Kaartinen M, Penttilä A, Kovanen PT. Mast cells as potential accelerators of human atherosclerosis, from early to late lesions. **International Journal of Molecular Sciences**. 2019;20(20):4479.

15. Kritikou E, Kuiper J, Kovanen PT, Bot I. The impact of mast cells on cardiovascular diseases. **European Journal of Pharmacology**. 2016;778:103-115. See also: Wezel A, et al. Mast cells as effectors in atherosclerosis. **Arteriosclerosis, Thrombosis, and Vascular Biology**. 2015;35(2):265-271.
16. Hepworth MR, Daniłowicz-Luebert E, Rausch S, et al. Mast cells orchestrate type 2 immunity to helminths through regulation of tissue-derived cytokines. **Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences**. 2012;109(17):6644-6649.
17. Mayer JU, Demiri M, Gassen S, et al. Mast cells are crucial for induction of group 2 innate lymphoid cells and clearance of helminth infections. **Immunity**. 2017;46(5):863-874.
18. Inclan-Rico JM, Siracusa MC. Communication is key: Innate immune cells regulate host protection to helminths. **Frontiers in Immunology**. 2022;13:995432.
19. Wulff BC, Wilgus TA. Mast cell activity in the healing wound: more than meets the eye? **Experimental Dermatology**. 2013;22(8):507-510.
20. Noli C, Miolo A. The role of mast cells in wound healing. **Veterinary Dermatology**. 2010;21:p.375 [review]. See also: Ud-Din S, Wilgus TA, Bayat A. Mast cells in skin scarring: a review of animal and human research. **Frontiers in Immunology**. 2020;11:552205.
21. Artuc M, Hermes B, Steckelings UM, Grützkau A, Henz BM. Mast cells and their mediators in cutaneous wound healing, active participants or innocent bystanders? **Experimental Dermatology**. 1999;8(1):1-16.
22. Trautmann A, Toksoy A, Engelhardt E, Bröcker E-B, Gillitzer R. Mast cell involvement in normal human skin wound healing: expression of monocyte chemoattractant protein-1 is correlated with recruitment of mast cells which synthesize interleukin-4 in vivo. **Journal of Pathology**. 2000;190(1):100-106.
23. Kempuraj D, Ahmed ME, Selvakumar GP, et al. Mast cell activation, neuroinflammation, and tight junction protein derangement in acute traumatic brain injury. **Mediators of Inflammation**. 2020;2020:4243953.
24. Levy D, Edut S, Baraz-Goldstein R, et al. Responses of dural mast cells in concussive and blast models of mild traumatic brain injury in mice: potential implications for post-traumatic headache. **Cephalalgia**. 2016;36(1):29-37.
25. Kempuraj D, Selvakumar GP, Ahmed ME, et al. Mast cell activation in brain injury, stress, and post-traumatic stress disorder and Alzheimer's disease pathogenesis. **Frontiers in Neuroscience**. 2017;11:703.

Chapter 44, Capillary diagnostics

Capillary microscopy, a simple in-office technique that uses a handheld scope and a drop of oil to visualize the capillary bed at the nailfold. The equipment costs a few hundred dollars and the technique can be learned in under an hour. The findings fall into a small set of recognizable patterns, each pointing back to the upstream causes the preceding chapters have described. The capillary bed visible at the fingertip is the same capillary bed present throughout the body, so what is seen in the nailfold reflects what is happening in every organ system. From there we move to the heart and the brain, where the consequences of capillary damage become clinically obvious.

Most clinical tests are specific. They answer one question. A few are general, they tell the practitioner that something is wrong, and the next move is to figure out what. Specific tests are most useful when the clinician already suspects the diagnosis and wants to confirm it. General tests are most useful when doing an initial screening of a patient to get a global sense of health.

The erythrocyte sedimentation rate is the classical general test. A high sed rate indicates inflammation somewhere. It does not say where, why, or what kind. What it does is tell the practitioner that "nothing is wrong" is not the right conclusion.

Capillaroscopy belongs in the same category. Mainstream rheumatology has narrowed it to a specific test for systemic sclerosis and a few related connective tissue diseases.^{1,2} Almost every chronic condition this book has discussed produces capillary changes visible at the nailfold, because almost every chronic condition eventually expresses itself at the level of microcirculation.[†]

Why the capillaries matter

The capillary is where the work happens. Arteries distribute, veins return, lymphatics drain. Exchange between blood and tissue occurs only at the capillary, where the wall is one cell thick and the lumen is so narrow that red cells must deform, sometimes folding nearly in half, to pass through single file. Every cell in the body depends on a capillary within roughly one hundred microns of itself. Beyond that, diffusion fails.³

The capillary-to-cell ratio determines whether tissue receives what it needs, and the cells in question are the parenchymal cells of every organ. The numbers vary by tissue. A trained athlete has roughly five to seven capillaries per muscle fiber in skeletal muscle. A sedentary middle-aged adult has two to three.⁴ Cardiac muscle in a healthy adult runs about one capillary per cardiomyocyte at baseline, with the capacity to recruit more under demand, a capacity that declines with rarefaction.⁵ The brain runs higher: cortical gray matter has roughly three to four capillaries per neuron in healthy young tissue, dropping toward one in elderly patients with cognitive decline.⁶ The kidney glomerulus is essentially a capillary tuft, and tubular cells depend on the peritubular capillary network for the oxygen and substrate to drive reabsorption. The liver hepatocyte sits directly on a sinusoidal capillary on at least one face. Each capillary lost means the cells that depended on it are now drawing supply from a more distant

source, against a steeper diffusion gradient, with less reserve to handle increased demand. The process is called rarefaction, and it happens in every organ at the same time, driven by the same systemic causes.⁷

Three organ systems deserve special mention because they are unusually sensitive to capillary dysfunction. The kidney filters at the capillary scale, the entire function of the glomerulus and the peritubular network is microvascular, and the silent decline in eGFR that conventional medicine attributes to age is largely capillary loss.⁸ The retina has the highest metabolic demand per gram of any tissue in the body and depends on a delicate capillary bed that fails early; diabetic retinopathy is the textbook example, but the same pattern shows up in hypertension, mold illness, and chronic inflammatory disease.⁹ The cochlea depends on the stria vascularis, a specialized capillary bed that maintains the endocochlear potential required for hearing. Age-related hearing loss is in significant part cochlear microvascular failure.¹⁰ A patient with declining kidney function, early macular changes, and progressive hearing loss is not three separate problems. They are one capillary problem expressing in three organs at once.†

The visible signs of aging skin are downstream of a capillary bed that has lost density. The same process is happening inside every organ.

There are many theories as to why we age. The catastrophic garbage theory holds that cellular waste, lipofuscin, oxidized proteins, damaged organelles, accumulates faster than the body can clear it, eventually overwhelming cellular function.¹¹ Mitochondrial dysfunction theory holds that progressive damage to mitochondrial DNA and the electron transport chain reduces the cell's capacity to produce ATP, with cascading consequences for every energy-dependent process.¹² Cellular senescence theory holds that cells which have stopped dividing accumulate in tissue and secrete inflammatory factors that damage their neighbors.¹³ Stem cell exhaustion theory holds that the regenerative reserves of each tissue are progressively depleted until repair can no longer keep pace with damage.¹⁴ They are all true, and here is another. A substantial fraction of what gets attributed to age is the accumulated microvascular consequence of the burdens this book has been describing.† The patient who arrives in their sixties with declining capillary density is rarely just aging. The reference range at age sixty reflects a population carrying these burdens. Average within that population is not healthy by any absolute standard.

A note on circulation

The conventional model treats the heart as a pump pushing blood through vessels by pressure alone. This works in the larger arteries. It becomes less satisfying in the capillary bed, where pressure has dropped to a small fraction of arterial values and where the total cross-sectional area of the capillary network is enormous compared to the aorta. The math does not quite close. Some researchers, notably Branko Furst¹⁵ and Gerald Pollack,¹⁶ have proposed that the circulation has additional motive forces beyond cardiac pressure, surface charge interactions, structured water layers along the endothelium, and electrochemical gradients that contribute to flow at the smallest scale.

The interested reader can pursue this literature directly. What matters clinically is that capillary flow involves more than pressure, and the capillary bed can be in trouble while the larger circulation looks fine.†

How upstream causes drive capillary dysfunction

Every major burden this book has addressed in Part Two converges on the capillary bed through nitric oxide, and the convergence explains why nailfold findings show up across such a wide range of presenting complaints.†

Nitric oxide is what the capillary depends on. Endothelial NO maintains vessel tone, supports the alignment of new vessels with shear stress during angiogenesis, recruits pericytes for stabilization, holds tight junctions together, and keeps red cells from aggregating.¹⁷ Adequate NO produces a healthy capillary bed. Inadequate NO produces some combination of the seven findings described below.

Sinus dysbiosis lowers systemic NO directly. The paranasal sinuses are the body's largest single source of nitric oxide, produced continuously by the sinus epithelium and entrained into inhaled air during nasal breathing.¹⁸ Chronic sinus inflammation, biofilm colonization, and the mouth breathing that compensates for nasal obstruction all reduce nasal NO output. Patients with chronic rhinosinusitis show measurably reduced nasal NO compared to healthy controls,¹⁹ and the reduction propagates through the entire vascular system.

Microbiome dysbiosis drives capillary dysfunction through endotoxin translocation. The toxic Gram-negative populations described in the colon chapters produce inflammatory LPS, and a compromised intestinal barrier allows that LPS into portal and then systemic circulation. Circulating LPS activates TLR4 on endothelial cells continuously, which uncouples eNOS, the same enzyme that should be making protective NO begins making superoxide instead.²⁰ Superoxide combines with whatever NO is still being produced to form peroxynitrite, one of the most damaging molecules in vascular biology.²¹ Peroxynitrite degrades the basement membrane that gives capillaries their normal caliber. The vessel loses structural support and either dilates passively or fails outright.

Toxic metals displace cofactors the endothelium needs to function. Mercury, lead, cadmium, and aluminum bind to thiol groups on the enzymes that maintain NO production and recycle the BH4 cofactor that keeps eNOS coupled.²² They also displace zinc and copper from antioxidant enzymes that would otherwise quench the oxidative stress driving eNOS uncoupling. The result is the same peroxynitrite pathway driven by a different upstream cause.

Mold and mycotoxins drive the iNOS arm of the same problem. Mycotoxins activate inflammatory signaling that upregulates inducible nitric oxide synthase in macrophages, smooth muscle, and endothelium.²³ iNOS produces NO at concentrations far higher than eNOS and does so independently of normal regulatory signals. The vessels can no longer constrict normally because they receive a constant inflammatory dilation signal.

Mycotoxins also deplete glutathione, which removes the body's primary defense against the peroxynitrite that uncoupled eNOS is producing.²⁴ The two effects compound.

Sleep apnea produces chronic intermittent hypoxia, which is mechanistically worse for the endothelium than steady-state low oxygen. Each cycle of desaturation followed by reoxygenation generates a burst of reactive oxygen species.²⁵ Hundreds of these cycles per night, year after year, uncouple eNOS, oxidize BH4 faster than it can be regenerated, damage pericytes, and accelerate capillary rarefaction. Patients with untreated apnea show measurably worse capillaroscopic findings than matched controls.²⁶

The convergence is the clinical point. Five different upstream causes, sinus dysfunction, dysbiosis, metals, mold, and apnea, all damage the capillary bed through overlapping mechanisms centered on NO. The practitioner who sees abnormal capillaroscopy is not seeing a separate disease. They are seeing the downstream signature of whichever combination of upstream burdens this particular patient is carrying.†

Technique

We will now give the reader a basic understanding of how to read the nailfold.

A videocapillaroscope at 200x magnification is sufficient for clinical work and, depending on optical quality, can be purchased for under five hundred dollars. The patient should be in a warm room, cold reduces visibility and produces vasospasm that can be mistaken for pathology, and should sit comfortably for at least fifteen minutes before examination so vasomotor tone stabilizes.²⁷

The nailfold is the standard examination site because the capillaries there run parallel to the skin surface, allowing each loop to be visualized along its length. At most other body sites the capillaries run perpendicular and only their tips are visible.²⁷ A drop of cedarwood oil applied to the nailfold improves the optical interface, its refractive index closely matches that of the epidermis. Mineral or immersion oil work as alternatives.

The ring and little fingers of both hands are the preferred sites. They are less subject to occupational trauma than the index and middle fingers, and the architecture there tends to be more representative of the patient's general microvascular state. The thumb is avoided because trauma and frequent use distort the local pattern.¹

Maurizio Cutolo's *Atlas of Capillaroscopy in Rheumatic Diseases* is the standard reference and is available as an eBook from several vendors.¹

The healthy field

A healthy nailfold shows rows of capillary loops aligned in parallel, each shaped like a hairpin with an arterial limb ascending, a turn at the apex, and a venous limb descending. The loops are evenly spaced, approximately seven to twelve per linear

millimeter at the distal row, uniform in size and shape. The background between loops is clear. Flow is continuous and smooth.²

Findings

Dilated capillaries. Loop diameter is increased. Mild dilation reflects increased local demand or compensation as adjacent capillaries drop out. Pronounced dilation, particularly when uniform across the field, suggests endothelial dysfunction from eNOS uncoupling and basement membrane damage.^{2, 21} The vessel has lost the structural and signaling integrity that maintains normal caliber.

Tortuous capillaries. The hairpin loop is replaced by a meandering, twisted vessel. Tortuosity reflects vessel wall remodeling under chronic stress. Endothelial cells exposed to prolonged inflammation, oxidative damage, or shear stress lose the ability to maintain straight orientation.² Marked tortuosity, especially combined with other findings, indicates a chronic insult to the wall.

Bushy capillaries. The hairpin form is replaced by a branching, tree-like structure with multiple loops emerging from a single base. This is angiogenesis, new vessel formation in response to tissue ischemia. The body, sensing inadequate local oxygen delivery, signals for new capillaries to grow. The signal that initiates the sprouting is driven by VEGF and hypoxia, not by nitric oxide.²⁸ Everything that follows, the alignment of new endothelial cells with shear stress, lumen formation, pericyte recruitment, and the establishment of flow that keeps the new vessel patent, is NO-dependent.²⁹ When NO is insufficient, the early sprouting still occurs, but maturation fails. What is visible under the scope is the morphological signature of attempted but incomplete angiogenesis: vessels that started but never finished.† Bushy capillaries are therefore a strong indication of NO deficiency, and they often appear at the borders of areas where capillary dropout has occurred.†

Microhemorrhages. Small dark spots near or around capillary loops, representing blood that has leaked from the capillary into surrounding tissue. The wall has failed at that point. Single isolated microhemorrhages can occur from local trauma. Multiple microhemorrhages, particularly clustered or crossing the field, indicate that wall integrity has been compromised systemically by oxidative stress, autoimmune attack, or peroxynitrite damage to the basement membrane.^{2, 21}

Avascular areas. Regions of the nailfold where capillaries are visibly absent. The space that should contain loops contains nothing. Avascular areas indicate that capillaries have died and have not been replaced.² The cells that depended on those vessels are now drawing what they can from neighboring capillaries that may already be at capacity.

Reduced density. The number of loops per linear millimeter is below normal even where the remaining vessels appear individually intact. Capillaries are dropping out but the dropout is distributed rather than clustered into discrete avascular areas.⁷ Patients

with reduced density tire faster, recover more slowly, and tolerate physiological stress less well.†

Disorganization. The orderly palisade is gone. Loops are scattered, oriented at different angles, varying widely in size and shape, sometimes crossing one another. The body is no longer building or maintaining the regular pattern. This is a late finding indicating substantial accumulated damage.²

Most chronically ill patients show several findings at once, in patterns that reflect their particular substrate burden. The practitioner reads the field as a whole.†

The continuum and its limits

Capillary findings exist on a continuum from healthy to severely abnormal, and progressive findings track with progressive disease.² The progression can be tracked over time, and improvement can be documented as the underlying causes are addressed.

The limitation is that capillary findings lag behind the underlying physiology. Functional improvements in flow and reactivity can appear within weeks as endothelial dysfunction resolves.³⁰ Morphological improvements take longer, and the timeline depends on the finding. Microhemorrhages can resolve within a few months once the inflammatory driver is removed.† Tortuosity is intermediate, improving over six to twelve months.† Density and avascular areas are the slowest because they require new vessel formation, twelve to eighteen months for early density improvement, and two to three years for dramatic reversal in patients who started with severe findings.† The capillaroscopy is therefore a lagging diagnostic, useful for confirming progress over time but not for confirming that an intervention has begun working.

Accelerating repair

Removing the capillary insults listed above is required for healing, but repair can also be accelerated. Hyperbaric oxygen therapy at 1.3 to 1.5 ATA with 100% O₂ via mask drives angiogenesis through controlled hyperoxia followed by relative hypoxia on decompression, the alternation activates the same HIF-1 α and VEGF pathways that natural exercise recruits, but more powerfully.³¹ Exercise with oxygen therapy (EWOT) is a less expensive option that produces a similar effect through nasal cannula oxygen delivery during exertion. Exercise alone, without supplemental oxygen, remains one of the most reliable angiogenic stimuli available.³² L-lactate supplementation supports this work, lactate is not a waste product but a signaling molecule that activates VEGF expression and supports endothelial cell migration during new vessel formation.³³ These tools speed repair and recovery once the upstream insults have been removed.

Conclusion

Video capillary analysis with the image on a screen is a quick, inexpensive, non-invasive way to see the global health of the patient and to invite the patient into the

diagnostic process. Watching their own capillaries on a monitor, and watching them improve over months of work, gives the patient an intuitive understanding of their own health that no lab value can match. The practitioner gains a window into systemic vascular function. The patient gains a stake in the work. Few diagnostic tools accomplish both at once.

Clinical pearl: *Capillary flow involves electrostatic forces. Red cells carry a net negative surface charge, the zeta potential, that keeps them from clumping and allows them to traverse narrow lumens.³⁴ Endothelial surfaces carry their own negative charge.³⁵ Consider high voltage/low amperage therapy.†*

References

1. Cutolo M. *Atlas of Capillaroscopy in Rheumatic Diseases*. Elsevier; 2010.
2. Smith V, Herrick AL, Ingegnoli F, et al. Standardisation of nailfold capillaroscopy for the assessment of patients with Raynaud's phenomenon and systemic sclerosis. *Autoimmun Rev*. 2020;19(3):102458.
3. Krogh A. The number and distribution of capillaries in muscles with calculations of the oxygen pressure head necessary for supplying the tissue. *J Physiol*. 1919;52(6):409-415.
4. Hoier B, Hellsten Y. Exercise-induced capillary growth in human skeletal muscle and the dynamics of VEGF. *Microcirculation*. 2014;21(4):301-314.
5. Hudlicka O, Brown M, Egginton S. Angiogenesis in skeletal and cardiac muscle. *Physiol Rev*. 1992;72(2):369-417.
6. Brown WR, Thore CR. Cerebral microvascular pathology in ageing and neurodegeneration. *Neuropathol Appl Neurobiol*. 2011;37(1):56-74.
7. Levy BI, Schiffrin EL, Mourad JJ, et al. Impaired tissue perfusion: a pathology common to hypertension, obesity, and diabetes mellitus. *Circulation*. 2008;118(9):968-976.
8. Kang DH, Kanellis J, Hugo C, et al. Role of the microvascular endothelium in progressive renal disease. *J Am Soc Nephrol*. 2002;13(3):806-816.
9. Curtis TM, Gardiner TA, Stitt AW. Microvascular lesions of diabetic retinopathy: clues towards understanding pathogenesis? *Eye*. 2009;23(7):1496-1508.
10. Shi X. Physiopathology of the cochlear microcirculation. *Hear Res*. 2011;282(1-2):10-24.
11. Brunk UT, Terman A. Lipofuscin: mechanisms of age-related accumulation and influence on cell function. *Free Radic Biol Med*. 2002;33(5):611-619.

12. Sun N, Youle RJ, Finkel T. The mitochondrial basis of aging. *Mol Cell*. 2016;61(5):654-666.
13. López-Otín C, Blasco MA, Partridge L, Serrano M, Kroemer G. The hallmarks of aging. *Cell*. 2013;153(6):1194-1217.
14. Goodell MA, Rando TA. Stem cells and healthy aging. *Science*. 2015;350(6265):1199-1204.
15. Furst B. *The Heart and Circulation: An Integrative Model*. 2nd ed. Springer; 2020.
16. Pollack GH. *The Fourth Phase of Water: Beyond Solid, Liquid, and Vapor*. Ebner and Sons; 2013.
17. Förstermann U, Sessa WC. Nitric oxide synthases: regulation and function. *Eur Heart J*. 2012;33(7):829-837.
18. Lundberg JO, Farkas-Szallasi T, Weitzberg E, et al. High nitric oxide production in human paranasal sinuses. *Nat Med*. 1995;1(4):370-373.
19. Maniscalco M, Sofia M, Pelaia G. Nitric oxide in upper airways inflammatory diseases. *Inflamm Res*. 2007;56(2):58-69.
20. Khan SA, Ali A, Khan SA, et al. Lipopolysaccharide-induced eNOS uncoupling in vascular endothelium. *Antioxid Redox Signal*. 2014;20(17):2695-2711.
21. Pacher P, Beckman JS, Liaudet L. Nitric oxide and peroxynitrite in health and disease. *Physiol Rev*. 2007;87(1):315-424.
22. Wiggers GA, Peçanha FM, Briones AM, et al. Low mercury concentrations cause oxidative stress and endothelial dysfunction in conductance and resistance arteries. *Am J Physiol Heart Circ Physiol*. 2008;295(3):H1033-H1043.
23. Pestka JJ, Zhou HR, Moon Y, Chung YJ. Cellular and molecular mechanisms for immune modulation by deoxynivalenol and other trichothecenes. *Toxicol Lett*. 2004;153(1):61-73.
24. Guilford FT, Hope J. Deficient glutathione in the pathophysiology of mycotoxin-related illness. *Toxins*. 2014;6(2):608-623.
25. Lavie L. Oxidative stress in obstructive sleep apnea and intermittent hypoxia. *Sleep Med Rev*. 2015;20:27-45.
26. Erol S, Sen B, Gur Toy G, et al. Nailfold capillaroscopic changes of sleep apnea patients. *Microvasc Res*. 2021;136:104167.
27. Cutolo M, Sulli A, Smith V. How to perform and interpret capillaroscopy. *Best Pract Res Clin Rheumatol*. 2013;27(2):237-248.

28. Carmeliet P. Mechanisms of angiogenesis and arteriogenesis. *Nat Med*. 2000;6(4):389-395.
29. Cooke JP, Losordo DW. Nitric oxide and angiogenesis. *Circulation*. 2002;105(18):2133-2135.
30. Vanhoutte PM, Shimokawa H, Feletou M, Tang EH. Endothelial dysfunction and vascular disease, a 30th anniversary update. *Acta Physiol*. 2017;219(1):22-96.
31. Thom SR. Hyperbaric oxygen: its mechanisms and efficacy. *Plast Reconstr Surg*. 2011;127(Suppl 1):131S-141S.
32. Prior BM, Yang HT, Terjung RL. What makes vessels grow with exercise training? *J Appl Physiol*. 2004;97(3):1119-1128.
33. Brooks GA. The science and translation of lactate shuttle theory. *Cell Metab*. 2018;27(4):757-785.
34. Fernandes HP, Cesar CL, Barjas-Castro ML. Electrical properties of the red blood cell membrane and immunohematological investigation. *Rev Bras Hematol Hemoter*. 2011;33(4):297-301.
35. Reitsma S, Slaaf DW, Vink H, van Zandvoort MA, oude Egbrink MG. The endothelial glycocalyx: composition, functions, and visualisation. *Pflugers Arch*. 2007;454(3):345-359.

Chapter 45, Growing new coronaries

In the nitric oxide chapter I raised a puzzle and promised to finish it here. Someone gets an emergency stent after a test finds a 98 percent blockage in a coronary artery, functionally closed, and yet they had not had a heart attack. Why not? Because coronary disease develops slowly. Plaque builds over decades, narrowing the lumen by small increments each year, and when a vessel occludes that gradually, the body grows collateral vessels around it, small bypass channels that carry blood past the obstruction. Patients with extensive collateralization can have a 100 percent occluded coronary artery and no symptoms at all, because the territory the blocked artery once fed is now supplied through the detours. The existence of these patients is well documented, and it tells you something about what the body can do when given time.

But time is exactly what the other kind of heart attack does not give, and the collateral story must not be allowed to hide it. Collaterals answer the slow death, the lumen closing by degrees until the muscle downstream would starve, and against that they are a genuine failsafe. They do nothing about the fast death. Most fatal heart attacks are not the endpoint of a slowly tightening stenosis at all; they are the sudden rupture of a plaque that may never have been large enough to matter, a soft, inflamed, thin-capped lesion, often less than seventy percent stenotic, that tears open and throws a clot which closes the artery in minutes. Collaterals cannot grow in minutes. A patient can be beautifully collateralized against every slow blockage they carry and still die when one small vulnerable plaque ruptures, because the two deaths are prevented by two different mechanisms.

So collateralization is only half the cardiovascular work. The other half is making the plaque that is already there less likely to rupture, quieting the inflammation and the foam-cell burden that thin its cap, dissolving the soft cholesterol it is built from, and clearing the calcified component that stiffens the vessel around it. Those are taken up elsewhere: the vulnerable-plaque, the H4 foam-cell mechanism in the histamine chapter, and the cyclodextrin and chelation work in their own chapters. Grow the detours and stabilize the plaque. Neither alone is enough.

This chapter is about the first half, growing the detours. The nitric oxide chapter named three requirements for that collateral failsafe: a low metal burden, a low chemical burden, and adequate nitric oxide, the first two mattering largely because they protect the third. Those three are the endothelial core of a larger set. The same five upstream causes that damaged the capillary bed of the previous chapter also damage the coronary arteries and the collateral response, sinus dysfunction and the nitric oxide it governs, microbiome disruption, toxic metals, mold, and sleep apnea. The mechanisms differ in their specifics, capillaries fail through endothelial dysfunction and rarefaction, coronary arteries through plaque accumulation and luminal narrowing, but the drivers converge on the vascular endothelium in both cases, which is why the practitioner who read the previous chapter already understands most of what is happening here.

The cruelty is that the same five causes that drive the coronary obstruction also disable the body's ability to build the collateral bypass. The patient is doubly punished...

How the five causes drive coronary disease

Sinus dysfunction lowers systemic NO bioavailability, and reduced NO is the established initiating event in coronary endothelial dysfunction and atherosclerosis.¹ Patients with chronic rhinosinusitis show elevated cardiovascular disease rates in cohort studies,² and the mechanism runs through the nasal NO loss the previous chapter described.

Microbiome dysbiosis drives coronary disease through two parallel pathways. The first is metabolic endotoxemia, circulating LPS from gut translocation activates TLR4 on coronary endothelial cells, uncouples eNOS, and drives the chronic vascular inflammation that initiates plaque formation.³ The second is TMAO, the gut bacterial conversion of dietary choline and carnitine to trimethylamine, which the liver oxidizes to trimethylamine-N-oxide. TMAO directly promotes atherosclerotic plaque progression and increases platelet hyperreactivity, and circulating TMAO levels predict cardiovascular events independently of conventional risk factors.⁴ This was discussed in the colon chapters as one of the toxic outputs of the wrong gut populations. It expresses here, in the coronary arteries.

Toxic metals damage coronary endothelium through the same thiol displacement and BH4 oxidation mechanisms described in the previous chapter, with one additional consideration. Lead, cadmium, and arsenic all show direct epidemiological associations with cardiovascular mortality.⁵ The TACT trial, discussed in the chelation chapter, demonstrated that EDTA-based chelation reduced cardiovascular events in post-MI patients, the first prospective trial to show that removing metal burden has measurable cardiovascular benefit.⁶

Mold and mycotoxins compromise endothelial function systemically through the iNOS and glutathione mechanisms of the previous chapter. They also do something more specific, and it deserves to be named directly. Lipophilic toxins, mycotoxins, persistent organic pollutants, PCBs, dioxins, partition into LDL particles in circulation. The body's own LDL transport machinery, primarily caveolar transcytosis, then carries those LDL particles across the arterial endothelium and into the intima.⁷ The toxin rides into the vessel wall as cargo on the very lipoprotein the body uses to deliver cholesterol to peripheral tissues.

Once inside the intima, these lipophilic toxins trigger local inflammation. The immune system responds by sending macrophages to clean up what does not belong there. The macrophages arrive, engulf the toxin-laden lipid material, and discover they cannot break it down. Mycotoxins resist enzymatic degradation. Persistent organic pollutants are designed by their chemistry to resist breakdown. The macrophage's lysosomal machinery cannot process its cargo. The cell becomes a doomed responder, alive but unable to complete its mission, releasing inflammatory signals that recruit more macrophages, which arrive and meet the same fate. The accumulating cells engorged with undigestible lipid material become foam cells, and foam cells are the cellular

substance of atherosclerotic plaque.⁸ The body's attempt to clean up the toxin builds the plaque.

Mycotoxins deserve the special callout here because they are particularly lipophilic and partition heavily into LDL, and because mold exposure is so common in the modern environment. A patient who has been living in a water-damaged building for years has been delivering mycotoxin-loaded LDL into their arterial walls the entire time. The cardiovascular consequence is delayed but real, and the conventional cardiology workup will not name it because it is not looking for it.

Sleep apnea drives coronary disease through chronic intermittent hypoxia, sympathetic surges, and the resulting endothelial dysfunction described in the apnea chapter. Untreated obstructive sleep apnea is an independent risk factor for myocardial infarction and cardiovascular mortality.⁹ The overnight blood pressure spikes are real cardiovascular events the patient sleeps through, and over years they damage the coronary endothelium and destabilize existing plaque.

The convergence is the clinical point. Five different upstream causes drive coronary disease through overlapping mechanisms, and the same five causes drive the capillary dysfunction that capillaroscopy reveals. A patient with abnormal nailfold findings is showing the practitioner what is also happening in their coronary arteries.

Why collateralization fails when it is most needed

The body's response to a slowly narrowing coronary artery is to grow collateral vessels, pre-existing small arterioles between coronary territories enlarge into functional bypass channels. This is arteriogenesis, and it depends on shear stress signaling at the endothelial surface of the collateral vessels. As blood begins to redirect through the collaterals around the developing obstruction, the increased shear stress activates eNOS, NO production rises locally, and the signaling cascade that recruits monocytes and remodels the vessel into a larger conducting artery proceeds.¹⁰

The process is entirely NO-dependent. Without adequate NO, the shear stress signal does not activate the downstream cascade properly. The collateral does not enlarge. The vessel that should have become a functional bypass remains a small arteriole that cannot carry meaningful flow.¹¹ The patient develops symptomatic ischemia at a degree of obstruction that, in someone with intact NO signaling, would have been compensated by collateral flow.

Patients with the same NO insufficiency that drove their coronary disease cannot mount the collateralization response that would have protected them from it. This is one of the cruelest patterns in cardiovascular medicine. The patients most in need of collateral compensation are the patients least able to build it.

The diagnostic chain

When the practitioner sees abnormal capillaroscopy, the kidney and retina are not the only organ systems worth checking. The heart belongs on that list. The capillary bed is showing systemic vascular dysfunction, and the coronary arteries are part of the same vascular system.

When more expensive cardiovascular labs and imaging are not available, three measurements are always available to the practitioner.

Pulse pressure. The difference between systolic and diastolic blood pressure. Optimal is around 35 mmHg. A reading of 135/80, both numbers within conventional reference ranges, produces a pulse pressure of 55. Per 10 mmHg increase in pulse pressure, cardiovascular mortality rises 13 to 20 percent, meaning this patient carries roughly a 26 to 40 percent increased risk of cardiovascular death compared to a person with optimal pulse pressure.¹² Patients with sustained elevation into the elderly years carry a 1.7 to 2.6 fold increased risk of cardiovascular and all-cause mortality.^{13, 14} The conventional BP reading misses this. Both numbers can sit within their reference ranges and still produce a pulse pressure that signals significant risk.

What pulse pressure is actually showing has two components. The first is arterial stiffness. Healthy arteries are elastic, they expand during systole to absorb the pressure of cardiac ejection, then recoil during diastole to maintain forward flow. As arteries stiffen with age, inflammation, and the upstream burdens this book has described, they lose this elastic buffering. The systolic pressure rises because the artery cannot expand to absorb the ejection. The diastolic pressure falls because the artery cannot recoil to sustain pressure between beats. The widening gap is the mechanical signature of the lost elasticity.¹⁵

The second component is what this means for the heart itself. The heart does not rest. It beats roughly 100,000 times a day, every day, for the patient's entire life. A widened pulse pressure means the heart is generating more pressure with each beat to overcome the arterial stiffness, more work per beat, multiplied across every beat across every year. The heart is one of the organs the patient cannot replace. Asking it to work harder than it has to is asking it to wear out sooner.

Ankle-brachial index (ABI). The ratio of blood pressure measured at the ankle to blood pressure measured at the arm. The patient lies supine for several minutes, then systolic pressure is measured at the brachial artery in both arms, and at the posterior tibial and dorsalis pedis arteries in both ankles, using a handheld Doppler probe. The higher of the two arm values becomes the denominator. The higher of the two readings at each ankle becomes that side's numerator. Normal ABI is 1.0 to 1.4. Below 0.9 indicates peripheral arterial disease. Above 1.4 indicates non-compressible, calcified arteries, common in diabetes and chronic kidney disease, and itself a marker of advanced vascular pathology.¹⁶ ABI is one of the most underused diagnostics in primary care. It costs nothing beyond the Doppler probe, takes ten minutes, and identifies systemic atherosclerosis years before symptoms appear.

Capillary refill time. Press firmly on the patient's fingernail bed until the tissue blanches, then release. Time how long the color takes to return. Normal is under two seconds. Three seconds or longer indicates impaired peripheral perfusion. This is a thirty-second test that any practitioner can do on any patient at any time, and it provides a real-time read on capillary function in a way that no lab value can match.

A patient with abnormal capillaroscopy, elevated pulse pressure, low ABI, and slow capillary refill has shown the practitioner four convergent signals of systemic vascular disease, none of which require an imaging machine or a specialist referral. The cardiovascular workup at that point has already started.

EECP and its tradeoffs

Enhanced external counterpulsation is a non-invasive treatment in which inflatable cuffs wrapped around the patient's calves, lower thighs, and upper thighs inflate sequentially during diastole and deflate at the onset of systole. The compression drives venous and arterial blood toward the heart during diastole, augmenting coronary perfusion at exactly the phase of the cardiac cycle when coronary filling occurs. A standard course is thirty-five hourly sessions delivered over seven weeks.

The augmented diastolic flow forces blood through partial obstructions and through small collateral channels that would not normally carry meaningful flow. The repeated mechanical loading of the collateral vessels triggers the shear stress signaling that drives arteriogenesis, and many patients develop new collateral vessels and significant symptomatic improvement over the course of treatment.¹⁷

EECP is genuinely useful. It can be used acutely to relieve angina that is not responding to medical management, and it can be used preventively in patients at high cardiovascular risk to drive collateral formation before they need it. Two limitations need to be named.

The first is that EECP does not address the cause of the disease. It accelerates collateralization mechanically, but the upstream burdens that drove the original obstruction are still present. Without removing the burdens, the patient's vasculature continues to deteriorate even as new collaterals form. EECP is a workaround, not a cure. It works best when used alongside the upstream restoration this book has been teaching, not as a substitute for it.

The second limitation is more subtle and often missed. The same mechanism that produces the benefit can produce harm. The high external pressure required to drive coronary collateralization also stresses the rest of the patient's microvasculature. Capillaries and venules that have already been weakened by the same upstream causes that produced the coronary disease, the bushy, hyperdilated, microhemorrhage-prone vessels visible on capillaroscopy, can rupture under the pressure. The patient most in need of collateralization is also the patient most vulnerable to microvascular injury during the treatment.†

The practitioner must weigh risk against reward. A patient with a clean capillaroscopy can tolerate standard EECF pressures. A patient with significant capillary dysfunction needs lower pressures, more sessions, and careful monitoring. The capillaroscopy reading from the previous chapter directly informs the EECF pressure decision.

Building collaterals naturally

Once the upstream insults have been removed, sinus restored, microbiome rebuilt, metals chelated, mold cleared, apnea addressed, the body's own collateralization machinery begins working again. Four interventions support the process and accelerate it.

Restoring nitric oxide bioavailability is the foundation. As discussed in the previous chapter, the same NO that the capillary bed depends on is what drives coronary collateral formation. The sinus restoration work, the cyclodextrin removal of vascular toxins, and the broader detox protocols all contribute. Without adequate NO, the rest of the interventions in this section will not work properly, because every one of them ultimately operates through NO-mediated signaling.

Exercise is the most reliable angiogenic stimulus available. Regular aerobic exercise produces repeated cycles of increased shear stress on coronary endothelium, which activates eNOS, drives NO production, and triggers the arteriogenic remodeling that builds collaterals.¹⁸ Patients with established coronary disease who exercise regularly develop more extensive collateral circulation than sedentary patients with comparable disease, and outcomes track accordingly.¹⁹

L-lactate is not a waste product. As discussed in the previous chapter, it is a signaling molecule that activates VEGF expression and supports endothelial cell migration during new vessel formation.²⁰ Lactate is produced naturally during exercise, which is part of why exercise drives angiogenesis so reliably. Direct supplementation supports this signaling pathway and is particularly useful for patients whose exercise capacity is limited.

Hyperbaric oxygen therapy at 1.3 to 1.5 ATA, as discussed in the previous chapter, drives angiogenesis through controlled hyperoxia followed by relative hypoxia on decompression, activating the same HIF-1 α and VEGF pathways exercise recruits, but more powerfully.

EWOT is a less expensive option for patients who can tolerate exertion. Both deliver coronary benefit through the same mechanism that supports capillary repair.

Conclusion

The coronary arteries are not a separate problem from the rest of the vascular system. They are the same system, in the same patient, responding to the same upstream burdens and the same restoration work. A patient with abnormal capillaroscopy is a patient whose coronary arteries are also at risk. A patient whose coronary arteries are

blocked is a patient whose collateralization machinery is also compromised. The diagnostic chain, capillaroscopy, pulse pressure, ABI, capillary refill, costs almost nothing and identifies the problem years before conventional cardiology will. The intervention chain, remove the burdens, support NO, exercise, lactate, oxygen, addresses the cause rather than the symptom. EECF can accelerate the result for patients who need it, but only with the capillaroscopy in hand to guide the pressure.

Clinical pearl: *When a patient presents with chronic fatigue and brain fog, muscle and brain cells both require healthy capillary architecture.*

References

1. Vanhoutte PM, Shimokawa H, Feletou M, Tang EH. Endothelial dysfunction and vascular disease, a 30th anniversary update. *Acta Physiol.* 2017;219(1):22-96.
2. Wee JH, Min C, Jung HJ, et al. Association between chronic rhinosinusitis and cardiovascular disease: a Korean nationwide cohort study. *Clin Otolaryngol.* 2020;45(5):786-792.
3. Carnevale R, Nocella C, Petrozza V, et al. Localization of lipopolysaccharide from *Escherichia coli* into human atherosclerotic plaque. *Sci Rep.* 2018;8(1):3598.
4. Wang Z, Klipfell E, Bennett BJ, et al. Gut flora metabolism of phosphatidylcholine promotes cardiovascular disease. *Nature.* 2011;472(7341):57-63. Lamas GA, Navas-Acien A, Mark DB, Lee KL. Heavy metals, cardiovascular disease, and the unexpected benefits of chelation therapy. *J Am Coll Cardiol.* 2016;67(20):2411-2418.
5. Lamas GA, Goertz C, Boineau R, et al. Effect of disodium EDTA chelation regimen on cardiovascular events in patients with previous myocardial infarction: the TACT randomized trial. *JAMA.* 2013;309(12):1241-1250.
6. Bolanle IO, de Liedekerke Beaufort GC, Weinberg PD. Transcytosis of LDL across arterial endothelium: mechanisms and therapeutic targets. *Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol.* 2025;45(4):468-481.
7. Pirillo A, Norata GD, Catapano AL. LOX-1, OxLDL, and atherosclerosis. *Mediators Inflamm.* 2013;2013:152786.
8. Yeghiazarians Y, Jneid H, Engelman DT, et al. Obstructive sleep apnea and cardiovascular disease: a scientific statement from the American Heart Association. *Circulation.* 2021;144(3):e56-e67.
9. Schaper W. Collateral circulation: past and present. *Basic Res Cardiol.* 2009;104(1):5-21.
10. Cooke JP, Losordo DW. Nitric oxide and angiogenesis. *Circulation.* 2002;105(18):2133-2135.

11. Sesso HD, Stampfer MJ, Rosner B, et al. Systolic and diastolic blood pressure, pulse pressure, and mean arterial pressure as predictors of cardiovascular disease risk in men. *Hypertension*. 2000;36(5):801-807.
12. Kollias A, Kyriakoulis KG, Stambolliu E, et al. Long-term prognostic impact of repeated measurements over 1 year of pulse pressure and systolic blood pressure in the elderly. *J Hum Hypertens*. 2005;19(6):443-448.
13. Salonen H, Niiranen TJ, Sundvall J, et al. Nighttime ambulatory pulse pressure predicts cardiovascular and all-cause mortality among middle-aged participants in the 21-year follow-up. *J Clin Hypertens*. 2021;23(12):2071-2080.
14. Mitchell GF. Arterial stiffness and hypertension: chicken or egg? *Hypertension*. 2014;64(2):210-214.
15. Aboyans V, Criqui MH, Abraham P, et al. Measurement and interpretation of the ankle-brachial index: a scientific statement from the American Heart Association. *Circulation*. 2012;126(24):2890-2909.
16. Manchanda A, Soran O. Enhanced external counterpulsation and future directions: step beyond medical management for patients with angina and heart failure. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2007;50(16):1523-1531.
17. Brown MD. Exercise and coronary vascular remodelling in the healthy heart. *Exp Physiol*. 2003;88(5):645-658.
18. Möbius-Winkler S, Uhlemann M, Adams V, et al. Coronary collateral growth induced by physical exercise: results of the impact of intensive exercise training on coronary collateral circulation in patients with stable coronary artery disease (EXCITE) trial. *Circulation*. 2016;133(15):1438-1448.
19. Brooks GA. The science and translation of lactate shuttle theory. *Cell Metab*. 2018;27(4):757-785.

Chapter 46, Microcirculation and the brain

The brain is the second organ where the same vascular framework expresses itself. Like the heart, it depends on the same systemic capillary bed, the same NO signaling, and the same upstream burdens that the previous two chapters described. Like the heart, it has a low tolerance for hypoxia and its cells enter apoptosis more readily than most other tissues. Unlike the heart, the brain has additional NO-dependent functions that go beyond perfusion, neurogenesis, blood-brain barrier integrity, synaptic plasticity, glymphatic clearance, and the loss of NO bioavailability damages each of these in distinct ways. The result is that the brain is more multidimensionally vulnerable to the same insults than any other organ.

A patient presenting with brain fog, slow processing, poor memory, mood changes, or accelerated cognitive aging is rarely a patient with a primary brain disease. They are more often a patient whose brain is downstream of the same five upstream burdens damaging their capillaries and coronaries, expressing the consequences in the organ with the highest metabolic demand and the least margin for perfusion failure.

How the five causes drive brain dysfunction

Sinus dysfunction lowers systemic NO and damages the brain through four mechanisms operating simultaneously. The first is reduced cerebral perfusion. Cerebral blood flow is regulated minute-to-minute by NO through neurovascular coupling, when a brain region activates, neuronal NO synthase produces NO that diffuses to surrounding arterioles and dilates them, increasing flow to the active region.¹ This is what fMRI is actually measuring. With insufficient NO, brain regions become regionally hypoperfused even when total cerebral blood flow looks normal on bulk measurements. Patients describe this as brain fog, slow processing, and the sense of having to push through cognitive tasks that used to be automatic.

The second mechanism is impaired neurogenesis. The hippocampus and the subventricular zone are the two adult neurogenic niches, and both depend on NO signaling. Endothelial NO supports neurogenesis through vascular niche maintenance, new neurons are born in close apposition to capillaries and depend on the endothelial-derived signaling environment.² When NO falls, neurogenesis slows. Inducible NOS, driven by inflammation, actively suppresses neurogenesis.³ The patient with chronic inflammation and reduced eNOS function has both halves of the neurogenic balance pushed in the wrong direction.

The third mechanism is blood-brain barrier compromise. NO from eNOS supports the tight junction integrity of cerebral capillaries, and the oxidative-stress pathway that opens that barrier is the one described in the capillary chapter.⁴ What is specific here is what a leaky barrier admits: inflammatory molecules and toxins that should have been excluded.

There is a fourth mechanism that ties back to the sinus chapter directly. The cribriform plate is the perforated shelf of ethmoid bone separating the roof of the nasal cavity from

the anterior cranial fossa, and it is the primary lymphatic exit route for the glymphatic system, the brain's waste clearance pathway, most active during sleep.⁵ A congested or biofilm-coated sinus cannot accept the volume of glymphatic drainage the brain produces. Wastes from the sinus go retrograde into the brain, adding to the toxic load the brain is already struggling to manage through compromised drainage. The accumulation of amyloid and other inclusion bodies in the aging brain has been suggested as a backup sequestration mechanism for toxins that would otherwise have left through the cribriform plate.^{†6}

Microbiome dysbiosis affects the brain through the gut-brain axis, the LPS translocation pathway, and the loss of microbial neurotransmitter production. The vagus nerve carries afferent signals from the gut to the brainstem, and the composition of the gut microbiome shapes those signals continuously.⁷ Toxic Gram-negative populations producing inflammatory LPS deliver that LPS into systemic circulation, where it crosses the now-compromised blood-brain barrier and activates microglia.⁸ Microglial activation is the primary driver of the chronic neuroinflammation that characterizes most neurodegenerative conditions. The patient's gut is producing the inflammation that is damaging their brain.

The lost neurotransmitter precursor production matters separately. Healthy gut bacteria produce GABA, serotonin precursors, dopamine precursors, and short-chain fatty acids that influence brain function directly.⁹ A dysbiotic gut produces less of all of them. The patient with depression, anxiety, sleep disruption, or cognitive dysfunction may be expressing the consequences of a microbiome that has stopped producing the substrates their brain needs.

Toxic metals damage the brain through the same NO-disrupting mechanisms described in the previous chapters, with two brain-specific consequences. First, metals cross the blood-brain barrier and accumulate in brain tissue, particularly mercury and aluminum, which have known neurotoxic effects independent of vascular damage.¹⁰ Second, the brain has limited capacity to excrete what enters it. The metals that reach brain tissue stay there longer than they would in any other organ, and the cumulative burden builds across decades of exposure.

Mold and mycotoxins damage the brain through the LDL transcytosis mechanism described in the previous chapter and through direct cribriform plate transit. Lipophilic mycotoxins partition into LDL and are delivered into vascular tissue throughout the body, including the cerebral vasculature. They also cross the cribriform plate directly from a colonized sinus into brain tissue, where they reach the olfactory bulb and adjacent limbic structures.¹¹ The patient with chronic mold exposure is being dosed with mycotoxins through two parallel routes simultaneously, the systemic circulation delivering them through the BBB, and the cribriform plate delivering them directly into limbic tissue.

Sleep apnea damages the brain through chronic intermittent hypoxia, the same mechanism that damages the heart and capillaries, with one brain-specific

consequence. The brain is the most metabolically active organ in the body and the most vulnerable to perfusion interruption. Each apnea event produces an oxygen desaturation that the brain experiences directly. Hundreds of these events per night, year after year, produce measurable brain volume loss in the hippocampus, frontal cortex, and white matter, with corresponding cognitive deficits.¹²

The diagnostic chain

When transcranial Doppler, SPECT, and fMRI are not available, several practitioner-friendly diagnostics give a working assessment of brain function and perfusion.

Cognitive testing using a free online battery, repeated longitudinally. The Cambridge Brain Sciences battery is well-validated and free, covering working memory, processing speed, executive function, and reasoning across twelve short tasks.¹³ A baseline assessment followed by repeat testing every three to six months gives the practitioner a quantitative track of cognitive change over time. The test takes about thirty minutes and the patient can do it at home.

The Montreal Cognitive Assessment (MoCA) is a paper-based screen administered in the office in about ten minutes, sensitive to mild cognitive impairment that the older MMSE often misses.¹⁴ A baseline MoCA gives the practitioner a structured cognitive snapshot that can be repeated at intervals.

Orthostatic blood pressure and heart rate. With the patient supine for five minutes, take baseline BP and pulse. Then have the patient stand and take both measurements at one minute and three minutes. A drop in systolic pressure greater than 20 mmHg, or in diastolic greater than 10 mmHg, with or without a corresponding rise in heart rate, indicates autonomic dysfunction.¹⁵ The autonomic nervous system originates in the brainstem, and orthostatic instability often reflects brainstem perfusion compromise. A patient with significant orthostatic changes is showing the practitioner that the deepest part of their brain is not receiving stable perfusion.

One-leg balance with eyes closed. Have the patient stand on one leg with their eyes closed and time how long they can maintain balance before having to put the other foot down or open their eyes. A normal adult under fifty should manage thirty seconds easily; under sixty, twenty seconds; under seventy, ten seconds. Performance below these thresholds reflects compromised cerebellar function, vestibular processing, or proprioceptive integration, all of which depend on adequate cerebral and cerebellar perfusion.¹⁶ This is a thirty-second test that requires no equipment.

Saccadic eye movements. Have the patient track a moving finger or pen with their eyes only, not turning their head. Smooth, accurate tracking indicates intact cerebellar and brainstem function. Jerky, slow, or inaccurate tracking indicates compromise. The same applies to vertical and diagonal tracking.

Sclera markings in the upper midline zone. The work of Mehlmauer in sclerology has identified that visible blood vessels in the sclera between approximately 11:30 and

12:30 on the clock face, in both eyes, correspond to brain function.¹⁷ Any markings in this zone are an indication of brain involvement. Vessels that terminate in rounded ends, branching patterns, or sharp curves at this position suggest deeper pathology, including chronic infection, mechanical trauma, or sustained inflammatory burden in cerebral tissue.† The sclera examination requires no equipment beyond good lighting and a willingness to look.

Patient-reported sleep quality and dream content. As discussed in the apnea chapter, dream content carries diagnostic weight. Violent dreams or suffocation themes suggest frank apnea events; frustrating dreams suggest hypopnea. A patient whose sleep is fragmenting their brain's overnight repair window cannot make cognitive progress regardless of what other interventions are in place.

Capillaroscopy and pulse pressure findings already in hand from the previous chapters add to the brain workup. The microcirculation visible at the nailfold reflects the microcirculation in cerebral tissue. The pulse pressure that signals arterial stiffness signals reduced pulse pressure in cerebral arteries as well. The previous chapters have already given the practitioner half the brain workup before this chapter began.

Developed by David Grand in 2003, brainspotting uses guided eye position to surface neural activation patterns that correlate with regional brain function.¹⁸ Patients holding their gaze at particular positions may report unusual symptoms, sudden fatigue, brain fog, dizziness, emotional flooding. The interested reader can pursue the technique through the literature.

Brain-specific interventions

In addition to the four interventions discussed in the previous chapter, restoring NO bioavailability, exercise, L-lactate, and hyperbaric or exercise-with-oxygen therapy, the brain has access points and repair tools the heart does not.

Nasal cyclodextrin reaches the brain through the cribriform plate at concentrations no systemic route can match. As discussed in the cyclodextrin chapter, intravenous cyclodextrin reaches the brain at very low rates because the blood-brain barrier excludes it; the nasal route delivers thirty to forty times more.¹⁹ For patients with brain fog that does not resolve with systemic detox work, post-mold cognitive symptoms, or persistent post-viral cognitive symptoms, the nasal spray is often the only route by which cyclodextrins reach the brain at therapeutic concentrations.

CognitoLite is a transcranial 1068 nm IR helmet developed by Maculume, which has produced significant improvements in short-term and long-term memory, executive function, mood, and motor function in a placebo-controlled dementia trial conducted by the Quietmind Foundation and Baylor Research Institute.²⁰ The mechanism is mitochondrial, near-infrared light at this wavelength is absorbed by cytochrome c oxidase in neurons, increasing ATP production and supporting cellular repair.

Peptides cross the blood-brain barrier when delivered nasally or by subcutaneous injection. As discussed in the chelation chapter, BPC-157 has global healing effects, KPV and Thymosin Beta-4 support tissue repair, and the porcine brain peptide preparations cerebrolysin and cerebroneurogen have been used for decades for brain and nerve repair, particularly post-stroke and post-traumatic brain injury.²¹

Nervonic acid is the rate-limiting substrate for myelin repair, and supplementation accelerates remyelination when the underlying toxic burden has been addressed. As discussed in the microbiome chapter, the body produces only small amounts endogenously for nerve and brain repair, and supplementation removes the bottleneck for patients whose remyelination capacity has been overwhelmed.

Avacen is a heat therapy device that uses negative pressure and warmth applied to the palm to raise blood temperature systemically through the arteriovenous anastomoses in the hand.²² The thermally thinned blood flows more easily through compromised microvasculature, improving perfusion globally. AVACEN does not repair the vessels themselves, that is the work of the upstream protocols this book has been teaching, but it supports perfusion of poorly perfused tissue while the structural work is in progress. For any patient presenting with capillary dysfunction visible on capillaroscopy, and especially cerebral capillary dysfunction, AVACEN can provide symptomatic improvement during the months it takes for the underlying vessels to remodel.

Conclusion

The brain is the third organ in Part Three's vascular sequence, and the framework that mapped the heart maps the brain as well. The same five upstream causes, the same NO-dependent mechanisms, the same diagnostic chain extended with brain-specific tests, the same interventions extended with brain-specific tools. The patient who arrives complaining of brain fog and forgetfulness is not a patient with a brain problem in isolation. They are a patient whose brain is expressing the consequences of burdens that are also damaging their capillaries and their coronaries, and the work that addresses those burdens addresses the brain at the same time.

The clinical implication is that the cognitive complaints patients increasingly bring to practitioners, the brain fog that has become the defining symptom of the modern era, should not exclusively be treated as separate problems requiring separate workups. They are the brain's expression of the same systemic vascular dysfunction the rest of this book has been describing, and they respond to the same restoration work.

Clinical pearl: *When a patient presents with capillary and brain issues, while removal of the toxins and improved circulation are immediate wins, the client should understand that repairing the microcirculation in general and the brain in particular takes time.*

References

1. Toda N, Ayajiki K, Okamura T. Cerebral blood flow regulation by nitric oxide: recent advances. *Pharmacol Rev.* 2009;61(1):62-97.

2. Zhu DY, Liu SH, Sun HS, Lu YM. Expression of inducible nitric oxide synthase after focal cerebral ischemia stimulates neurogenesis in the adult rodent dentate gyrus. *J Neurosci*. 2003;23(1):223-229.
3. Packer MA, Stasiv Y, Benraiss A, et al. Nitric oxide negatively regulates mammalian adult neurogenesis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 2003;100(16):9566-9571.
4. Yang Y, Rosenberg GA. Blood-brain barrier breakdown in acute and chronic cerebrovascular disease. *Stroke*. 2011;42(11):3323-3328.
5. Iliff JJ, Wang M, Liao Y, et al. A paravascular pathway facilitates CSF flow through the brain parenchyma and the clearance of interstitial solutes, including amyloid beta. *Sci Transl Med*. 2012;4(147):147ra111.
6. Soscia SJ, Kirby JE, Washicosky KJ, et al. The Alzheimer's disease-associated amyloid beta-protein is an antimicrobial peptide. *PLoS One*. 2010;5(3):e9505.
7. Cryan JF, O'Riordan KJ, Cowan CSM, et al. The microbiota-gut-brain axis. *Physiol Rev*. 2019;99(4):1877-2013.
8. Banks WA, Erickson MA. The blood-brain barrier and immune function and dysfunction. *Neurobiol Dis*. 2010;37(1):26-32.
9. Strandwitz P. Neurotransmitter modulation by the gut microbiota. *Brain Res*. 2018;1693(Pt B):128-133.
10. Chin-Chan M, Navarro-Yepes J, Quintanilla-Vega B. Environmental pollutants as risk factors for neurodegenerative disorders: Alzheimer and Parkinson diseases. *Front Cell Neurosci*. 2015;9:124.
11. Doty RL. The olfactory vector hypothesis of neurodegenerative disease: is it viable? *Ann Neurol*. 2008;63(1):7-15.
12. Macey PM, Henderson LA, Macey KE, et al. Brain morphology associated with obstructive sleep apnea. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 2002;166(10):1382-1387.
13. Hampshire A, Highfield RR, Parkin BL, Owen AM. Fractionating human intelligence. *Neuron*. 2012;76(6):1225-1237.
14. Nasreddine ZS, Phillips NA, Bédirian V, et al. The Montreal Cognitive Assessment, MoCA: a brief screening tool for mild cognitive impairment. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2005;53(4):695-699.
15. Freeman R, Wieling W, Axelrod FB, et al. Consensus statement on the definition of orthostatic hypotension, neurally mediated syncope and the postural tachycardia syndrome. *Auton Neurosci*. 2011;161(1-2):46-48.

16. Springer BA, Marin R, Cyhan T, Roberts H, Gill NW. Normative values for the unipedal stance test with eyes open and closed. *J Geriatr Phys Ther.* 2007;30(1):8-15.
17. Mehlmauer LA. *Sclerology: A New View of an Ancient Art*. Sclerology Institute; 2003.
18. Grand D. *Brainspotting: The Revolutionary New Therapy for Rapid and Effective Change*. Sounds True; 2013.
19. Lochhead JJ, Thorne RG. Intranasal delivery of biologics to the central nervous system. *Adv Drug Deliv Rev.* 2012;64(7):614-628.
20. Berman MH, Halper JP, Nichols TW, Jarrett H, Lundy A, Huang JH. Photobiomodulation with near infrared light helmet in a pilot, placebo controlled clinical trial in dementia patients testing memory and cognition. *J Neurol Neurosci.* 2017;8(1):176.
21. Chen CC, Wei ST, Tsaia SC, Chen XX, Cho DY. Cerebrolysin enhances cognitive recovery of mild traumatic brain injury patients: double-blind, placebo-controlled, randomized study. *Br J Neurosurg.* 2013;27(6):803-807.
22. Wirth K, Wong WT, Anderson EJ. Effects of standardized whole-body heat therapy on quality of life in patients with fibromyalgia syndrome. *Pain Med.* 2017;18(11):2111-2120.

Chapter 47, The warehouse and the waistline

Adipose tissue is not only a fuel depot. It is also a warehouse, and the inventory it holds is the fraction of the modern chemical load the body could neither break down nor excrete. Persistent organic pollutants, the more lipophilic mycotoxins, plasticizers, flame retardants, solvent residues, and the pesticide fraction that survives Phase I all partition out of blood and into fat by simple physical chemistry, and once there they sit largely inert. This is not a failure of the system. Sequestration in adipose keeps these compounds away from the tissue that would be damaged by them, and the toxicology literature now describes adipose as performing a genuine buffering function rather than merely accumulating what it happens to dissolve.^{1,2}

That reframing has an uncomfortable corollary. A warehouse cannot be emptied without a plan for the contents. Every kilogram of fat a patient loses releases whatever that kilogram was holding, into circulation, all at once, at whatever rate the patient is losing it. Weight loss is a mobilization event, and it obeys the same rules as chelation. The snow globe rule applies without modification.

What the body does about it

Two claims need to be kept apart, because one is established and one is mine.

The established claim is that toxic exposure and adipose expansion travel together. Compounds acting on nuclear receptors that govern adipocyte differentiation can drive fat accumulation directly, which is the substance of the obesogen literature,³ and metabolic endotoxemia does the same thing from the gut side, with continuous low-grade LPS exposure sufficient on its own to produce weight gain and insulin resistance in animal models.^{4,5} The chemical is not merely stored in the fat. In some cases it helped build the fat.

The claim that is mine is stronger and I mark it as such. When toxin burden exceeds what the clearance pathways can process, adipose expansion is not only a side effect of the exposure but a defensive response to it, and the body will subsequently defend that adipose against loss for the same reason it built it.† A patient in this state is not failing to lose weight. Their body is declining to release it, and it is right to be cautious, because the clearance capacity that was inadequate when the toxin arrived is generally still inadequate now.

The mechanism that makes this more than a story is measurable. When obese subjects lose substantial weight, plasma concentrations of organochlorines and PCBs rise as adipose stores are drawn down.^{6,7} The release is not inert. The magnitude of the fall in resting metabolic rate during weight loss tracks with the magnitude of organochlorine release, and the same relationship shows up in the fall in circulating T3.^{8,9} The plateau every dieting patient hits, and every practitioner has watched them hit, is in part a chemical event: the toxin coming out of storage is suppressing the metabolic rate that

was doing the emptying. The body has a brake on this process and the brake is wired to the contents of the warehouse.

So the patient who cannot lose weight, whose thyroid numbers drift down as they try, and who regains everything the moment they stop, has usually not encountered a discipline problem. They have encountered a governor.

What this changes about the order of work

Fat loss belongs late in the sequence, not early, and the readiness gates are the ones already established for chemical detoxification: Phase II substrate available, Phase III pumps energized, bile flowing, stool pH at or below 6.8, transit inside the target window, binders in place. Attempting fat loss before those gates are met produces exactly the pattern the detox traps chapter describes, with the added confusion that both patient and practitioner have attributed the symptoms to the diet rather than to what the diet released.

The rate of fat loss should be set by clearance capacity, not by a calendar or a target date.[†]

The reading, however, is not the one used elsewhere in this book, and the difference matters enough to state plainly. In a standard detox round the practitioner watches for each day to be milder than the one before, because the source is a reservoir being drawn down. Fat loss does not behave that way. The mobilization is not decaying, it is being generated. Every day of continued loss opens storage that was not open the day before, so the release continues for as long as the loss continues, at a rate set by the loss itself rather than by what remains.[†]

A second effect runs underneath it. As adipose shrinks, the compounds it held do not leave with the fat that carried them, so their concentration in the remaining tissue rises, and this has been measured directly in adipose biopsies taken across a period of weight loss.⁶ Each subsequent kilogram carries a heavier load than the one before it. At a fixed rate of loss the reaction therefore does not merely fail to taper. It can slowly intensify.

The criterion here is a held constant rather than a decline. The reaction should sit at a level the patient can carry indefinitely, because this is months to years of work, and the rate of loss should be brought down over time to hold that level as the concentration climbs. Escalation, not persistence, is the signal to intervene. A practitioner who applies the decreasing window to a patient losing fat will abort a correct protocol in the first week, or go hunting for a contaminated product that is not there. The taper arrives when the loss slows or the depot is genuinely emptied, and that is late in the work rather than early.

Three situations deserve specific naming.

Fasting is the most efficient fat mobilizer available and therefore the most efficient toxin mobilizer available. This is not an argument against fasting, which has its own place in this work, but binder coverage during a fast is not optional.

Lactation is an elimination route for the mother and a delivery route to the infant. The apparent half-life of dioxins and PCBs in women falls sharply during breastfeeding, which is another way of saying the load is transferred rather than destroyed.¹⁰ A woman losing weight while nursing is mobilizing stored compounds directly into milk. The clinical implication is that weight and toxin work belong before conception, not during pregnancy and not during lactation. This is the same principle as the microbiome work done for a future pregnancy, applied to the chemical load.

Pharmaceutical weight loss, now in wide use, produces rapid fat loss in patients whose clearance capacity was never assessed.¹¹ Three consequences follow from the mechanism rather than from any position on the drugs. The loss is fast, so mobilization is fast. A substantial fraction of the loss is lean mass rather than fat, which reduces the metabolically active tissue that would otherwise support clearance. And slowed gastric emptying and constipation are among the most common effects, which lengthens transit at precisely the moment the biliary route is carrying its heaviest load, giving colonic bacteria more time to strip the conjugates the liver just attached. A patient on these drugs needs the transit work and the binder work more than the average patient does, not less.

A note on metals, since the same question always follows. The adipose fraction of a metal burden is real but small compared with bone, kidney, and liver, and the exception is the lipophilic forms of mercury. So fat loss is primarily a chemical mobilization event and only secondarily a metal one. It does not substitute for chelation and it does not usually trigger a metal crisis, though in a heavily mercury-burdened patient it can contribute to one.

Insulin, and a distinction worth keeping straight

The starch that spikes insulin and the starch that ferments fast are not the same starch, and collapsing them loses the mechanism.

The insulin spike comes from rapidly digestible starch, which is fully broken down to glucose in the small intestine and never reaches the colon at all.¹² Modern crops bred soft and sweet, and modern preparation that gelatinizes their starch and serves it hot, maximize this fraction. Fast fermentation is a different problem occurring in a different organ: substrate that does reach the colon but is consumed within the first third of it, producing gas and its downstream pressure consequences rather than a glucose load. Both come from the same candification, which is why they travel together in the same patient, but they cause different damage and are corrected by different means.

The insulin arm matters for weight because insulin is the antilipolytic hormone. Its presence suppresses hormone-sensitive lipase and holds triglyceride inside the

adipocyte.¹³ Fat release requires a period in which insulin is low, and a patient eating rapidly digestible starch at three meals with snacks between them may not have such a period during any waking hour. This is not a caloric argument. Two patients on identical calories, one of whom spends most of the day in a fed insulin state and one of whom does not, are running different fat-trafficking programs.

The fermentation arm matters for weight through a second and quieter route. Short-chain fatty acids reaching the distal colon drive GLP-1 and PYY release, which improves insulin sensitivity and satiety signaling.¹⁴ A colon whose substrate is exhausted proximally does not produce that signal. So the candified starch does its damage twice: it delivers the glucose load upstream, and it fails to deliver the satiety and sensitivity signal downstream. The preparation correction taught earlier addresses both arms with one change, which is the reason it is worth the twenty-four hours it takes.

The practical side: four compartments of girth

Most of what a patient is trying to reduce when they say they want to lose weight is abdominal girth, and girth is not one substance. It has four compartments, and three of them move much faster than fat does. Separating them is what lets a practitioner deliver a visible result in the first weeks of work, which is what keeps the patient in the chair long enough for the slow compartment to move.

The first compartment is gas. A distended colon adds measurable inches with no change whatever in fat mass. Worth knowing is that girth does not track gas volume as directly as one would expect. Objective distension involves descent of the diaphragm and relaxation of the anterior abdominal wall, a viscerosomatic reflex, so two patients with the same measured gas volume can present with quite different waistlines depending on how that reflex is behaving.^{15, 16} Methane makes both halves worse, adding to the trapped volume and slowing the transit that would clear it.¹⁷ This compartment responds within days once fermentation is moved distally and the methanogens are suppressed, and it is often the fastest visible win available in the whole protocol.

The second compartment is retained fecal mass and its water. A patient with a seventy-two hour transit is carrying roughly three days of output where a patient at twenty-four hours carries one. That difference is a pound or two of actual mass, plus the distension that accompanies it, plus the pressure effects it produces upstream. Correcting transit is not fat loss and the patient should be told so plainly, but it changes the mirror and the waistband within the first week, and it is doing far more important work than the girth reduction suggests, since it is also closing the deconjugation window.

The third compartment is interstitial water, and it is the one most often misread. Abdominal and systemic inflammation increases capillary permeability and drives fluid into the interstitium; histamine acting at H1 receptors does this directly, which is why the histamine work so often produces a rapid drop on the scale. Inflammation also suppresses albumin synthesis, lowering the oncotic pressure that would pull that fluid

back, and interstitial sodium handling shifts under inflammatory conditions in ways that further favor retention.¹⁸ A patient who drops five pounds in the first ten days of anti-inflammatory work has lost water, not fat. This is real, it is worth having, and it should be named accurately at the time, so that when the loss stops the patient does not conclude the protocol stopped working.

The fourth compartment is fat itself, and within it visceral fat behaves differently from subcutaneous. Visceral adipose is an inflammatory organ in its own right, infiltrated with macrophages and secreting inflammatory signals continuously,¹⁹ and it is the depot most responsive to the endotoxin load coming out of a dysbiotic gut.⁴ This produces a loop that has to be broken at the gut end rather than the fat end: the gut leaks LPS, the LPS drives visceral adiposity, the visceral fat produces inflammation, and the inflammation degrades the barrier that was leaking. A patient can diet against this loop indefinitely and lose the argument. Correcting the colon removes the input, and the visceral compartment often begins to move without any specific attention to it at all.

Measuring

Weight on a scale mixes all four compartments plus muscle plus hydration status and reports a single number that conceals every one of them. It is the least informative measurement available and the one patients weigh themselves on daily.

Waist circumference, measured fasted, first thing in the morning, at the same anatomical landmark each time, separates better. Waist-to-height ratio below one half is a more useful target than any weight figure, and it holds across sexes and body types without adjustment. Photographs at the same time of day in the same light are more honest than either number for the first month, because the compartments that move first are compartments the scale reports poorly.

The practitioner should tell the patient in advance what will come off in what order: gas within days, retained mass and water within the first two weeks, and fat slowly and last. A patient who has been told this reads the first three weeks correctly. A patient who has not been told this concludes that a protocol which is working exactly as designed has stalled, and stops it in the third week.

What else belongs in the picture

Muscle is not a girth compartment but it governs the rate at which the other four resolve, and rapid weight loss of any origin costs lean mass unless it is actively defended. The relevant point for this book is that muscle is also the tissue whose capillary density collapses first under the burdens described in Part Three, so a patient losing muscle is losing clearance capacity and perfusion at the same time.

Sleep-disordered breathing produces a metabolic profile that will defeat any dietary intervention, and it is worth resolving before concluding that a weight protocol failed.

And there is a floor under the whole enterprise. A patient whose adipose is holding a load their exits cannot process will not be permitted by their own physiology to give that adipose up, and the intervention that finally moves the weight will not be a dietary one. It will be whatever finally opened the exit.

Clinical pearl: *When a patient reports that they gained weight during a period when nothing about their diet or activity changed, ask what changed in their environment. A move, a renovation, a new workplace, a water-damaged basement, a new mattress. Defensive adipose expansion is a slow response to a new load, and the patient will almost never volunteer the exposure, because they have already decided the weight is their fault.*

References

1. La Merrill M, Emond C, Kim MJ, et al. Toxicological function of adipose tissue: focus on persistent organic pollutants. *Environ Health Perspect.* 2013;121(2):162-169.
2. Jandacek RJ, Tso P. Enterohepatic circulation of organochlorine compounds: a site for nutritional intervention. *J Nutr Biochem.* 2007;18(3):163-167.
3. Grün F, Blumberg B. Environmental obesogens: organotins and endocrine disruption via nuclear receptor signaling. *Endocrinology.* 2006;147(6 Suppl):S50-S55.
4. Cani PD, Amar J, Iglesias MA, et al. Metabolic endotoxemia initiates obesity and insulin resistance. *Diabetes.* 2007;56(7):1761-1772.
5. Cani PD, Bibiloni R, Knauf C, et al. Changes in gut microbiota control metabolic endotoxemia-induced inflammation in high-fat diet-induced obesity and diabetes in mice. *Diabetes.* 2008;57(6):1470-1481.
6. Chevrier J, Dewailly E, Ayotte P, et al. Body weight loss increases plasma and adipose tissue concentrations of potentially toxic pollutants in obese individuals. *Int J Obes Relat Metab Disord.* 2000;24(10):1272-1278.
7. Kim MJ, Marchand P, Henegar C, et al. Fate and complex pathogenic effects of dioxins and polychlorinated biphenyls in obese subjects before and after drastic weight loss. *Environ Health Perspect.* 2011;119(3):377-383.
8. Pelletier C, Imbeault P, Tremblay A. Energy balance and pollution by organochlorines and polychlorinated biphenyls. *Obes Rev.* 2003;4(1):17-24.
9. Tremblay A, Pelletier C, Doucet E, Imbeault P. Thermogenesis and weight loss in obese individuals: a primary association with organochlorine pollution. *Int J Obes Relat Metab Disord.* 2004;28(7):936-939.
10. Milbrath MO, Wenger Y, Chang CW, et al. Apparent half-lives of dioxins, furans, and polychlorinated biphenyls as a function of age, body fat, smoking status, and breast-feeding. *Environ Health Perspect.* 2009;117(3):417-425.
11. Wilding JPH, Batterham RL, Calanna S, et al. Once-weekly semaglutide in adults with overweight or obesity. *N Engl J Med.* 2021;384(11):989-1002.
12. Englyst HN, Kingman SM, Cummings JH. Classification and measurement of nutritionally important starch fractions. *Eur J Clin Nutr.* 1992;46(Suppl 2):S33-S50.
13. Frayn KN. Adipose tissue as a buffer for daily lipid flux. *Diabetologia.* 2002;45(9):1201-1210.

14. Chambers ES, Viardot A, Psichas A, et al. Effects of targeted delivery of propionate to the human colon on appetite regulation, body weight maintenance and adiposity in overweight adults. *Gut*. 2015;64(11):1744-1754.
15. Serra J, Azpiroz F, Malagelada JR. Impaired transit and tolerance of intestinal gas in the irritable bowel syndrome. *Gut*. 2001;48(1):14-19.
16. Accarino A, Perez F, Azpiroz F, Quiroga S, Malagelada JR. Abdominal distention results from caudo-ventral redistribution of contents. *Gastroenterology*. 2009;136(5):1544-1551.
17. Pimentel M, Lin HC, Enayati P, et al. Methane, a gas produced by enteric bacteria, slows intestinal transit and augments small intestinal contractile activity. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol*. 2006;290(6):G1089-G1095.
18. Titze J, Machnik A. Sodium sensing in the interstitium and relationship to hypertension. *Curr Opin Nephrol Hypertens*. 2010;19(4):385-392.
19. Weisberg SP, McCann D, Desai M, Rosenbaum M, Leibel RL, Ferrante AW Jr. Obesity is associated with macrophage accumulation in adipose tissue. *J Clin Invest*. 2003;112(12):1796-1808.

Chapter 48, The snow globe is shaken

Early in my career, my next door neighbor came to me knowing I worked in detoxification. Someone he knew had been at a worksite and drank what he thought was a glass of water from a refrigerator. It turned out to be an industrial solvent. The man was in a coma in a hospital. What could be done?

I said, get him a glutathione IV. I gave the name of a compounding pharmacy where it could be ordered. Then find someone to administer it. A doctor or a nurse preferably, but if not, a dentist, a veterinarian. Just get it into him.

I went back to my work assuming the advice would be ignored and the man would have liver and brain damage for life, if he ever woke up at all. Two weeks later the phone rang. It was the man who had been in the coma. He was calling to thank me. He said he woke up on the hospital bed while the IV was still running.

This chapter teaches two levels of emergency response. The first is the oral acute protocol, what to reach for when your patient becomes a shaken snow globe. An acute exposure. A redistribution event. A protocol that mobilized more than the body could handle. This is for the patient who is conscious, functional, and can swallow. It is specifically for chemicals and mold, not for metals. That is chelation, and it has its own rules. For the patient whose acute crisis is metal-driven, a chelation protocol that mobilized more than it captured, or an acute metal exposure, the rescue is the Tier 3 macrocyclic chelator DOTA,† taught in the chelation chapter.

The second is for the situation that opened this chapter, when oral is not enough or not possible, and the intervention needs to enter the body directly. That does not require a clinic, a doctor, or an IV line. A subcutaneous infusion with a syringe pump can be administered at home. More on this later in the chapter.

The oral acute protocol

Two items are non-negotiable. If your patient has nothing else available, these two are the protocol. The remaining items improve outcomes, but do not delay treatment waiting for them.

Glucuronolactone. Glucuronidation is the dominant conjugation pathway for environmental chemicals, it handles roughly seventy percent of the Phase 2 workload the liver performs on xenobiotics.^{1,2} Glucuronolactone feeds it directly, it is converted to UDP-glucuronic acid, the substrate the liver attaches to the toxin to make it water-soluble and exportable into bile.³ Without it, the pathway that does most of the work is substrate-limited. The patient's liver is running conjugation on whatever UDP-glucuronic acid it can manufacture from endogenous glucose metabolism, which under acute toxic load is not enough. Glucuronolactone removes that bottleneck.

Glutathione. Glucuronidation handles the majority of xenobiotic conjugation, but not all of it. Glutathione conjugation handles much of the remaining workload, roughly thirty

percent.^{4,5} Together, these two pathways account for the bulk of Phase 2 conjugation for the chemicals this chapter addresses. Delivery options include oral liposomal, suppository, IV and subcutaneous.

Oral liposomal encapsulation wraps the water-soluble glutathione in a lipid shell that survives gastric acid, crosses the enterocyte, and enters portal circulation, where hepatocytes take up the intact tripeptide directly, the liver clears plasma liposomes aggressively as part of normal reticuloendothelial function, and the conjugation enzymes, glutathione S-transferases, operate on it there.^{6,7}

Oral glutathione can produce gas. This is a dosing signal, unabsorbed glutathione and its sulfur-containing metabolites have spilled into the colon and are feeding sulfate-reducing bacteria.† In an acute crisis, err on the side of a little gas. Underdosing is a greater risk than colonic sulfur spillover. If the gas becomes significant, reduce the single dose and increase the frequency rather than backing off the total amount. The microbiome can be rebalanced later. The acute exposure cannot wait for perfect titration.† If no commercial liposomal glutathione is available, liposomal bases and ultrasonic homogenizers allow production of actual liposomes, but the technique is outside the scope of this book.

Rectal avoids gastric acid and delivers cysteine and glycine to the hepatocyte for resynthesis via partial portal absorption, the rectal mucosa expresses γ -GT and cleaves much of the tripeptide at the absorption surface, so the hepatocyte rebuilds glutathione from precursors rather than receiving it intact. You also have to wait for the suppository to melt. It is optimal for chronic toxicity in that it is a slow delivery and does not risk overwhelming Phase 3 pathways, and can even be used as a mild rescue intervention for mild acute exposures of the sensitive client, but is not the optimal speed for emergency measures.

IV glutathione works, the coma patient who opened this chapter is proof, but it works differently. Like rectal, IV glutathione is cleaved by plasma GGT within minutes.⁸ It delivers free cysteine, glycine, and glutamate to every tissue the blood touches, and cells use those amino acids to build their own glutathione internally. Glutathione in the blood can do some direct work, it neutralizes reactive oxygen species and can conjugate highly reactive electrophiles non-enzymatically in plasma⁹, but the heavy enzymatic conjugation happens inside the hepatocyte.

For acute poisoning where the toxin is circulating in blood and extracellular fluid, IV delivery is effective for that direct neutralization. For driving hepatic conjugation, liposomal delivery is more direct, the intact molecule arrives inside the hepatocyte without requiring disassembly and reassembly.

Subcutaneous delivery

When the patient cannot swallow, when the exposure is severe enough that oral absorption of precursors is too slow, or when the situation demands direct delivery, subcutaneous infusion is the alternative. It does not require a clinic or an IV line. Sterile glutathione is the primary infusate. Sub-Q and IV glutathione work directly on blood and extracellular fluid, they raise plasma glutathione and deliver free cysteine, glycine, and glutamate to every tissue the blood touches as plasma GGT cleaves the tripeptide in circulation.⁸ Glutathione in the blood does some direct work, it neutralizes reactive oxygen species and can conjugate highly reactive electrophiles in plasma, but the heavy enzymatic conjugation happens inside the cell. For hepatic conjugation, the parenteral route is indirect. The intact molecule does not reach the hepatocyte. It is cleaved in plasma into its component amino acids and the cell must rebuild glutathione from raw materials. Liposomal oral delivery reaches the hepatocyte directly via portal circulation and can act relatively quickly. The advantage of sub-Q is not speed but sustained delivery, a syringe pump can deliver glutathione continuously over hours, which is difficult to replicate with repeated oral doses..

A Myers cocktail can be added to the infusion, B vitamins, magnesium, and vitamin C delivered alongside the glutathione provide the cofactors the conjugation and recycling pathways depend on.⁹ This is additive, not required.

The subcutaneous route can also be used for other substances, cerebrolysin, peptides, and other compounds that benefit from parenteral delivery, but those applications are outside the scope of this chapter.

The equipment is straightforward: a luer lock 30 ml disposable sterile syringe, a ConTact Detach luer lock infusion set from Convatec, and a syringe pump (syringepump.com). While the use of subcutaneous infusion equipment is beyond the scope of this book, the technique is simple and instructions are readily available from the equipment manufacturers and online. Abdominal fat is my preferred injection site. Pump speed is adjusted to the patient's comfort tolerance. Osmotic and pH requirements for the infusate must be understood before attempting subcutaneous infusion, hyperosmolar or strongly acidic or alkaline solutions will cause tissue irritation or necrosis at the injection site.

Clinical pearl: *Add a little ribose for a phase 3 boost of their detox pathways in the patients with low energy.*

References

1. Tukey RH, Strassburg CP. Human UDP-glucuronosyltransferases: metabolism, expression, and disease. *Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol.* 2000;40:581-616.
2. Hodges RE, Minich DM. Modulation of metabolic detoxification pathways using foods and food-derived components: a scientific review with clinical application. *J Nutr Metab.* 2015;2015:760689.

3. Marsh CA. Chemistry of D-glucuronic acid and its glycosides. In: Dutton GJ, ed. *Glucuronic Acid: Free and Combined*. New York: Academic Press; 1966:3-136.
4. Lu SC. Glutathione synthesis. *Biochim Biophys Acta*. 2013;1830(5):3143-3153.
5. Hayes JD, Flanagan JU, Jowsey IR. Glutathione transferases. *Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol*. 2005;45:51-88.
6. Sinha R, Sinha I, Calcagnotto A, et al. Oral supplementation with liposomal glutathione elevates body stores of glutathione and markers of immune function. *Eur J Clin Nutr*. 2018;72(1):105-111.
7. Liu Q, Wei W, Zhang T, et al. Kupffer cells determine intrahepatic traffic of PEGylated liposomal doxorubicin. *Nat Commun*. 2024;15:6258.
8. Hanigan MH, Ricketts WA. Extracellular glutathione is a source of cysteine for cells that express gamma-glutamyl transpeptidase. *Biochemistry*. 1993;32(24):6302-6306.
9. Gaby AR. Intravenous nutrient therapy: the "Myers' cocktail." *Altern Med Rev*. 2002;7(5):389-403.

Conclusion

How Did We Get Here

Our application of science has a weak spot. A technique solves the problem in front of it, solves it convincingly, and becomes the definition of the problem. After that the capacity for review is small, and the correction, when it finally arrives, tends to arrive from outside the field and to change nothing for a very long time.

What follows is how we got here, in order.

1538 Paracelsus — The Father of Toxicology

A single agent, acutely administered, on a curve that rises steadily.

Arsenic is the model case. Steep threshold, symptoms within hours, a survivable window below the lethal one — the curve is clean, and the doctrine describes it exactly. He then applied the same criterion to mercury, which he recommended internally for syphilis in controlled doses, arguing against the fumigation and inunction regimens that were ulcerating gums and shutting down kidneys. On the acute axis he was right, and the reduction saved lives. But absence of acute toxicity was the only safety criterion he had, and mercury below that line still deposits. Chronic mercurialism — the tremor, the erethism — was not characterized until Kussmaul in 1861, three centuries later, by which time the drug had been standard for syphilis the entire span and remained so until Salvarsan. The same metal ran two curves. The doctrine saw one.

It was true for what he was looking at, and it fails three times over in the world that was coming. It fails for substances that accumulate, where the governing variable is not dose but rate against clearance — the argument made at length in the chapter on brain detoxification. It fails for the sensitized patient who reacts at levels far below any established threshold, which is the same lock-in described in the tonsil chapter, now met at the level of a toxin rather than an antigen. And it fails for mixtures, where effects compound, which is to say it fails for all real exposure.

Note the shape of the error, because it repeats. Paracelsus was not wrong. He was scoped, and the scope was forgotten.

1884 Koch: The Father of Bacteriology

Isolate the organism, grow it alone in pure culture, inoculate a healthy host, recover it again. An enormous achievement, and it works.

Anthrax is the model case. A single organism, present in every case, absent from every healthy animal, culturable on plain medium, and lethal on transfer within days. The postulates were fitted to it, and on that curve they hold perfectly. But the criterion was then applied in the other direction. The postulates began as evidence that an organism causes a disease and were taken to mean that failure to satisfy them is evidence an

organism does not. Koch himself hit the wall. Healthy carriers of cholera and typhoid, people harboring the organism without the disease, broke the first postulate during his own working life, and he said so. It changed nothing. If the man who wrote the rule could not amend it, no one could.

This one he did not see at all. The method can only find organisms that grow free-floating, planktonic, and cause acute disease quickly. It cannot find organisms living in biofilm: surface-attached, in mixed consortia, embedded in a matrix, at low metabolic rate. The agar plate that grew the acute organisms does not grow the chronic ones, and neither do most of its successors. It fails for organisms whose pathogenicity is contextual rather than intrinsic. It fails for consortia, where no member reproduces the disease alone and the disease is a property of the assembly, which is to say it fails for most of the mouth, the gut, and the sinus. And it fails wherever the interval between colonization and illness is measured in years rather than days.

Note the shape of the error, because it is the same one. Koch was not wrong. He was scoped, and the scope was forgotten.

1902 to 1907 Wiley - The Father of Food Safety.

Nearly four centuries after Paracelsus, the same error was built into law.

Congress gave Harvey Washington Wiley of the USDA Bureau of Chemistry a mandate to clean the toxins out of the food supply, and he went at it honestly. His human feeding trials — the newspapers called them the Poison Squad — ran healthy young adult male volunteers on one preservative at a time, escalating the dose until symptoms appeared. Borax, salicylic acid, sulfites, benzoates, formaldehyde, copper sulfate. The work was good, the publicity was enormous, and it carried the Pure Food and Drug Act in 1906.

The design had three limits, and every one of them is still with us.

Healthy young adult men, self-selected. No children, no pregnant women, no elderly, no one already sick. The population most likely to absorb an insult without showing it defined what an insult looks like.

One compound at a time, escalating to symptom. The question asked was at what dose this substance produces a visible effect in a healthy man. Not what a lifetime of it does. Never what nine of them do together.

Acute, observable endpoints. Weight, appetite, nausea, headache, pulse, excretion. Everything slow, subclinical, ecological or developmental was outside the instrument by construction.

That template descends directly into GRAS determinations and per-compound acceptable daily intakes, and it fails in exactly the three ways Paracelsus did. There is still no framework for summing a day's load, because the founding experiment was built

to examine one compound in one healthy man, and the paperwork never learned to do anything else.

1928 to 1943 Fleming - The Father of Antibiotics

Fleming found the mold in 1928; Florey and Chain made it a drug a decade later, and the sulfonamides had already reached the clinic ahead of it in the mid-1930s. It was a genuine deliverance. The killers of the past were silenced with a pill.

What we did not know was that we were trading acute infection for chronic disease. Antibiotics were deployed at population scale by a discipline whose founding method could not see the communities it was disturbing — the sessile populations of the colon, the sinuses, the tonsils, the vagina. Nothing in the framework asked the question, because within the framework there was nothing there to damage. The resident communities shifted toward more pathogenic residents, in some cases permanently, and the era of chronic disease opened.

1938 Rowley - The Father of the Vapor Barrier

Leaky homes are cold homes, so in the 1920s we began putting insulation in the walls. Homes were warmer. But insulation stops heat, not air, and it left the outer sheathing colder than it had ever been. Vapor that had always crossed the wall and left harmlessly now met a surface below its dew point and condensed there. Paint blistered, sheathing rotted, and by the mid-1930s painters were refusing to warrant work on insulated houses.

Frank Rowley gave what he thought was the answer: vapor-resistant membranes. But he had measured diffusion, the smallest of the ways a wall gets wet, and a membrane that stops vapor entering equally stops it leaving.

During humid summers when air conditioning is used, moisture from outside condenses against the cold paper, wood studs and insulation. The same happens with rain that gets past the siding or a badly flashed window head. It sits on the sheathing with nowhere to go.

The wall already holds everything else mold needs. The food is the paper facing and the framing, the temperature that suits us suits it, and the spores are in every cavity in every building. Only water is variable, and a wall does not grow mold because water got in, but because it could not get out.

And if you're lucky enough to live in a home without any vapor barriers, you likely still have the HVAC to contend with. When you combine the moisture from air conditioning coils with the dust that accumulates in the dark of the ventilation lines, we've got the same issue. Whether it's in the walls or the HVAC lines or likely both, we're nearly all exposed.

1957 Skeggs, The Father of the Blood Panel

Look at a standard chemistry panel. Sodium, potassium, calcium, chloride, bicarbonate, glucose, urea, creatinine. You will not find the nutritional trace elements — zinc, copper, manganese, chromium, selenium — and you will certainly not find the toxic ones: mercury, lead, cadmium, aluminum, gadolinium.

Ask who decided that. Nobody decided. An instrument decided, which is worse, because an instrument leaves no argument to disagree with.

Leonard Skeggs built the first continuous-flow autoanalyzer in 1957, and Technicon turned it into the fixed-channel machines that defined hospital chemistry through the 1960s. The panel is not a clinical judgment about which analytes matter. It is the list of things that could be run as parallel channels off one flowing stream of serum. What the machine could do in a single pass became the definition of a blood panel, and in seventy years it has barely moved.

The trace elements could not ride on that machine. They needed atomic absorption spectroscopy, which existed by 1955 but could not be multiplexed into a serum stream, and they needed something no hospital laboratory could offer: contamination control. At microgram-per-liter concentrations the reagents, the tubing and the collection tube may hold more of the analyte than the patient does.

So the nutritional elements went unseen, and the toxic ones went unseen with them, and both absences were then explained after the fact. You will be told serum zinc is unreliable because it redistributes in inflammation, that copper rises as an acute-phase reactant, that magnesium is meaningless because so little of it sits outside the cell. Each of those statements is true. But every one of them was established by people working with the assay they had, on the compartment the machine could reach, in a field whose entire picture of what a mineral abnormality looks like had been trained on three analytes that are acutely defended and completely unrepresentative of how the other elements behave. The panel measures what plasma reports well. The fact that it is the panel then becomes the evidence that nothing else is worth reporting.

Where that leaves us

Consider mold in a home. Rowle's walls created homes unable to dry which grow organisms Koch's method cannot culture, at exposures Paracelsus and Wiley do not flag. They produce illnesses that Fleming's antibiotics have no answer to, and Skeggs' tests cannot see.

The curing of an acute crisis and the creation of a chronic one is what this entire book has been working on.

Dysbiosis, toxicity, mold...Once you see these in your clients, you cannot unsee them, which takes us to the next part of our journey.

Now we work on refining our protocols.

This book is continually updated. For the most recent version, go to:

<https://remedylink.com/book>

Ready for the protocols?

Protocols: remedylink.com/protocols